ESSENTIALS OF GENERAL ANÆSTHESIA

Essentials of

GENERAL ANÆSTHESIA

By R. R. MACINTOSH,
M.A. M.D. F.R.C.S. D.A.

*Nuffield Professor of Anæsthetics, University of Oxford,
Consulting Anæsthetist to the Royal Air Force, Anæsthetist
to the Radcliffe Infirmary, Oxford, Late Anæsthetist and
Lecturer in Anæsthetics, University College Hospital Dental
School, Anæsthetist, Golden Square Ear, Nose and Throat
Hospital, Assistant Anæsthetist, Guy's Hospital Dental School*

and

FREDA B. BANNISTER,
M.A. M.D. D.A.

*First Assistant, Nuffield Department of Anæsthetics, University
of Oxford, Anæsthetist to the Oxford Eye Hospital, Late
Clinical Assistant in Anæsthetics, University College Hospital
Dental School*

THIRD EDITION

BLACKWELL

SCIENTIFIC   LTD   PUBLICATIONS

OXFORD   MCMLIII

PREFACE

This book is based on a series of lectures given to students at the Dental School of University College Hospital London and the University of Oxford Medical School. In presenting it we hope that it will assist not only those seeking an introduction to anæsthetics or preparing for their final examinations but also the medical or dental practitioner who desires to refresh his knowledge of the essentials of general anæsthesia.

The lack of a text book suitable as a supplement to undergraduate lectures and the practical lessons learned in the operating room has induced us to attempt a statement of the foundation of principles underlying the administration of anæsthetics in general. The case histories cited however in the main have been chosen deliberately from the field of dental surgery since the art of dental anæsthesia is often much neglected and in our opinion a mastery of the difficulties encountered there will help the anæsthetist to understand and overcome many of the problems he is likely to meet in anæsthesia for operations on other parts of the body. In order to clarify the descriptions given in the text we have made full use of illustrations.

The standard of administration of anæsthetics by the family doctor is a standing joke between dentists and is frequently a matter of comment among general surgeons. Although the criticism is amply justified the reproach itself is unfair inasmuch as a general practitioner has little more opportunity of reaching the standard attained by the specialist in anæsthetics than he has of becoming a specialist in any other branch of medicine or surgery. It must be admitted however that the average doctor while fully recognising that he has something to learn in other fields is apt to be unduly complacent about his knowledge of anæsthesia and the technique of its administration especially for dental operations.

At many general hospitals extractions are performed only in cases of emergency non urgent work is referred to dental hospitals. The doctor's early experience in anæsthesia for dental work is often therefore confined to the administration of nitrous oxide in cases where an acute alveolar abscess necessitates extraction of a tooth. Such an extraction is usually easy and a short and not necessarily skilful anæsthesia frequently suffices. The average medical student has in

fact, little opportunity of seeing, and far less of practising, the refinements of anæsthesia required for operations in the mouth   We have therefore incorporated in this book practical hints which should prove useful to the general practitioner with limited experience of this subject, and even to the anæsthetist who devotes but little of his time to this branch   Gone are the days when it was considered sufficient for the doctor to present the dentist with an unconscious patient and then to walk round the room, leaving the supervision of the patient and the extraction of the teeth to the dentist   The production and maintenance of surgical anæsthesia should be regarded both as an art and as a science, in dental work particularly the former plays an important role, and the anæsthetist must realise that it is his duty to co operate with the dentist in every possible way

The anæsthetist must train himself to recognise at a glance the type, temperament, and physical condition of the patient   He must know the significance of breathlessness, of œdema of protruding eyes, of plethora, and of anæmia, and he must recognise the signs of alcoholism He will soon learn that pallor does not necessarily indicate anæmia, nor a rapid pulse cardiac disorder   He must interpret correctly the cause of any cyanosis which may develop during anæsthesia, and be technically expert enough to deal with all the incidents, whether grave or trifling, which may occur during narcosis   He must be constantly alert to observe every indication, however small, of a change in the patient s reactions to the anæsthetic, and he must be alive to the importance of maintaining a clear airway   He has the entire responsibility for the patient's safety during unconsciousness and thus for his life, and this responsibility is no whit less serious during anæsthesia for dental extractions than during anæsthesia for more severe operations   This is often inadequately appreciated, since the patient is rarely ill and the operation generally lasts only a short time

The anæsthetist has always three people to satisfy—the patient, the surgeon, and himself   Although it is to be hoped that he will never succeed in satisfying himself completely, he can succeed in safeguarding his patient and, if he is fortunate, in satisfying the surgeon or dentist with whom he co-operates

Herring Shaw for the photographs and to Mrs A P Duncum for
assistance with the chapter on history

As anæsthetists frequently refer to nitrous oxide carbon dioxide,
and oxygen by their chemical symbols we have used these abbrevia
tions (N_2O CO_2 and O_2) where we might have done so in conversation
or in making case records

R R MACINTOSH
FREDA B PRATT

OXFORD
November 1940

PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION

THE demand for so early a Second Edition confirms our opinion that
there is a need for a book dealing with the basic principles of general
anæsthesia Many of those who became readers because they were
called upon to serve as anæsthetists in the present emergency although
perhaps they had given but few anæsthetics since their Resident days
have written to us that the book enabled them to anæsthetise with
greater safety and confidence has decided us not to alter its scope

Although the name of one of us has been changed her identity is the
same

R R MACINTOSH
FREDA B BANNISTER

OXFORD
November 1941

PREFACE TO THIRD EDITION

WE had considered expanding this book but its reception in its
present form has shown the continued need for a practical book
confining itself to essentials The general arrangement and scope
of the book therefore remain unchanged

We are indebted to our friends for constructive criticism as a result
of which as well as many small changes throughout considerable
alterations have been made in the text and illustrations in the chapters
on Reducing Valves and Analgesia Also we have added a chapter
on the Oxford Vaporiser

R R MACINTOSH
FREDA B BANNISTER

OXFORD
1943

ix

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I

HISTORY OF ANÆSTHESIA

MAN's attempts to produce insensibility to pain are of very long standing   The Assyrians were aware of the anodyne and soporific properties of poppy and mandrake,[1] and we know from the Homeric reference to nepenthes[2] that the Greeks alleviated mental, and probably physical, suffering by narcotic drinks   Theophrastus (370–286 B C), the ' protobotanist, ' specifically tells us that the root of mandrake steeped in wine produces sleep[3]

The Romans also used decoctions of mandrake in alcohol   Pliny (A D 23–79) says of the juice of the mandrake, " Administered in doses proportional to the strength of the patient, this juice has a narcotic effect   It is given   for injuries inflicted by serpents, and before incisions or punctures are made in the body, in order to ensure insensibility to the pain '   and he adds, " Indeed, for this last purpose, with some persons, the odour of it is quite sufficient to induce sleep " [4]   Dioscorides also, who was a Greek surgeon in the army of Nero from A D 54 to 68 and compiled the first great work on materia medica, prescribed mandrake for the relief of pain, and stated that according to the preparation it might either be drunk, or inhaled, or given in an enema[5]

Analgesic potions in fact have been well known for more than two thousand years, but although described in medical text-books throughout the mediæval and early Renaissance periods and sporadically even until the end of the eighteenth century, their utilisation seems to have been the exception rather than the rule   Although on empirical grounds early physicians recognised that certain plants possessed narcotic properties, they had no means of assessing the potency of the extracts employed   Different samples of the same herb differ considerably in the amounts of active principle contained   Thus, though a measured dose of one extract of poppy might produce the required depth of unconsciousness, the same dose of another sample similarly prepared might be either entirely inadequate or might produce extreme depression, or even death   The prudent surgeon, therefore, while acknowledging the successes, was deterred by the numerous failures and disasters from using so uncertain a means of preventing pain   So hazardous was the method considered that until the middle of the

nineteenth century an unfortunate patient about to be operated upon found himself bound and held down by strong men, his only help being fortitude or unconsciousness from fainting [6]

During the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries opium had become increasingly important as an anodyne and narcotic, as indeed the word *opiate* itself suggests It was sometimes given in an enema as a mild sedative before operations, but more frequently after the operation In extremely painful conditions held to be inoperable, where pain could not be relieved otherwise, its use was, and still is, considered essential for mitigating the sufferings of the patient's last days It was universally recognised that opium, like alcohol, if pushed to excess, produced complete insensibility, but this use of these drugs was vigorously condemned by physicians and surgeons of good repute as a dangerous and unjustified practice [7]

Administration of narcotics in known doses first became possible in 1806, when Sertürner [8] succeeded in isolating morphine, the chief alkaloid of opium Its routine use in medicine in place of opium dates from about 1820, and was due to the French physiologist Magendie [9] (1783–1855), who fully appreciated that the superiority of the pure alkaloids lay in the fact that they could be given in known doses

In adopting morphine Magendie prescribed it only by mouth Though the isolation of this alkaloid made it possible for physicians to administer a dose of constant composition, the results continued to be inconsistent, because of the variations in the rate of absorption of drugs given by mouth (p 103) It was not until five years after the discovery of ether that the hypodermic syringe was introduced by Pravaz in 1851, and independently by Alexander Wood, in 1853 By administering morphine hypodermically the rate of absorption was brought under control, but since inhalation anæsthesia had already been enthusiastically adopted, there was now no incentive to exploit to the full the possibility of producing narcosis with this drug

The work of Priestley (1733–1804) and Lavoisier (1743–1794) on oxygen and the nature of respiration turned medical thought in a new direction, and led to a theory that some diseases might be benefited by inhaling oxygen or other gases In 1796 Thomas Beddoes founded at Bristol a 'Medical Pneumatic Institution, ' where experiments and treatment along such lines could be carried out [10] He commissioned James Watt to design the apparatus required and appointed Humphry Davy (1778–1829) as superintendent of the Institution

During his investigations into the properties of nitrous oxide, Davy in 1799 verified by animal experiment that the gas was respirable ; he then inhaled it himself and stumbled upon its analgesic properties In

1800 he published an exhaustive monograph,[11] in a comparatively small section of which he records his mental and physiological reactions on inhaling the gas, and states that " inspiration was accompanied with loss of distinct sensation and voluntary power," and that it would relieve headache On p 464 he writes that " the power of the immediate operation of the gas in removing intense physical pain, I had a very good opportunity of ascertaining In cutting one of the unlucky teeth called *dentes sapientiæ*, I experienced an extensive inflammation of the gum, accompanied with great pain . . On the day when the inflammation was most troublesome, I breathed three large doses of nitrous oxide The pain always diminished after the first four or five inspirations   As the former state of mind however returned, the state of organ returned with it , and once I imagined that the pain was more severe after the experiment than before '

Davy's somewhat lengthy summary of his conclusions includes the brief statement, " As nitrous oxide in its extensive operation appears capable of destroying physical pain, it may probably be used with advantage during surgical operations in which no great effusion of blood takes place " These few words, lifted from the unimportant position assigned to them by Davy among a mass of his other deductions, not all of them accurate, have been given much prominence in the history of anæsthesia, and it is often implied that Davy was suggesting that nitrous oxide should be used as a general anæsthetic It is probable, however, that no such idea occurred to him, even though he knew that prolonged inhalation of the gas would produce stupor. If indeed he had conceived the idea of producing surgical anæsthesia by means of nitrous oxide, he would deserve blame rather than praise, in that he, fresh from apprenticeship to a surgeon, made no attempt either to follow up this important idea himself or to encourage others to do so It should, however, be realised that Davy was then only twenty-two years old, and that his dominant enthusiasm was chemistry rather than medicine, as was shown by the fact that a year later he resigned his post at the Pneumatic Institution in order to take charge of the chemical laboratory of the newly founded Royal Institution in London. This early promotion resulted in the discontinuance of Davy's experiments with nitrous oxide Had he remained at Bristol and taken his medical degree as originally intended, it is more than possible that his genius would have led him to utilise nitrous oxide as a means of producing surgical anæsthesia

At about the time that Davy's interest in nitrous oxide began to wane, Henry Hill Hickman (1800-1830) was born. In 1820 he was

trying ether probably suggested itself as a result of the " frolics," so popular in Europe and America during the first half of the nineteenth century, at which small quantities of nitrous oxide or ether were inhaled for the feeling of exhilaration which they produced   At these parties it had been conclusively established not only that ether vapour was respirable but that too large a quantity caused stupor   Michael Faraday had pointed out in 1818 that in these respects the effects of ether and nitrous oxide were similar [16]

As nitrous oxide had been discredited the distinction of discovering anæsthesia would belong to the one who introduced ether   In the bitter quarrel which immediately followed the successful use of ether, Morton claimed that he had introduced it, but Dr Charles Thomas Jackson (1805–1880) chemist and geologist alleged that the credit should be his, since he had suggested its use to Morton   Weighing up the pros and cons of the argument, it now seems reasonably certain that Jackson did not originally suggest the use of ether, but it seems equally certain that he gave Morton valuable advice   For Morton, having tried the inhalation of ether upon one or two household pets without mishap nevertheless admitted to his partner, Grenville G Hayden,[17] who appears to be a fairly reliable witness, that "in some particulars his discovery did not work exactly right," whereupon Hayden advised him to consult a chemist   Towards the end of September 1846 Morton saw Jackson and though he did not disclose that he had been experimenting with ether managed to glean important information   " Dr Morton told me " wrote Hayden in his testimony, " that he had just tried ether again—in accordance with Jackson's hint—on himself and that he had remained insensible seven or eight minutes, by the watch '   A few days later, on 30th September, 1846, Morton, pouring ether on a folded cloth, successfully anæsthetised Eben Frost for the extraction of a tooth   However, all was not yet plain sailing   A series of failures followed, and Morton once more consulted Jackson who this time recommended the use of a glass inhaler   After making certain modifications in the inhaler, Morton demonstrated ether anæsthesia at the Massachusetts General Hospital on 16th October, 1846   At this demonstration he administered ether under the name of ' letheon ' (trying unsuccessfully to keep its precise nature secret) and Warren dissected out a ' congenital but superficial vascular tumor ' from the neck of a man   As the patient recovered consciousness, Warren exclaimed, " Gentlemen, this is no humbug "

It subsequently transpired that Crawford W Long (1815–1878), a busy general practitioner, had used ether as early as 1842 in a few minor surgical operations in Georgia, USA, but the exigencies of a

large practice and local apathy and opposition gave him neither opportunity nor encouragement to pursue his discovery further [18]

It is of some interest to note that it was Colton who reintroduced nitrous oxide as an anæsthetic. He had continued to travel about America giving popular lectures, and after 1844 had included an account of Wells's discovery and of how the anæsthetic property of this gas had been made use of for tooth extraction. In 1862, after a lecture-demonstration at New Britain, Connecticut, an old lady asked to be allowed to inhale the gas to have some teeth out, for she was afraid both of ether and of chloroform. In contrast to the patient chosen for Wells's demonstration, this elderly co-operative woman is now recognised as being a suitable subject for displaying impressively the advantages of nitrous oxide. It is not surprising therefore that Colton, with his previous wide experience of this gas, administered it to the satisfaction both of the patient and her dentist. Colton afterwards taught the dentist, Dr Dunham, how to make the gas.

On his next lecture-visit to the town a year later, Colton found Dunham in a flourishing practice busily extracting teeth under nitrous-oxide anæsthesia. He immediately decided that in future the painless extraction of teeth should be a feature of his lecture-demonstrations. "In a few weeks," wrote J Marion Sims in 1877, ' people came by hundreds to take the gas and get teeth extracted. This experiment convinced Colton that it could be made a great business and he went to New York and opened the Colton Dental Institute, where, since 1863, he and his agents have given the gas to 97 000 persons without accident " [19]

It is noteworthy that nitrous oxide and ether, the first two anæsthetics discovered, have retained their popularity, and that their use has not been seriously challenged despite the introduction of many other anæsthetics. By reason of its safety, ether still remains the anæsthetic of choice for operations requiring muscular relaxation. For minor operations nitrous oxide has the advantage of being eliminated much more rapidly and of providing quick recovery.

Simpson (1811–1870) was the first to use chloroform as an anæsthetic. In a paper [20] to the Medico-Chirurgical Society of Edinburgh on 10th November, 1847, he wrote, " I am enabled to speak most confidently of its superior anæsthetic properties, having now tried it upon upwards of thirty individuals " [His success with chloroform, coupled with his enthusiastic championship of this gas, quickly convinced the medical profession, not only in Great Britain but also on the Continent, and to a certain extent even in America, that chloroform was indeed far superior in every way to ether. This widespread belief produced

both evil and good   evil because chloroform is intrinsically danger
ous   good because the recognition of those inherent dangers was more
powerful than any other factor in promoting scientific investigation
into the nature of anæsthesia and of anæsthetic agents

The first to appreciate the urgent need for physiological research
and the man whose influence guided the subsequent course of anæs
thesia for many years was the Yorkshireman John Snow (1813–1858)
whose books *On Ether* and *On Anæsthetics* should be read by every
anæsthetist   It was Snow who set the seal of propriety on anæsthesia
in obstetrics when in 1853 he administered chloroform to Queen
Victoria during the birth of Prince Leopold and again in 1857 at the
birth of Princess Beatrice   Richardson [21] in 1858 writes   Inquisi
tive folk often overburthened Snow after these events with a multitude
of questions   One lady of an inquiring mind   to whom he was
administering chloroform   got very loquacious during the period of
excitement and declared she would inhale no more of the vapour unless
she were told what the Queen said word for word when she was taking
it   Her Majesty replied the dry doctor asked no questions until she
had breathed very much longer than you have   and if you will only go
on in loyal imitation   I will tell you everything   The patient could not
but follow the example held out to her   In a few seconds she forgot all
about Queen Lords and Commons   and when the time came for a
renewal of hostilities   found that her clever witness had gone home to
his dinner   leaving her with the thirst for knowledge still on her
tongue   It is noteworthy that paralysis of the intercostal muscles as
a sign of anæsthesia (p 66) rediscovered by successive generations
of anæsthetists was first described by Snow   If the inhalation is
continued   the breathing is rendered difficult feeble or irregular
and is sometimes performed only by the diaphragm whilst the inter
costal muscles are paralysed   [21]   It was Snow too who first made use of
an agent to absorb carbon dioxide in a closed circuit during anæsthesia
Under these conditions   he anæsthetised animals   and further using
chloroform and ether he rendered himself analgesic for long periods
employing a solution of caustic potash as the absorbant [22]

At Snow s death his mantle descended upon the shoulders of
Clover (1825 1882)   He enjoyed a busy practice with the leading
surgeons of his day and spent most of his spare time in his workshop
His notes sketches and experimental models presented in 1939 to the
Department of Anæsthetics University of Oxford by his son and
daughter, show that he had in his mind ideas many years ahead of his
time   He wrote comparatively little and is best remembered by his
ether inhaler [24] and it should not be overlooked that it was he who

first suggested and made practicable a nitrous oxide-ether sequence [25] By this not only was the unpleasantness of an ether induction avoided, but after anæsthesia had been established rapidly with N_2O, the ether concentration in the inhaled mixture could be increased uniformly

The technique for the administration of general anæsthetics advanced remarkably little until the twentieth century   The 1914-1918 War was responsible for the more general adoption of endotracheal anæsthesia   This method seems first to have been used by Trendelenburg in 1869   He realised the importance of packing off the larynx to prevent the inspiration of blood and debris during extensive operations in the buccal cavity   Before the operation was commenced, tracheotomy was performed, and the administration of the anæsthetic continued through a cannula surrounded by an inflatable cuff inserted into the trachea through the wound [26]

In 1878 William MacEwen, surgeon to the Glasgow Royal Infirmary, decided to essay the " introduction of tracheal tubes by the mouth instead of performing tracheotomy or laryngotomy " [27]   He carried out a number of experiments *post-mortem*, and found that " instruments of the tube kind could, after a little practice, be passed with facility through the mouth into the trachea   by introducing the finger into the mouth, depressing the epiglottis on the tongue, and so guiding the tube over the back of the finger into the larynx '   His first case is described as " Removal of epithelioma from pharynx and base of tongue   introduction of tube into the trachea through mouth to occlude hæmorrhage from larynx, and for administration of anæsthetic "   A large-bore flexible brass tube [28] was passed on the completely unanæsthetised patient, and he writes, " The usual cough ceased as he received a few whiffs of chloroform   the upper opening of the larynx was stuffed with a sponge . . "

Even after the introduction in 1895 of Kirstein's " Auto-scope, " [29] the first direct-vision laryngoscope, endotracheal tubes were passed by the sense of touch with the aid of a hook-shaped pilot introducer ; or the larynx was exposed by a tongue-spatula, as advocated by the French surgeon Doyen (1859-1916)   At this period, sometimes general anæsthesia was induced, more often the larynx was cocainised before intubation

Kuhn in 1902 further popularised laryngeal intubation   He advocated cocainisation rather than general anæsthesia , and he used a large-bore flexible metal tube and a hook-shaped introducer, and resorted to exposing the larynx with a spatula only in difficult cases   It is interesting to note, too, that he administered anæsthetics under positive pressure , gave chloroform in a CO_2-absorption apparatus, and

both evil and good—evil, because chloroform is intrinsically danger-
ous , good, because the recognition of those inherent dangers was more
powerful than any other factor in promoting scientific investigation
into the nature of anæsthesia and of anæsthetic agents

The first to appreciate the urgent need for physiological research
and the man whose influence guided the subsequent course of anæs-
thesia for many years, was the Yorkshireman John Snow (1813–1858),
whose books *On Ether* and *On Anæsthetics* should be read by every
anæsthetist   It was Snow who set the seal of propriety on anæsthesia
in obstetrics when in 1853 he administered chloroform to Queen
Victoria during the birth of Prince Leopold and again in 1857 at the
birth of Princess Beatrice   Richardson [21] in 1858 writes, "Inquisi-
tive folk often overburthened Snow, after these events, with a multitude
of questions   One lady of an inquiring mind, to whom he was
administering chloroform got very loquacious during the period of
excitement, and declared she would inhale no more of the vapour unless
she were told what the Queen said word for word, when she was taking
it   Her Majesty replied the dry doctor, asked no questions until she
had breathed very much longer than you have   and if you will only go
on in loyal imitation I will tell you everything   The patient could not
but follow the example held out to her   In a few seconds she forgot all
about Queen Lords and Commons   and when the time came for a
renewal of hostilities found that her clever witness had gone home to
his dinner leaving her with the thirst for knowledge still on her
tongue   It is noteworthy that paralysis of the intercostal muscles,
a sign of anæsthesia (p 66) rediscovered by successive generations
of anæsthetists was first described by Snow "If the inhalation is
continued   the breathing is rendered difficult, feeble, or irregular,
and is sometimes performed only by the diaphragm, whilst the inter-
costal muscles are paralysed "   It was Snow, too, who first made use of
an agent to absorb carbon dioxide in a closed circuit during anæsthesia
Under these conditions he anæsthetised animals   and further, using
chloroform and ether he rendered himself analgesic for long periods,
employing a solution of caustic potash as the absorbant [23]

At Snow's death his mantle descended upon the shoulders of
Clover (1825–1882)   He enjoyed a busy practice with the leading
surgeons of his day, and spent most of his spare time in his workshop
His notes, sketches, and experimental models, presented in 1939 to the
Department of Anæsthetics University of Oxford, by his son and
daughter, show that he had in his mind ideas many years ahead of his
time   He wrote comparatively little, and is best remembered by his
ether inhaler, [24] and it should not be overlooked that it was he who

first suggested and made practicable a nitrous oxide ether sequence [25] By this not only was the unpleasantness of an ether induction avoided, but after anæsthesia had been established rapidly with N_2O, the ether concentration in the inhaled mixture could be increased uniformly

The technique for the administration of general anæsthetics advanced remarkably little until the twentieth century The 1914–1918 War was responsible for the more general adoption of endotracheal anæsthesia This method seems first to have been used by Trendelenburg in 1869 He realised the importance of packing off the larynx to prevent the inspiration of blood and debris during extensive operations in the buccal cavity Before the operation was commenced, tracheotomy was performed, and the administration of the anæsthetic continued through a cannula surrounded by an inflatable cuff inserted into the trachea through the wound [26]

In 1878 William MacEwen, surgeon to the Glasgow Royal Infirmary, decided to essay the " introduction of tracheal tubes by the mouth instead of performing tracheotomy or laryngotomy ' [27] He carried out a number of experiments *post-mortem*, and found that " instruments of the tube kind could, after a little practice, be passed with facility through the mouth into the trachea   by introducing the finger into the mouth, depressing the epiglottis on the tongue, and so guiding the tube over the back of the finger into the larynx " His first case is described as " Removal of epithelioma from pharynx and base of tongue introduction of tube into the trachea through mouth to occlude hæmorrhage from larynx, and for administration of anæsthetic ' A large-bore flexible brass tube [28] was passed on the completely unanæsthetised patient, and he writes, " The usual cough ceased as he received a few whiffs of chloroform   the upper opening of the larynx was stuffed with a sponge   "

Even after the introduction in 1895 of Kirstein's " Autoscope, ' [29] the first direct vision laryngoscope, endotracheal tubes were passed by the sense of touch with the aid of a hook-shaped pilot introducer , or the larynx was exposed by a tongue spatula, as advocated by the French surgeon Doyen (1859–1916) At this period, sometimes general anæsthesia was induced, more often the larynx was cocainised before intubation

Kuhn in 1902 further popularised laryngeal intubation He advocated cocainisation rather than general anæsthesia , and he used a large bore flexible metal tube and a hook-shaped introducer, and resorted to exposing the larynx with a spatula only in difficult cases It is interesting to note, too, that he administered anæsthetics under positive pressure, gave chloroform in a CO_2-absorption apparatus, and

records three cases in which a tube was passed through the nose into the trachea [30]

In 1909 Meltzer and Auer, physiologists, of the Rockefeller Institute New York, became interested in the problem of "continuous respiration without respiratory movement" They carried out a number of experiments on dogs insufflating a continuous current of oxygen laden with ether vapour through a small endotracheal catheter, allowing the insufflated air to escape by way of the space left between the wall of the catheter and the vocal cords In reporting these experiments Meltzer says, "Another important and practical feature which we have observed in this method is its relation to anæsthesia

It seems to me that the giving of ether by the method of intratracheal insufflation is the safest and most effective way of administration of this anæsthetic " [31]

Meltzer s idea was adapted to clinical anæsthesia by Elsberg, [32] also of New York, who in passing the tubes made use of Chevalier Jackson s laryngoscope as a routine measure, although many of his followers still preferred to use introducers Although Elsberg's work attracted widespread attention, endotracheal anæsthesia continued to be used on rare occasions only, and the passing of a tube was regarded as a major procedure It was not until anæsthetists were faced with the unprecedented problems of war mutilated soldiers needing extensive plastic surgery of the head and face that endotracheal anæsthesia was widely adopted To Rowbotham and Magill [33] must be given the credit for so simplifying the technique that endotracheal anæsthesia has become generally adopted for a wide variety of operations

The psychological advantages which accrue from producing unconsciousness before an inhalation anæsthetic is administered appear to have been appreciated first by the French naval surgeon Forné, who in 1874 employed doses of 2–5 gm of chloral for this purpose [34] Later, intravenous ether [35] and intravenous hedonal [36] were used, but it was not until 1913 when Gwathmey induced anæsthesia by giving a mixture of ether and olive oil rectally, [37] that the method was considered simple enough, and the results sufficiently constant and safe for the principle to become established In 1926 Willstätter and Duisberg, searching for a remedy which could be given rectally to abolish the spasm of whooping-cough, [38] introduced a new drug, tribromethylalcohol, now known as Avertin It was at once recognised by Fritz Eichholtz [39] as an extremely promising anæsthetic. After being widely tested as such in Germany, and at Eichholtz's request in England, [40] it rapidly attained wide popularity, and still remains one of the most useful of basal anæsthetics

Since 1921 various derivatives of barbituric acid have been used as basal anæsthetics with varying success, but this group of drugs did not attain universal popularity until 1932, when H Weese [41] discovered the ultra short-acting barbiturate, named Evipan Weese confirmed by experiment the value of evipan, not only as a rapidly acting hypnotic, but as a total anæsthetic, and in 1933 Wilhelm Baetzner [42] of Berlin reported 400 surgical cases in which he had used evipan successfully either as a basal or as the sole anæsthetic

During the last few years the outstanding contributions to the science of anæsthesia are those made by the Madison School under the direction of Ralph M Waters, to whom must be credited the introduction into clinical anæsthesia of cyclopropane, and of the carbon dioxide absorption technique, and by Lord Nuffield, whose numerous benefactions to medical science included in 1937 the foundation of the first chair of anæsthetics in this country

REFERENCES

(1) Thompson, R Campbell   1924   *The Assyrian Herbal*   London   43
(2) Homer   *The Odyssey*   Bk 4   F Caulfeild transl   1923   London   51
(3) Hort A   1916   *Theophrastus*   London   2, 259
(4) Bostock J, and Riley H T   1854   *The Natural History of Pliny*   London   5, 138
(5) Gunther, R T   1934   *The Greek Herbal of Dioscorides*   Oxford   473 622
(6) For examples see Pare A   1634   *Works*   London
(7) Wedel G W   1682   *Opiologia*   Jena   129
(8) Serturner F W A   1806   *J d Pharmacie fur Aerzte*   14, 87
(9) Magendie F   1836   *A Formulary for the Preparation of Certain New Remedies*   London
(10) Beddoes T   1796   *Considerations on the Medicinal Use of Factitious Airs*   Bristol
(11) Davy, H   1800   *Researches Chemical and Philosophical*   London.
(12) Hickman, H H   1824   *A Letter on Suspended Animation*   Ironbridge
(13) Hickman H H   1824   *Letter to T A Knight*   Original in the Wellcome Museum London
(14) Report of Meeting   1846/47   *Bull Acad Roy Med Paris*   12, 396
(15) Wells, C J   1935   *Anesth and Analges*   14, 176 216
(16) Article attributed to Faraday, M   1818   *J Sci and Arts*   London   4, 158
(17) Dana, R H   1848   *Littell's Living Age*   No 201, 529
(18) Taylor, F Long   1928   *Crawford W Long*   New York
(19) Sims, J M   1877   *Virginia med Mon*   4, 81
(20) Simpson J Y   1847   *Account of a New Anæsthetic Agent*   Edinburgh
(21) Snow J   1858   *On Chloroform and Other Anæsthetics*   London   xxxi
(22) Snow J   *Ibid*   42

(23) Snow J   1850   *Lond med Gaz* **11**, 749
                        Ibid **12**, 622
(24) Clover J T   1877   *Brit med J* **1**, 69
(25) Clover J T   1871   *Med Tms and Gaz* **2**, 603   1876   *Brit med
              J* **2**, 74
(26) Junker F   1872   *Med Tms and Gaz* **1**, 510
(27) MacEwen W   1880   *Brit med J* **2**, 122 164
(28) Primrose W   1940   Personal communication
(29) Kirstein A   1895   *Dtsch med Wschr* **38**, 634
(30) Kuhn F   1905   *Dtsch Z Chir* **76**, 148   1906   *Ibid* **81**, 63
(31) Meltzer S J   1910   *Med Rec N Y* **77**, 477
(32) Elsberg C A   1910   *Berl klin Wschr* **21**, 957
(33) Rowbotham E S and Magill I   1921   *Proc R Soc Med* **14** (i)
              Section of Anæsthetics   17
(34) Lannelongue   1874   *Bull Soc Chirurgie Paris* **3**, 619
(35) Burkhardt L   1909   *Arch exp Path Pharmak* **61**, 323
(36) Leading article   1912   *Brit med J* **1**, 1378
(37) Gwathmey J T   1914   *Proc 17th International Congress of Medicine*,
              Subsection 7 (B)   London   163
(38) Weese H   1937   Personal communication
(39) Eichholtz F   1927   *Dtsch med Wschr* **53**, 710
(40) Blomfield J and Shipway F E   1929   *Lancet* **1**, 546
(41) Weese H   1932   *Dtsch med Wschr* **2**, 1205
(42) Baetzner W   1933   *Dtsch med Wschr* **59**, 48

CHAPTER II

GENERAL REMARKS

SURGICAL anæsthesia may be either local, regional spinal, or general

1. Local—The drug in liquid form is applied to areas of mucous membrane, e g of the nose or throat , or it is injected into the immediate neighbourhood of the site of operation e g the mucous membrane and deep tissues around a tooth Local anæsthesia or insensitivity results from the narcotisation of afferent nerve endings

2 Regional—A solution of the drug is injected into the immediate neighbourhood of a selected sensory nerve, and by direct action on the nerve fibres blocks transmission of impulses from the region which this nerve supplies, e g the arm can be rendered insensitive to pain by an injection made above the clavicle which reaches the brachial plexus , and an injection into the neighbourhood of the inferior dental nerve as it is about to enter its foramen produces anæsthesia of the mandible on that side

Local anæsthesia may be combined with regional For an abdominal operation the skin and subcutaneous tissues may be anæsthetised by local infiltration while flaccidity of the abdominal muscles and insensitivity of the peritoneum may be obtained by injecting the anæsthetic around the lower intercostal nerves where they enter the muscles

3 Spinal—The anæsthetic solution is injected intrathecally (i e into the spinal canal) and there mixes with the cerebrospinal fluid bathing the nerves inside the canal. The spinal cord terminates at the lower border of the first lumbar vertebra and to avoid the danger of injuring it the injection is made below this level usually between the second and third lumbar vertebræ The object of spinal anæsthesia is to block the sensory nerves of several segments of the cord, although the corresponding motor nerves are necessarily also involved Since the nerve roots in this situation are very close together, many can be affected simultaneously and a large area of the body thus anæsthetised by a single injection The distance to which the anæsthetic spreads in the spinal canal is determined by the amount of anæsthetic injected, by the patient s posture and by the specific gravity of the injected solution Intrathecal injection is rarely employed for operations

necessitating anæsthesia above the level of the area supplied by nerves emerging from the fourth dorsal segment of the spinal cord If anæsthesia of higher regions is attempted by this means, the injected fluid is liable to spread to the level of the fifth cervical segment and paralyse the phrenic nerve which supplies the diaphragm This would bring respiration to a standstill, because by the time the anæsthetic reaches this level, the diaphragm would be the only respiratory muscle still functioning, the intercostal nerves having been already affected during the upward spread of the anæsthetic

4 **General.**—The patient is rendered unconscious and for practical purposes unresponsive to stimuli applied to any part of the body—hence the term general ' This is the only type of anæsthesia considered in this book The drug is distributed by the blood-stream through the whole body, and anæsthesia results from its action on the brain The anæsthetic may be administered either by (a) inhalation, (b) intravenous injection, (c) mouth, (d) rectum, less commonly by (e) subcutaneous injection, or (f) intramuscular injection

Experience has shown that only certain drugs are suitable for the production of general anæsthesia, common examples being nitrous oxide, ether and evipan, the chemical compositions of which differ widely

Natural sleep is a physiological state of unconsciousness, and differs from anæsthesia in that a patient reacts to stimuli and is easily roused to consciousness By the use of less than a full dose of any anæsthetic, a patient can be rendered unconscious but, according to the amount given, may react excessively or sluggishly to a painful stimulus The response to such a stimulus is excessive if sufficient anæsthetic is given to remove only the patient's higher conscious control and becomes progressively less as larger doses are administered Such unconsciousness accompanied by amnesia for pain but not by loss of reflex action, is unsuitable for operations because the patient's reactions may interfere with the surgeon's work

A state indistinguishable from general anæsthesia occurs also as a result of poisoning, e g by coal gas, or bacterial toxins (such as from typhoid fever or diphtheria), the toxins of uræmia or diabetes, large doses of alcohol, morphia, aspirin, etc Extremes of heat and cold or severe trauma or partial drowning may also result in a similar condition Unconsciousness from any of these factors, or indeed the moribund state preceding death, is often indistinguishable from one or other of the stages of anæsthesia produced by recognised general anæsthetics Realisation of this fact emphasises the importance of

the following considerations   That—

Anæsthesia is a pathological state and its production is a serious matter not to be undertaken lightly

Any drug which produces the state of unconsciousness with flaccidity, known as anæsthesia, is a poison, although in the case of the anæsthetics in common use the poison is controllable and its action reversible

Patients cannot be rendered unconscious by any means without doing them some general harm and involving them in a certain if only a minute, degree of risk

Anæsthetics should be given only when it is believed that the resulting relief will more than compensate for their poisonous effects

The anæsthetics to be employed must cause the minimum of damage

Only those drugs which have stood the test of time should be in routine use for the production of anæsthesia

To merit inclusion in the list of recognised anæsthetic agents, a drug must have the following advantages over other means of producing unconsciousness

1 *Its Action must be Reversible* —The anæsthetic administered must be either excreted or metabolised rapidly enough to allow the patient to recover within a reasonable time

2 *Its Action must be Controllable* —With *inhalation anæsthetics*, depth of anæsthesia is controlled by regulating the strength of the mixture delivered to the patient   Certain changes in respiratory rhythm foretell the approach of dangerously deep anæsthesia and give the watchful administrator ample time to discontinue the anæsthetic by removing the face-piece   Even if these warnings are ignored and the supply of anæsthetic is maintained, the diminution of the respiratory excursions reduces the intake of the drug, and respiratory arrest ensues immediately the amount of anæsthetic in the blood-stream reaches the level which causes this condition   A rise above this level is impossible, since intake of the drug ceases with respiratory arrest   If removal of the mask has been delayed until this emergency has supervened artificial respiration, if instituted promptly, will eliminate sufficient anæsthetic via the lungs to reduce the concentration in the blood-stream below that which has paralysed the respiratory centre   That elimination has been effective is shown by the almost immediate resumption of normal respiration   Maintenance of any desired level of anæsthesia is effected most safely and easily with inhalation anæsthetics since these are more controllable than those given by other routes   This is of much importance where profound anæsthesia is

required, since at this level any excess of anæsthetic soon produces respiratory depression

The effects of drugs given *intravenously* (e g evipan, pentothal) cannot be controlled so readily It is true that anæsthesia can be deepened to any degree by the simple process of injection, but the ease and rapidity with which an anæsthetic drug can be introduced into the blood stream is associated with the danger that an overdose may be given before the usual warning respiratory signs are manifest With rapid injection although the onset of respiratory depression and arrest is sudden, it is dangerously easy to introduce sufficient anæsthetic to raise the blood concentration considerably beyond that which causes respiratory arrest Most intravenous anæsthetics are detoxicated by the liver and excreted through the kidneys, and elimination is slow Moreover, if the blood concentration has been raised above that which produces respiratory arrest, artificial respiration will have to be continued until the concentration is reduced to the level compatible with normal respiration If the excess is slight, artificial respiration will probably be needed for only a few minutes, whereas if the excess is great enough artificial respiration will be unavailing no matter how long it is continued In between these two extremes will be found cases where lives are saved by prolonged artificial respiration

The precision with which it is possible to control the action of drugs given *by mouth or rectum* is even less than is the case with drugs which are given intravenously Continuous administration by these routes is impracticable so that the whole of the estimated dosage is introduced while the patient is still conscious Absorption from the rectum is more uniform than that of drugs given by mouth, which depends on the general condition of activity of the alimentary tract, which in turn may be considerably delayed by emotional states such as fear and excitement More important, however, than the uncertainty as to the rate of absorption is the overriding consideration (applicable also to drugs injected intravenously) that if an overdose should be administered by either route, absorption, once it has begun, will continue even after respiratory failure has occurred For this reason it is not practicable to induce full surgical anæsthesia with substances given by mouth or rectum They may be used only to bring about the state of basal anæsthesia which requires to be deepened further by the administration of a more controllable drug (e g a volatile anæsthetic) in order to carry out a surgical operation The lack of controllability of drugs given by these routes enforces a deliberate avoidance of the use of doses large enough to be dangerously unmanageable, which means that overdosage occurs only as the result

of an accident or error of judgment   For example, in the use of paraldehyde which is frequently given rectally as a basal anæsthetic in doses of ʒi per stone of body weight, confusion between the symbols for the drachm (ʒ) and the ounce (ʒ) is known to have led to the administration of eight times the intended dose, with fatal results

If it should be found that an overdose has been given, any drug remaining unabsorbed in the stomach may be recovered by gastric lavage   Similarly an attempt should be made by washing out the rectum to recover substances administered by that route, but in practice it is found to be more difficult to recover a drug from the rectum than from the stomach

3 *Its Action must be Predictable* —Within reasonable limits an anæsthetist can foretell the effects of a given quantity of evipan on a given patient   Rate of recovery varies with different anæsthetics but depends in great part on the dosage   Experience and a knowledge of the amount administered enable one to predict approximately the time of recovery

4 *The Therapeutic Quotient must be High*, i e the ratio between the minimum lethal dose and the minimum dose which must be given to produce unconsciousness must be high   The therapeutic quotient of evipan, for instance, is 4, this means that if 0 3 gm is necessary to render a given patient unconscious, it is unlikely that evipan will be lethal to that patient unless a dose of four times that quantity (1 2 gm) is administered at one time

5 *Its Side actions should be Minimal* —Beyond the production of anæsthesia, the physiological functions of the patient should be disturbed as little as possible   To achieve this, the anæsthetist must select the drug most appropriate to the patient and for the operation and must have had experience in its use   Inhalation of nitrous oxide for a few minutes will not produce appreciable after-effects, but the longer the administration the more probable will be the occurrence of nausea, vomiting, and even collapse   Ether, a more powerful poison than nitrous oxide, produces deeper anæsthesia, and when its administration is discontinued is followed by a longer period of unconsciousness and by greater toxic effects on the body   These are frequently manifested by nausea and vomiting and occasionally by more serious disturbances such as post anæsthetic albuminuria

As already mentioned, unconsciousness deep enough to permit the performance of a surgical operation may be produced by a wide variety of causes   It is possible to conceive of a classification of such causes arranged in order of merit on the basis of their degree of

2

reversibility controllability and predictability therapeutic quotient
and intensity of side reactions   These causes would then form a
continuous series of gradually decreasing safety utility and convenience
In practice doubtless there would be considerable disagreement over
the exact order   few would care to assess the relative merits of alcohol
and paraldehyde as means of producing surgical anæsthesia   Never
theless the right of the anæsthetics in routine use to stand at the head
of the list can hardly be disputed   and the last place would perhaps
be generally assigned to that pre mortal coma which heralds the end
in various toxic and traumatic conditions   This hypothetical list
includes a group of pre anæsthetic drugs so called because they are
administered before induction of anæsthesia to assist the action of
anæsthetics   They may be regarded as intermediate in their action
between the recognised anæsthetics and the grosser causes of production
of unconsciousness   These connecting links include morphia alcohol
and paraldehyde which if exploited to their full extent can serve
without assistance as adequate anæsthetics   These drugs are dealt with
in the chapter entitled   Pre anæsthetic Medication   (p 88) but are
mentioned here in order   on the one hand   to emphasise the existence
of a large number of compounds capable of producing anæsthesia
which because of their gradually decreasing safety are of only academic
interest to the practical anæsthetist   and on the other   to reiterate
that there do not exist providentially provided substances whose sole
action on the body is the production of anæsthesia

CHAPTER III

THEORY OF ANÆSTHESIA

How do anæsthetics work? This is one of the first questions the
student asks when he is introduced to the practice and problems of
anæsthesia   That the correct answer is still a subject for speculation
is shown by the allocation of more than thirty pages of Gwathmey's
text book to the discussion of nineteen theories   Many additional
theories are to be found elsewhere, some intelligible only to their
propounders

Various drugs modify the actions of the different cells throughout
the body   Those used as anæsthetics are chosen because they depress
reversibly the activity of the central nervous system without causing
generalised physiological disturbance of practical importance   A case
can be made for the hypothesis that all phenomena desirable and
otherwise, of anæsthesia are attributable to anoxia   All the cells of
the body require adequate oxygen for the continuance of their normal
functions   Mental impairment and unconsciousness result from pro-
gressive oxygen lack   Production of unconsciousness by diminution of
oxygen tension is exemplified when the airman loses consciousness on
reaching great altitudes and regains it when his aeroplane falls to a
level where the oxygen tension is sufficient to support mental activity
Different individuals lose consciousness at different levels of oxygen
tension, some at a level little reduced from the normal   Loss of con-
sciousness at low oxygen tension can be demonstrated to a class by a
volunteer inhaling an inert gas such as nitrogen or helium   In the
average individual when the alveolar oxygen tension is reduced below
approximately 30 mm Hg   unconsciousness supervenes   Another
method is to place the subject in a large steel decompression chamber
(fig 1) and to lower the atmospheric pressure within   When the
pressure of air inside the cylinder is reduced to about 300 mm Hg
(equivalent to an alveolar oxygen tension of 28 mm Hg), the patient
will lose consciousness   A similar result may be achieved by adminis-
tering a mixture of nitrogen 92 per cent and oxygen 8 per cent at
normal atmospheric pressure

The warning on p 300 against experimenting with anæsthetics
unless another person is present applies with equal force to experi-
ments on the effects of low O_2 tension   In both cases the onset of

unconsciousness is insidious and fatalities have been recorded where this precaution has not been taken
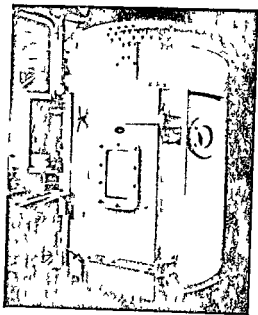
R A F Official   Crown copyright reserved
FIG 1—Decompression Chamber

The way in which body cells utilise oxygen is extremely complex and is not yet fully understood It is known however, that during the oxidative processes many different compounds are formed At each link in the complex chain of compounds, oxygen transfer is mediated by an enzyme If any one of these many enzymes is poisoned, the oxygen transfer cannot take place with the result that the cell is deprived of the oxygen it needs in order to function normally It has been shown that unconsciousness will result if the tension of oxygen to which the tissues are exposed is reduced below a certain level It is possible therefore that the action of anæsthetics is to produce a diminished intracellular oxygen tension despite a normal blood oxygen tension How this is brought about is not known but it is not unreasonable to postulate that the various anæsthetics act by combining with the cell lipoids, thus poisoning one or more of the many enzymes taking place in the complicated process of cell oxidation The result will be that all cells which have absorbed an anæsthetic will lose their capacity to utilise the oxygen circulating in the blood stream in proportion to the amount and potency of the drug they have absorbed This hypothesis is supported by the fact that the amount of oxygen which the tissues consume becomes less and less as anæsthesia deepens although whether this is *post hoc* or *propter hoc* is not proven

It must not be thought that the oxidative processes are entirely abolished by anæsthetics If this were to happen for any length of time cell death would take place This is seen in death from asphyxia following carbon monoxide poisoning, where the oxygen-carrying

capacity of the blood is reduced to less than vital limits   It also occurs when an over dose of an anæsthetic completely abolishes intracellular oxidation   In surgical anæsthesia the oxidative processes are only diminished, and since the action of anæsthetics is reversible complete recovery of cell function takes place after the drug is eliminated

The oxygen-deprivation theory of anæsthesia is bound up with the fact that anæsthetics are readily absorbed by fats   If an anæsthetic is added to a mixture of equal parts of olive oil and water it will be found, after the whole has been well shaken and allowed to stand, that when the olive oil and water separate they will have taken up the anæsthetic in definite proportions   Similarly, the amount of anæsthetic taken up by cell lipoids bears a constant ratio to that remaining in the blood stream   In general *the greater the affinity of the anæsthetic for fats, the greater is its potency*

The functions of different cells of the body as a whole, and indeed of any particular organ diminish at progressive stages of oxygen lack. The various nerve cells themselves differ in their reaction to O_2-lack The more recent the phylogenetic development of a structure the more sensitive it is to O_2 lack, and the more liable it is to irreparable changes if this lack is complete or prolonged   Of the parts of the brain the more recently and highly developed cerebrum reacts to O_2-lack at an early stage, so that rational thinking and consciousness are lost early   This is quickly followed by cerebellar disturbance   These two changes are familiar occurrences in drunkenness, which can be regarded as being the first stage of anæsthesia by alcohol   In deep anæsthesia the processes of metabolism and elimination, i e the functions of the liver and kidneys, may be almost entirely suspended while primitive functions of respiration and cardiac action continue relatively unimpaired   Further deepening of anæsthesia is followed in turn by respiratory depression, cessation of respiration, and finally cardiac arrest

There are two ways of reducing the oxygen available to the tissues in order to produce unconsciousness and anæsthesia   One is by the simple expedient of inhaling an inert gas such as nitrogen with the addition of just sufficient oxygen to support essential metabolic activity , the other is to supply the patient with the usual (or even excess) amount of oxygen, but at the same time to poison the cells so that they cannot utilise it in the normal way   As Macklin[1] puts it, there are two ways of starving a patient   (i) simply by depriving him of food (the analogy is diminution of the oxygen content of the blood as in nitrous-oxide anæsthesia), and (ii) by giving him abundant

DIAGRAM TO ILLUSTRATE BLOOD
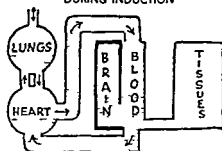BRAIN AND TISSUE SATURATION
DURING INDUCTION

Fig 2 *(After Vosworthy)*—The distribution of blood is the chief factor determining differential distribution of an anæsthetic Because of the large blood supply of the brain equilibrium between arterial blood and brain is rapidly established during induction

In the following four diagrams the brain cell (A) is shown as having a larger minute volume blood supply and greater lipoid content than a cell of any other tissue (B) The difference in lipoid content of the two cells is indicated by the widths of the cell borders The depth of shading in the cell border represents the absorption of the anæsthetic by lipoids and the colour of the cell the amount of oxygen available to it Changes of colour from red to blue indicate progressive diminution of oxygenation and with it of tissue activity

Normal Cell Oxygenation
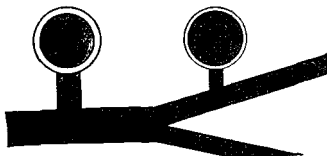
Fig 3

This figure represents arterial blood and cell oxygenation in a normal unanæsthetised subject The blood carries oxygen in excess of metabolic requirements and the capacity of the body cells to utilise oxygen is unimpaired

In the following three diagrams the same depth of anæsthesia is reached by three different methods. The anoxia of the brain cell (A) necessary to achieve this degree of depression is represented by blue

Effect of any Inert Gas (say Nitrogen) on Tissue Oxidation
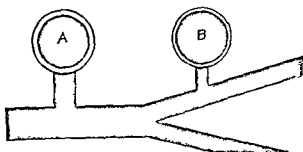
FIG 4

To attain this degree of anoxia of the brain cell by O_2 deprivation alone (as by the inhalation of an inert gas such as nitrogen) necessitates subjecting all other tissue cells of the body to an equivalent degree of oxygen deprivation. Such a reduction of oxygen to the heart muscle would seriously impair its efficiency. The lipoid content of the cells is here immaterial because an anæsthetic is not used

Effect of Ether on Tissue Oxidation
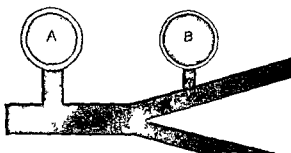
FIG 5

When ether is used the blood is fully oxygenated and anoxia of the brain cell is achieved by the absorption of the drug by the cell

lipoid For reasons already given (less blood supply and less lipoid content of cell) the amount of ether absorbed by the cells of other tissues (B) is less than that absorbed by (A) and the activity of the former is therefore relatively unimpaired This differential reduction of oxygenation ensures that anæsthesia can be achieved without serious depression of tissues other than the brain

Effect of Nitrous Oxide on Tissue Oxidation
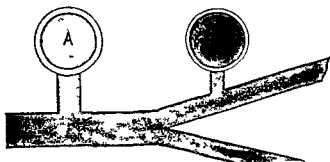
FIG 6

With N_2O, anæsthesia is attained by a combination of the two methods just described and illustrated in figs 4 and 5 N_2O has definite, though weak anæsthetic properties, and when absorbed by cell lipoids causes slight reduction in cell oxidation The additional effect of a reduction of O_2 in the inhaled mixture (and therefore in arterial blood) a factor which affects all cells equally is necessary in order to deepen anæsthesia to the desired level The reduction of arterial oxygen results in less oxygen being available to ' other tissues ' than when ether is being used This explains why ether is a more suitable anæsthetic than nitrous oxide for cases of myocardial degeneration in which a liberal supply of oxygen to cardiac muscle is essential

The ratio of the amount of any anæsthetic absorbed by the lipoid-containing cell to the amount which leaves the cell in the venous blood is constant, i e the fat/water coefficient is constant for any one drug As administration progresses the absorption of the anæsthetic by other tissues increases until their percentage saturation approaches

a low tension   In this way redistribution and elimination of any
agent is effected

Nitrous oxide is a weak anæsthetic   As far as potency is concerned,
it should be regarded as occupying a position between the inert gases
such as nitrogen and an anæsthetic of full potency such as ether
Provided that adequate oxygen is given to support basal metabolic
requirements and that the patient is fit and unpremedicated, it is not
possible with nitrous oxide to produce deep unconsciousness   Although
nitrous oxide is absorbed by the cell lipoids, it is only a weak inhibitor
of oxidation   To enhance its feeble action the oxygen content of the
arterial blood supplying the cell must be reduced   particularly in the
resistant patient   If a robust patient remained anæsthetised with a
mixture of N_2O and 10 per cent O_2 the raising of the O_2 percentage
to 13 might lighten anæsthesia to such an extent as to make the
patient unmanageable   The lightening of anæsthesia is due not to his
being given 3 per cent less N_2O but to his being given 3 per cent
more O_2

Some authorities hold that nitrous oxide has no anæsthetic effect,
but acts only as an oxygen replacer   If this were so any inert gas
would furnish as satisfactory an anæsthesia as does nitrous oxide   If
nitrogen is administered to a robust patient for dental extraction, it
becomes apparent that its anæsthetic properties are not as effective
as are those of nitrous oxide   It is possible to induce anæsthesia in
an anæmic patient with nitrous oxide and 20 per cent oxygen   This
would be impossible if nitrous oxide were simply an oxygen replacer,
since the same patient is fully awake when breathing a mixture of
nitrogen and 20 per cent oxygen—that is, atmospheric air   Nitrous
oxide should be regarded as a mild inhibitor of one of the enzymes in
the process of cell oxidation

Although the many different anæsthetics all produce unconscious
ness the clinical pictures resulting from their use show minor variations
Fats differ in structure, and it is probable that lipoids in different parts
of the brain have selective affinities for particular anæsthetics   This
would explain why some anæsthetics (e g pentothal) in producing a
given depth of anæsthesia depress the respiratory centre more than
others   Generally speaking the safety of an anæsthetic drug decreases
in proportion to the involvement of the respiratory centre in the
general depression of the nervous system

Of the various theories, each having something to commend it, the
most reasonable and that which best explains the action of every
known type of anæsthetic is the oxygen deprivation theory   Incon-
trovertible evidence may some day be produced to account for the

phenomenon of anæsthesia, and it is possible that it will confirm this theory   This working hypothesis at least has the merit of allowing a student to learn how to achieve with safety the type of anæsthesia required in any particular case

REFERENCE

(1) Macklin, A H   1931   *Lancet*   **2,** 897

CHAPTER IV

RESPIRATION

WE breathe for two reasons—to obtain oxygen for the tissues and to exhale carbon dioxide an end product of tissue metabolism   These two functions are equally necessary for the maintenance of life   The essential importance of oxygen is appreciated by every layman   Normally carbon dioxide is a respiratory stimulant but in excessive quantities it becomes a tissue poison and respiratory depressant   Except by misuse of the rebreathing bag of an anæsthetic apparatus or by deliberate experiment the condition of CO_2 excess in the body does not arise unless oxygen lack is also present   For instance respiratory obstruction prevents not only the excretion of CO_2 but also the entrance of oxygen into the body   The patient dies of asphyxia and though the effect of oxygen lack may be augmented by CO_2 excess the former is probably the main cause of death

THE MECHANISM OF RESPIRATION

Breathing is a muscular act just as much as is walking   In breathing the lungs themselves do no work in drawing in air   in expiration too they are passive except for the recoil of their elastic tissue stretched during inspiration   Muscular action causes alternate expansion and contraction of the thoracic cavity by which means air is drawn into and expelled from the lungs   When the volume of the thoracic cavity is increased the pressure inside the thorax is reduced and the difference between pressures inside and outside the chest causes a movement of air into the lung

The Muscles of Respiration

1 **The diaphragm**—The most important respiratory muscle is the diaphragm   This large umbrella shaped fibromuscular septum separates the thorax from the abdomen   Its convex surface forms the floor of the thorax its concavity the roof of the abdominal cavity   The peripheral part of the diaphragm is muscular the centre tendinous   During inspiration the muscle of the diaphragm contracts   its dome

becomes flattened pushing down the abdominal viscera In expiration it relaxes and the volume of the thoracic cavity is diminished as the diaphragm is pushed upwards by the abdominal viscera This action is normally assisted by the contraction of the abdominal muscles
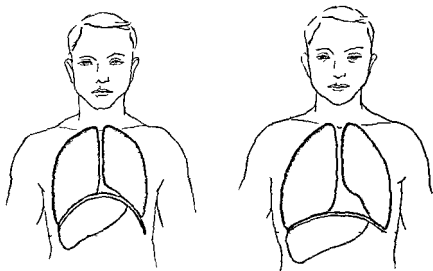
FIG 7

(L) *Expiration*—The relaxed diaphragm is forced upwards by contraction of the abdominal muscles on the abdominal viscera

(R) *Inspiration*—The dome of the diaphragm is flattened by contraction The diameter of the thorax is increased

2. Muscles raising and depressing the ribs in quiet respiration—In quiet inspiration the external intercostal muscles raise the ribs and so increase the volume of the thorax

In expiration the contraction of the internal intercostals depresses the ribs The external and internal intercostals are assisted in their respective functions by muscles of less importance

3 Accessory muscles of respiration—In emergency conditions necessitating forced inspiration the full action of the inspiratory muscles already described is augmented by others which include the sterno-mastoid pectorales and trapezius These muscles of the neck and shoulder are attached below to the upper part of the thorax and when they contract they raise the sternum and upper ribs upwards and outwards Normally, in forced inspiration the volume of the

thoracic cavity is thus markedly increased, if, however, there is any obstruction to respiration, the volume of the thoracic cavity is not greatly altered but the negative intrathoracic pressure increases considerably

Forced expiration is assisted by powerful contraction of the abdominal muscles

Significance of Activity of the Accessory Muscles of Respiration

Except in violent exercise when increased respiratory exchange is essential, it is improbable that the reader will often see the accessory inspiratory muscles functioning as respiratory aids   If the patient is at rest, the accessory muscles of respiration come into play only if there is respiratory obstruction, and then only if he is conscious   The aid of these muscles is essential to the attempt to overcome the effect of respiratory obstruction, and if the anæsthetist, by producing unconsciousness, removes the action of these voluntary muscles, he may be responsible for a preventable death   The management of anæsthesia in a patient suffering from respiratory obstruction from œdema of the larynx is dealt with on page 268

THE VOLUME OF THE RESPIRED AIR

The maximum capacity of the lungs is about 5 litres   The greatest volume of air which can be exhaled following the deepest possible inhalation is known as the " vital capacity," and is about 4 litres   The volume of the ' residual air," i e the air which still remains in the lungs, is thus approximately 1 litre   During quiet breathing the lungs contain about 2 5 litres, and the amount of air entering and leaving the lungs during respiration is about 400 c c   This latter is known as the " tidal air ' of which the amount remaining in the nasopharynx, trachea, and bronchi, approximately 150 c c , is known as the " dead-space air," because it takes no part in the gaseous exchange   The volume of the tidal air is variable, whereas that of the dead space air, for all practical purposes, remains constant

Effective respiration is the difference between the tidal air and the dead space air   In an average quiet respiration, it is therefore 400 c c — 150 c c = 250 c c   Calculation of effective respiration shows that one deep breath of 600 c c (600 — 150 = 450) introduces as much oxygen as nine shallow breaths of 200 c c (200 — 150 = 50 , 50 × 9 = 450)   To appreciate this is to realise the ineffectiveness of

shallow breathing and that one breath of oxygen has less influence
in diluting the average gaseous contents of the lungs (2 500 c c) than
is commonly imagined

PHYSICAL CONSIDERATIONS

The transfer of gases from the lungs to the blood and in the
reverse direction is governed by the gas laws   Dalton s Law (1807)
states that if two gases which do not react together chemically are
mixed the pressure exerted by the mixture is equal to the sum of the
pressures of the component gases   In a mixture the gases should be
thought of individually and the share which each one has in the total
pressure is called its partial pressure   This pressure is proportional
to the concentration of that gas in the mixture   In a closed vessel
containing a mixture of 4 parts of nitrogen and 1 part of oxygen
the pressure exerted by the oxygen is the same as if the one part of
oxygen were enclosed in the vessel alone   The same applies to the
nitrogen

The quantity of a given gas which a liquid dissolves depends on
(i) the solubility of the gas (ii) the pressure of the gas to which the
liquid is exposed and (iii) the temperature of the liquid   When
equilibrium is attained the tension of the gas in the liquid is the same
as the tension of the gas in the atmosphere adjoining the liquid

GASEOUS EXCHANGE IN THE LUNGS

The lungs are composed of fibrous muscular and elastic tissues
in contact on one side with the alveolar air and covered on the other
side with minute blood capillaries   If the interior of the lung were
a single hollow chamber like a balloon only a very small proportion
of the air within would come into contact with the surface   The
lungs are divided and subdivided many times so that the surface
of the terminal minute alveolar sacs is very extensive providing a
very great area for contact of air with the lung epithelium and its
surrounding capillaries   The exchange of gases is thus greatly
facilitated
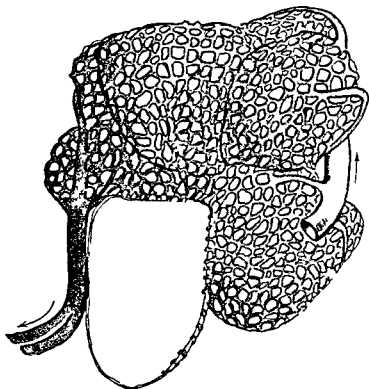
Fig 8 (*After Miller* 1893 1) — Alveoli of the lung are shown covered with blood capillaries An alveolus is seen cut across Greatly magnified

It is estimated that owing to these divisions the surface or ' breathing " area of the lungs is 200 square metres ² or 110 times that of the skin covering the body On the assumption that the 2,500 c c of air in the moderately distended lungs is spread equally over this area the thickness of the resultant layer of air is of the order of 0 01 mm The exchange of gases between the air inside the alveolar sacs and the blood in the capillaries surrounding them is facilitated because the walls of both these structures consist of only one layer of flattened endothelial cells The ultimate air-containing saccules of the lungs are called " alveoli," and the air they contain is referred to as " alveolar air "

Any anæsthetic to be inhaled must be in the form of a gas The transference from the lungs to the tissues of a gas (e g nitrous oxide or ether vapour) to maintain anæsthesia and of oxygen to maintain life, and the transference in the reverse direction of carbon dioxide, involve processes easy to understand Gases separated by a membrane

freely permeable to them tend to come into equilibrium so that the pressure exerted by (or tension of) a gas becomes identical on both sides of the membrane   An everyday illustration of this is provided by the bottle of soda water which contains CO_2 bottled under tension   When the stopper is removed the CO_2 bubbles off until its tension in the water is equal to that in the surrounding air   If on removal of the stopper the soda water were separated from the air by a permeable membrane the process would still take place

The Exchange of Oxygen and Carbon Dioxide
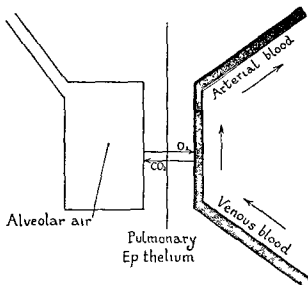
Fig 9

Alveolar air and arterial blood are in equilibrium so far as the tensions of oxygen (100 mm Hg) and of carbon dioxide (40 mm Hg) are concerned   Venous blood changes to arterial blood in the lungs by giving up carbon dioxide to, and taking in oxygen from, the alveolar air through the pulmonary epithelium

The composition of alveolar air differs from that of the outside atmosphere in that it has given up some oxygen to, and taken up carbon dioxide from, the blood passing through the lungs   Expired air is a mixture of alveolar air and atmospheric air from the dead space

	Inspired Air (atmospheric)	Alveolar Air	Expired Air
O_2	20 96 per cent	14 per cent	16 per cent
CO_2	0 04 per cent	5 5 per cent	4 4 per cent
N_2*	79 per cent	80 5 per cent	79 6 per cent
Water vapour	Unsaturated in varying degree	Saturated	Practically saturated

Certain apparent discrepancies will be noticed in the table   If all the oxygen absorbed were used by the body to oxidise carbon only, a volume of CO_2 equal to the volume of O_2 used would be expired, and the sum of the volumes of O_2 and CO_2 in inspired air, alveolar air, and expired air would be the same   Actually a little of the oxygen is used to oxidise hydrogen from food to H_2O and since water vapour is not taken into account in the table the volume of dry gases expired is somewhat less than the volume inspired   As the volume of nitrogen remains unchanged its percentage in the expired air will be greater than in the inspired

The pressure of gases within the lungs is approximately the same as that of the outside atmosphere (760 mm Hg)   Since the alveolar air is saturated with water vapour which exerts a partial pressure of 45 mm Hg , the sum of the partial pressures of the remaining gases is $(760 - 45 = 715)$ mm Hg   The tension of oxygen in the alveolar air is therefore $14/100 \times 715 = 100$ and that of carbon dioxide is $5\ 5/100 \times 715 = 40$

The oxygen requirement of a normal person at rest is such that about one-third of the oxygen content of the arterial blood is removed during its circulation through the tissues   An average sample of

* Including other inert gases which total, approximately, 1 per cent

venous blood returning to the heart shows 100 c c to contain about
13 5 c c of oxygen at a pressure of 35 mm Hg

The oxygen tension of alveolar air (100 mm Hg) is greater than
the oxygen tension of venous blood (35 mm Hg) There is an effective
pressure of (100 — 35) mm Hg driving oxygen from the alveolar air
into the blood This difference of 65 mm Hg is known as the
"pressure gradient" The process of raising the partial pressure of
oxygen in the venous blood from 35 to 100 mm Hg is part of the
transformation of venous blood into arterial blood This pressure
gradient is sufficient to cause the hæmoglobin, which in the average
venous blood is only two thirds saturated with oxygen to become
almost completely saturated by taking up an additional 7 c c of oxygen
per 100 c c of blood so that 100 c c of arterial blood contain 21 5 c c
of oxygen at a pressure of 100 mm Hg The arterial blood gives up
oxygen to the tissues, according to their metabolic requirements
The blood leaving the tissues with its oxygen tension considerably
diminished returns to the lungs as venous blood , and so the cycle
goes on

The partial pressure in mm Hg of carbon dioxide in the tissues
varies between 50 and 70, in venous blood it is 45, and in alveolar
air 40 These figures show that there is always a pressure gradient
of carbon dioxide from the tissues, via the venous blood to the alveolar
air The pressure gradient driving carbon dioxide in the reverse
direction to oxygen across the pulmonary epithelium, i e from venous
blood into the alveolar air, is only 5 mm Hg (45 — 40 = 5) This
is a much smaller pressure gradient than that for oxygen, but, since
carbon dioxide is highly diffusible through the alveolar membrane, the
gradient is sufficient even during the short time taken by the blood to
traverse the pulmonary capillaries, to allow equilibrium to be estab
lished between the venous blood and the alveolar air Carbonic
anhydrase, an enzyme in the red corpuscles accelerates the liberation
of carbon dioxide from the blood In passing through the lung
capillaries, every 100 c c of blood transfers approximately 6 c c of CO_2
to the alveolar air

The Exchanges of Anæsthetic Gases and Vapours

During induction of inhalation anæsthesia, the tension of the
anæsthetic gas is higher in the alveoli than in the blood One
factor which influences the rapidity of induction is the magnitude of
this pressure gradient (gas tension in alveoli minus gas tension in
blood) When undiluted nitrous oxide is inhaled, the pressure gradient

forcing the gas from the alveoli to the blood is very high, and induction is therefore rapid. After removal of the mask, the pressure gradient will be in the reverse direction. The factors which determine the speed of elimination of a gaseous anæsthetic are the rate with which the tissues give it up (rapid in the case of nitrous oxide) and the difference in pressure (this time in the opposite direction) between the nitrous oxide in the blood and that in the pulmonary alveoli. As this is also great, recovery from nitrous oxide will be rapid. With ether, induction is inevitably slower. One reason is that because of its irritating properties, a high concentration of the vapour cannot be breathed at the commencement, with the result that in the early stages the partial pressure of ether in the alveoli remains small. Recovery also is slower than from nitrous oxide, because, after administration is stopped, the tissues give up ether slowly to the blood and therefore the pressure gradient from the blood to the lungs must necessarily be small.

TRANSPORT OF GASES BY THE BLOOD

Oxygen

Oxygen is transported in the blood by the hæmoglobin in the red blood corpuscles. The hæmoglobin of arterial blood is normally 95 per cent saturated with oxygen. The amount of oxygen with which hæmoglobin combines depends on the oxygen tension to which it is exposed. Under normal conditions (an alveolar oxygen tension of approximately 100 mm Hg) the amount is maximal and is 1·34 c.c. of oxygen per 1 gm. of hæmoglobin. Although exposure to a higher tension of oxygen (e.g. by inhalation of pure oxygen) increases the amount dissolved in the blood plasma, it cannot increase, to any appreciable extent, the amount taken up by the hæmoglobin since this is already almost saturated with oxygen.

Although an increase of oxygen tension above the normal 100 mm Hg in alveolar air cannot increase the amount of oxygen taken up by the hæmoglobin, a decrease in tension is followed by a decrease in percentage saturation of hæmoglobin with oxygen. The percentage saturation of hæmoglobin with oxygen is not in direct proportion to the oxygen tension to which it is exposed. The actual relation is expressed by the well known " association " curve of hæmoglobin.
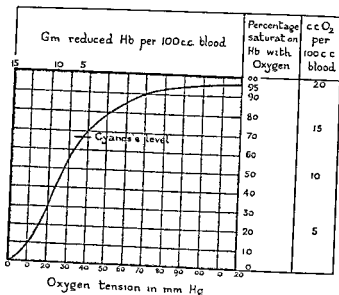
FIG 10

Oxygen-association (or Oxygen-dissociation) Curve of Hæmoglobin —
The curve is that of hæmoglobin in blood at 37°C containing CO_2
at a pressure of 40 mm Hg   Within limits, increase of carbon
dioxide assists the unloading of oxygen from the hæmoglobin to the
tissues, so that association curves will vary with the CO_2 tension
in the blood   This factor is not of practical importance to the
anæsthetist, and the CO_2 tension in the blood should never be increased
deliberately with the object of assisting tissue oxidation

The effect on blood oxygenation and on the colour of a normal
patient of inhaling mixtures containing various percentages of oxygen
is shown in fig 12, p 55

The total amount of oxygen which arterial blood carries depends
on two factors   These are (i) the hæmoglobin content of the patient's
blood, and (ii) the oxygen tension to which it is exposed

(i) Each 100 c c of blood of an average person contain 15 gm of
hæmoglobin   Since each 1 gm combines with 1 34 c c of oxygen, it
follows that 100 c c of blood can carry, by means of its hæmoglobin,
15 × 1 34 c c = 20 c c of oxygen   Besides this, a small amount,
about 0 3 c c, is carried in solution in the plasma   The oxygen-carrying
capacity of the blood is proportionately reduced by any degree of

anæmia   Thus in a patient with 50 per cent hæmoglobin the blood can carry only half as much oxygen as can the blood of a normal person with 100 per cent hæmoglobin

(ii) The serious effect of even a small reduction of alveolar oxygen tension on patients suffering from anæmia is considered on pp 57 and 73

Nitrous Oxide

In common with other anæsthetics, nitrous oxide is carried partly within the red cells and partly in solution in the blood plasma During nitrous-oxide anæsthesia, the oxygen content of the inspired mixture is low   The alveolar oxygen tension is diminished, with corresponding diminution of the percentage saturation by oxygen of the circulating hæmoglobin   Should cyanosis exist it is due to the presence of reduced hæmoglobin (i e hæmoglobin not combined with oxygen), and in no way is it specifically associated with the presence of nitrous oxide in the blood

Carbon Dioxide

Blood can take up about twenty times the amount of carbon dioxide that water can at the same temperature and under the same carbon dioxide pressure   Thus about 5 per cent of the CO_2 carried in the blood is in solution, the remaining 95 per cent being in chemical combination, mainly in the form of bicarbonate ions   In order to explain the transport of CO_2 reference will first be made to certain general physico chemical principles , afterwards their application to blood will be discussed

PHYSICO-CHEMICAL PRINCIPLES *

Any aqueous solution contains electrically charged particles known as ions   Pure water is composed very largely of undissociated molecules of H_2O, but some molecules are dissociated to form hydrogen ions (H^+, acid) and hydroxyl ions (OH^-, alkaline)   The H ions are charged with positive and the OH ions with negative electricity Every aqueous solution contains both H and OH ions and the product of their concentrations, measured in gram equivalents per litre, is found to be constant, 10^{-14} The reaction (acidity or alkalinity) depends on the ratio of H^+ to OH^-

The reaction of a solution is said to be neutral when the H and OH ions are present in equal concentrations (10^{-7}) This is the case with pure water in which the formation of an H ion must of necessity be accompanied by that of an OH ion $H_2O \leftrightarrows H^+ + OH^-$ When the

Hydroxyl ion concentration	Hydrogen ion concentration	pH	
0^{-0}	0^{-14}	14	
0^{-1}	0^{-13}	13	$N/_{10}$ NaOH
0^{-2}	0^{-12}	12	
0^{-3}	0^{-11}	11	$N/_{10}$ Na_2CO_3
0^{-4}	0^{-10}	10	
0^{-5}	0^{-9}	9	
0^{-6}	0^{-8}	8	
0^{-7}	0^{-7}	7	Pure water
0^{-8}	0^{-6}	6	
0^{-9}	0^{-5}	5	$N/_{10}$ acetic acid
0^{-10}	10^{-4}	4	
0^{-11}	10^{-3}	3	
0^{-12}	0^{-2}	2	
0^{-13}	0^{-1}	1	$N/_{10}$ HCl
0^{-14}	0^{-0}	0	

Increasing alkalinity · Neutral · Increasing acidity
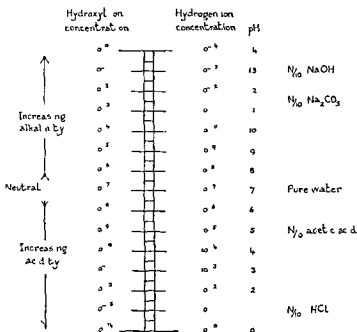
FIG 11—This scale includes the whole range of possible degrees of acidity and alkalinity of any aqueous solution To express the reaction of a solution in terms of OH or of H ion concentration would be cumbersome To obviate this a pH scale is used It will be seen that the pH value is the logarithm of the reciprocal of the H ion concentration or more simply it is the index number of the H ion concentration with the negative sign changed to positive

H ion concentration is the greater the solution is acid, and when OH ions are in excess the reaction is alkaline No matter whether H or OH ions preponderate the reaction of the solution is always expressed in terms of the concentration of hydrogen ions present In an acid solution this ranges from 10^{-0} to 10^{-7}, and in an alkaline solution from 10^{-7} to 10^{-14} gram equivalents per litre An H ion concentration of 1 gm equivalent per litre corresponds to 1 gm of hydrogen ions per litre In a solution with an H ion concentration of 10^{-3} the weight of H ions is 10^{-3} (i e 0 001) gm per litre The reaction of an aqueous

solution can be expressed in terms of cH (H ion concentration), but as it is difficult to form a conception of such small weights, it is more convenient to refer to the concentration in terms of a logarithmic scale where the units are simple numbers Only the numerical value of the power of the H ion concentration is used, omitting the negative sign The figure is then referred to as the pH Thus, for an acid solution with an H ion concentration of 10^{-3}, the pH is 3, and this denotes that the solution contains 0 001 gm (1 mg) of H ion per litre An alkaline solution with an H ion concentration of 10^{-9} (or 0 000000001) gm per litre is referred to as having a pH of 9 It will be seen that the lower the index figure the greater is the concentration of H ions and the more acid the solution, 10^{-3} (1/1000) being a greater concentration than 10^{-8} (1/100000000) As already stated, the H ion concentration of a neutral solution, one which yields an equal number of H and OH ions as does pure water, is found to be 10^{-7} The pH of such a solution is 7 The pH of an acid solution lies between 0 and 7, and that of an alkaline solution between 7 and 14 A strong acid, e g hydrochloric acid, is one which in solution behaves as if it were dissociated almost completely into its constituent ions, yielding a high concentration of H ions, and having therefore a low pH A weak acid such as lactic acid dissociates less , the number of free H ions is less, and the pH is therefore higher

Any solution containing the salt of a weak acid has the property of preventing a change in pH, when a stronger acid is added to it, until a critical point is reached The salt of a weak acid is said to act as a *buffer*, i e it damps down changes in pH which would otherwise occur when a stronger acid is added The quantity of strong acid which can be added to the solution before any appreciable change of pH occurs is a measure of the *buffering power of that solution* Salts of weak bases, amino acids or proteins may also act as buffers

The salt of a weak acid and a strong base, e g sodium acetate, when dissolved in water, is dissociated partly into its constituent positive and negative ions

$$Na\ Ac \rightleftharpoons Na^+ + Ac^-$$
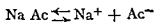
In any aqueous solution, the existence of a high concentration of acetate ions is impossible, since a high proportion of these immediately unite with H ions from the water to form undissociated acetic acid This leaves Na ions, together with the OH ions from the water, in dilute solution, and since these do not associate to form un ionised NaOH, the preponderance of OH over H ions results in the solution being alkaline

The addition of a stronger acid (i e one more dissociated than acetic acid) may be regarded as the addition of H ions   If HCl is added to a solution of sodium acetate, the H ions immediately combine with acetate ions   Since the product of the concentration of the H$^+$ and Ac$^-$ ions in the solution always equals a constant fraction of the undissociated acetic acid, more sodium acetate dissociates, and this process goes on until practically all the added H ions have united with acetate to form undissociated acetic acid   The ability of the solution to act as a buffer by mopping up H ions persists until the supply of undissociated sodium acetate has been used up   After this point has been reached, the addition of even small amounts of strong acid will cause the pH to fall rapidly

For simplicity in the above explanation the salt of a monobasic acid was chosen   However, in blood plasma the main buffer is sodium carbonate—the salt of a dibasic acid

In solution carbonic acid dissociates in two stages, thus

$$H_2CO_3 \rightarrow H^+ + HCO_3^-$$
$$\downarrow$$
$$H^+ + CO_3^{--}$$
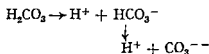
The first stage is the dissociation of a moderately strong acid, and the second stage the dissociation of a weaker acid   In plasma the sodium carbonate, a salt of the weaker acid (and the analogue of sodium acetate in the example given) may be regarded as partly ionised into sodium ions and carbonate ions

$$Na_2CO_3 \rightleftarrows 2Na^+ + CO_3^{--}$$
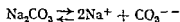
Since carbonic acid dissociated to the second stage is a weak acid, a high concentration of carbonate ions in solution is impossible   Most of these ions immediately join with hydrogen ions from the water to form ions of the stronger acid, first stage dissociated carbonic acid

$$CO_3^{--} + H^+ \rightarrow HCO_3^-$$
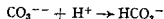
As a consequence of these changes, the solution contains mainly the following ions

$$2Na^+ + HCO_3^- + OH^-$$

and it has an alkaline reaction because hydroxyl ions predominate   When the plasma is exposed to a certain tension of carbon dioxide, part of the carbon dioxide dissolves   Of the amount dissolved a small and constant fraction is present in the form of undissociated carbonic acid (H_2CO_3), and of this carbonic acid a small fraction is ionised to

form hydrogen ions and bicarbonate ions (HCO_3) Of the bicarbonate ions, in their turn, a still smaller fraction is ionised to hydrogen ions and carbonate ions (CO_3) The hydrogen ions added in this way are the equivalent of the hydrogen ions of the strong acid (HCl) in the sodium acetate example The added hydrogen ions can be regarded as combining with the carbonate ions, formed by the dissociation of the sodium carbonate, to form ions of the stronger acid first stage dissociated carbonic acid This mopping up of the added H ions continues until all the sodium carbonate has dissociated and its carbonate ions have become bicarbonate ions

The *main chemical changes resulting from the addition of* CO_2 to plasma can be summarised in the following equation

$$Na_2CO_3 + HOH + CO_2 \rightarrow 2NaHCO_3$$

Through the transformation of sodium carbonate, the salt of a weak acid, into sodium bicarbonate, the salt of a stronger acid, the solution has been enabled to absorb a considerable amount of CO_2 with extremely little change of pH

THE REACTION OF THE BLOOD AND THE TRANSPORT OF CARBON DIOXIDE *

By " reaction of the blood " is meant the degree of acidity or alkalinity of the plasma This is expressed in terms of pH The reaction of the blood remains almost constant, the limits of variation being pH 7 3 and pH 7 6 Reactions outside these narrow limits cause cell death and are therefore lethal to the organism When one considers that acid products resulting from metabolic activity are constantly being added to the blood stream, it is a striking fact that the reaction of the blood varies so little The capacity of the blood to prevent changes in its reaction which would be incompatible with life is well illustrated by comparing the effect of addition of acid to water with the effect of addition of acid to blood The addition of *0 1 c c of N/10 hydrochloric acid to 10 c c of blood (with, say, a pH of 7 6)* does not reduce the pH below 7 3, whereas a similar quantity of acid added to 10 c c of distilled water has a profound effect on the pH—causing it to fall from about 7 to 3

Besides its buffering power blood has two other mechanisms of defence to maintain the constancy of its reaction The first of these is the excretion of carbon dioxide by the lungs, the second is the excretion of any excess of acid or alkali by the kidneys Further

* See footnote, p 39

reference will be made to these mechanisms after the buffering power of blood and carbon dioxide transport have been considered

If plasma on the one hand and blood on the other are exposed to the same tension of CO_2 the volume of this gas taken up by the plasma is of the order of one-half of that taken up by the blood, nevertheless, the pH of the plasma falls more   In other words, plasma which is in contact with erythrocytes is much better buffered than is separated plasma   The process whereby the erythrocytes augment the buffering power is the so-called ' chloride shift '

Preliminary to describing the shift itself, it is necessary to mention the composition of the erythrocyte and certain properties of hæmoglobin   The main substance within the erythrocyte is the potassium salt of hæmoglobin   Both oxy hæmoglobin and reduced hæmoglobin are amino-acids, i e in the presence of a strong base they behave as weak acids   Since the concentration of potassium hæmoglobinate within the red cell is large   it follows that the contents are heavily buffered

The shift which involves also a property of the red cell membrane, operates in the following way   Some of the CO_2 which enters the blood from the tissues remains in the plasma, and the rest passes into the corpuscles   In both media the CO_2 combines with water to form carbonic acid which dissociates into H and HCO_3 ions   Since the corpuscle has much greater buffering power than the plasma the dissociation proceeds more extensively within the corpuscle than outside it   The membrane of the red cell is permeable to anions such as HCO_3^- or Cl^-, but impermeable (or only slightly permeable) to cations such as Na^+ or K^+ Because of the greater concentration of HCO_3 ions within the corpuscle a few will diffuse out, and since they cannot be accompanied by ions of the opposite charge, the corpuscle will be left with a net positive charge and will tend to attract negative ions from the plasma   Of these chloride ions from the NaCl of the plasma, are most readily available and are the chief species of ion to pass inwards   Bicarbonate ions from the corpuscle are therefore exchanged for chloride ions from the plasma, and the increase in plasma bicarbonate helps to prevent the rise of acidity of the plasma which would otherwise occur when CO_2 is added to it

Reduced hæmoglobin is a weaker acid than is oxy hæmoglobin, and therefore mops up H ions more readily than does oxy hæmoglobin   Reduced blood therefore takes up CO_2 in the tissues more readily than does oxygenated blood   Conversely when oxy-hæmoglobin is formed again in the lungs, the CO_2 is liberated more readily from the blood.

When in the lungs, reduced hæmoglobin is transformed to oxy-hæmoglobin, and CO_2 is excreted into the alveolar air, the chloride shift is reversed

It is known that the combination of carbon dioxide with water to form carbonic acid is a slow reaction, as also is the reverse reaction Within the erythrocyte is the enzyme carbonic anhydrase, the function of which is to accelerate the reaction in both directions Without the accelerating action of this enzyme, the time which the red cell spends in the tissue capillaries would be too short to enable it to take up the carbon dioxide offered there, and, similarly, the time which the red cell spends in the lungs would be too short to enable it to unload the carbon dioxide

Besides the main buffering systems described above, the proteins of the plasma and the phosphates make a small contribution to the buffering power of blood Moreover, the —NH_2 groups of the hæmoglobin have the power of combining very rapidly with about 10 per cent of the carbon dioxide of the blood

Although blood is a very efficient buffer solution, and is able to absorb considerable quantities of acid or alkali with only a trifling change of pH, its capacity in this respect is not unlimited The buffer mechanism of the blood is the *immediate* reaction of the body to any influence tending to displace the pH If the body did not possess further safety-valves for the elimination of excess acid or alkali, either might eventually accumulate to a degree sufficient to displace the pH of the blood outside the limits consistent with life The safety-valves are the processes of respiration and urinary excretion The part played by respiration is illustrated by the immediate increase of respiratory exchange which follows moderately vigorous exercise The CO_2 resulting from the increased metabolism stimulates the respiratory centre, and respiratory exchange remains above normal until the excess CO_2 is eliminated

More vigorous exercise may cause lactic acid, a stronger acid than carbonic acid, to pass into the blood-stream This results in the production of carbonic acid from the bicarbonate of the plasma :

$$HL + NaHCO_3 \rightarrow NaL + \underbrace{H^+ + HCO_3^-}_{H_2CO_3}$$
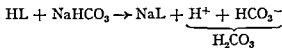
The carbonic acid in its turn becomes dissolved carbon dioxide, respiration is stimulated, and the excess carbon dioxide excreted through the lungs This leaves the subject in a state in which the blood bicarbonate is reduced A slower readjustment of the pH of the blood

then occurs. Any lactic acid which is not utilised in the body is excreted through the kidneys in combination with weak bases rendering the urine acid

REGULATION OF RESPIRATION

It is evident that a great number of muscle groups are involved in respiration. In forced respiration the nares dilate and contract the vocal cords are actively abducted and in fact most of the muscles of the abdomen thorax and neck are brought into action. The co-ordination of their working is ensured by centralisation of the control of respiration in one part of the brain. This respiratory centre situated in the medulla has an inherent rhythmic activity of its own but it is greatly influenced by outside stimuli and in addition its sensitivity to these stimuli is enhanced or depressed by modifying factors. It is convenient and probably correct to regard carbon dioxide as *the* stimulant to respiration. The respiratory response to a given tension of CO_2 depends on the state of the respiratory centre at that particular time.

Various conditions render the respiratory centre less or more sensitive to the action of CO_2. Of these oxygen lack is the most complicated and will be considered first.

The Effect of Oxygen lack

The direct effect of a diminished blood oxygen tension on the respiratory centre is to reduce its sensitivity. This would depress respiration were it not for a compensatory mechanism. The respiratory centre is linked by nervous pathways to the carotid sinus and aortic arch. A moderate diminution of oxygen tension in the blood stream initiates impulses in the carotid sinus and aortic arch which are transmitted by nerves to the respiratory centre rendering it *more* sensitive. If the oxygen lack is not too severe this indirect stimulation prevails over the direct depression with a resultant increase in the respiratory rate such as is seen for example in the hurried respirations of deep nitrous oxide anæsthesia. This effect is not seen if the respiratory centre is markedly depressed (e g, by morphia) in any case it is evanescent and should not be regarded as of practical importance in anæsthesia. It is wrong ever to reduce the oxygen intake in the hope of stimulating respiration. If the oxygen tension is decreased beyond a moderate degree the compensatory action of the carotid sinus reflex is lost and the respiratory centre becomes greatly depressed through the direct effect of oxygen lack.

The effects of oxygen-lack on the respiratory centre can be summarised by stating that a reduction of blood oxygen can affect respiration in two opposite ways. A small reduction causes increased activity of the respiratory centre (via the carotid sinus) with a corresponding increase in ventilation. When the diminution in oxygen intake is considerable, this early indirect stimulating effect is lost, and the direct depressant effect operates unopposed, decreasing the sensitivity of the centre to such a degree that the response to an unaltered tension of CO_2 in the blood is lessened, and the volume of pulmonary ventilation is progressively decreased. Oxygen lack must, for practical purposes, then be regarded as a respiratory depressant. The respiratory centre cannot function properly if it is not supplied with an adequate amount of oxygen, and it will quickly cease to function altogether if oxygen deprivation is extreme.

Depression of the Respiratory Centre

The respiratory centre is rendered less sensitive to carbon dioxide not only by marked oxygen lack but by all drugs used to aid or produce anæsthesia. This is an undesirable, but inevitable, part of the toxic action of all anæsthetics. Some are more toxic than others in their action on the centre, and their use is therefore more likely to result in respiratory depression. Of these, morphia is an extreme example. Its action on the respiratory centre is so marked that if given experimentally in doses large enough to produce unconsciousness, the respiratory frequency may fall to 10 per minute before this is attained. Respiration remains depressed and the reduced pulmonary ventilation results in a rise of blood CO_2 well above that which normally stimulates respiration, in fact, only when it reaches this high level will the centre send out an inspiratory stimulus. If administration of morphia were continued until deep anæsthesia resulted, the respiratory rate might fall to the dangerously low level of 5 per minute.

A degree of oxygen lack which may not be serious to a lightly anæsthetised patient may be fatal to one whose respiratory centre is already depressed by large doses of anæsthetic drugs. If during light anæsthesia respiration is obstructed for a short time (e.g. by the tongue falling back), it will probably recommence spontaneously as soon as the obstruction is relieved. A similar obstruction in a patient deeply anæsthetised is more serious. Here the effect of oxygen lack superimposed on a respiratory centre already depressed by anæsthetic drugs may be fatal unless oxygen is supplied to the patient by artificial respiration. The practical point arising from this is that the deeper

the anæsthesia the more imperative becomes the maintenance of a clear airway and an adequate oxygen supply

The sensitivity of the respiratory centre to CO_2 may be depressed by any stimulus (e g a foreign body or strong ether vapour) to the laryngeal entrance We infer this from the reactions to an attempt to pass an endotracheal tube when anæsthesia is not deep enough, particularly if the patient has been premedicated with morphia Respirations up to now have been normal, but as the tube touches the laryngeal entrance the cords may become closely adducted Depression of the respiratory centre from the laryngeal irritation is expressed in any one of the following three ways (a) Respirations continue but their volume is greatly diminished The cords separate only very slightly, insufficiently, in fact, to allow the passage of a tube The gaseous exchange, however, is enough to maintain life (b) Respiration ceases until the effect on the respiratory centre of the rising CO_2 tension in the blood forces the patient to separate his cords and inspire Inspiration here is often preceded by an explosive cough, i e an expiratory effort (c) The cords remain approximated and respiration suspended until the heart's action becomes irregular from oxygen-want. The tube has to be removed to allow normal respiration to be resumed

Increase in the Sensitivity of the Respiratory Centre

The respiratory centre is rendered more sensitive to the action of carbon dioxide by pain, excitement, fear, rage, and by slight oxygen deficiency Increase of breathing during emotion or excitement is a phenomenon familiar to all It occurs during over-activity of the sympathetic nervous system and is probably a primitive reflex, the effect of which is to fill the lungs with air in preparation for the sudden muscular activity involved in fight, or in flight from danger It manifests itself not only by an increase in the rate and depth of respiration, but also in a change from nasal to oral breathing

During nasal administration of nitrous oxide, increase in sensitivity of the respiratory centre is evidenced (i) during induction, where from excitement the patient abandons nasal respiration and breathes rapidly through the mouth, and (ii) during anæsthesia too light for the operation being performed For example, if dental forceps are forcefully applied, a lightly anæsthetised patient breathing tranquilly through the nose may be stimulated to inspire vigorously through the mouth, with the result that anæsthesia lightens rapidly. Nose-breathing can be restored only by suspending the operation (so removing the afferent stimuli)

and covering the mouth until anæsthesia has been deepened sufficiently   If the rare condition of complete nasal obstruction is excepted, all patients nose-breathe if anæsthetised sufficiently deeply. Mouth breathing is always a sign of light anæsthesia

Role of Carbon Dioxide

As has been stated, CO_2 is *the* stimulus to respiration   The blood in the lung capillaries and the atmosphere in the lung alveoli are in gaseous equilibrium   Any change in the tension of the gases in the pulmonary capillaries is therefore immediately reflected in a change in composition of the alveolar air and vice versa   During exercise CO_2 is liberated from the tissues into the venous blood, causing increased tension of CO_2 in the alveolar air and therefore in the arterial blood resulting in stimulation of the respiratory centre   The increased pulmonary ventilation leads to increased loss of CO_2 by way of the expired air until its tension in the alveolar air is again normal

It is found experimentally that CO_2 depletion following prolonged voluntary deep breathing allows the breath to be held longer than would otherwise be possible   The apnœa persists until, as the result of metabolic activity, the CO_2 tension in the alveolar air and arterial blood rises sufficiently to stimulate the respiratory centre to such an extent that the subject is forced to breathe again

During induction of nitrous-oxide anæsthesia in a nervous, unpremedicated patient, it is often found that, after the rapid ' puffing ' respiration of excitement, a period of apnœa follows, the duration of which depends on the degree of hyperpnœa preceding it   This is due to reduction of the CO_2 content of the alveolar air and blood by the excessive breathing   Such a phase of apnœa may exceed 30 seconds   Since reduced oxygen intake is a necessary accompaniment to induction with N_2O, the period of apnœa can result in slight cyanosis   This may disturb the anæsthetist if he is not familiar with the condition and the cause   There is no need for alarm because this state of affairs occurs only during light anæsthesia and the rising CO_2 content of the blood and alveolar air will soon stimulate the respiratory centre to its normal activity   The fact that breathing is nasal when respiration is resumed after a period of such apnœa is accounted for by the deepened anæsthesia

Respiration is regulated by the action of CO_2 on the respiratory centre in such a way that the tension of CO_2 in the alveolar air is maintained at an almost constant level

By regulating the excretion of CO_2 respiration is one of the important mechanisms by which the reaction of the blood is kept constant   Any alteration in the CO_2 content of the alveolar air or arterial blood causes an almost instantaneous change in the respiration which helps to maintain the CO_2 of the alveolar air and the hydrogen ion concentration of the blood at constant levels

If the tension of CO_2 in the alveolar air is raised beyond certain limits this gas loses its stimulating effect and becomes a powerful respiratory depressant   This depression can be produced by prolonged inhalation of an atmosphere containing approximately 10 15 per cent CO_2 It follows the inhalation of higher concentrations of CO_2 more rapidly

Nervous Stimuli

The respiratory centre is also affected by impulses from the lungs via the vagi   When the lungs are distended to a certain tension impulses travel up the vagi to the respiratory centre cutting short the inspiratory phase whereupon expiration begins   This phenomenon is known as the Hering Breuer reflex   Similarly emptying of the lungs is followed by vagal impulses which in turn initiate inspiration   These reflexes have the effect of making respiration less deep and more rapid than it would otherwise be

Probably this action of the vagus is important in artificial respiration   If the Hering Breuer reflex is not lost forceful artificial deflation of the lungs is followed by impulses causing inspiration   Repeated artificial filling and emptying of the lungs may in this way eventually play a part in the re establishment of natural breathing

The same effect may be seen when N_2O is administered under pressure   The distension of the lungs so produced may institute a weak expiratory effort   If these two effects are evenly balanced apnœa will result until either the pressure of gas administered is lowered or the alveolar CO_2 rises sufficiently to force a breath

ANOXIA

This is the condition of deficient oxygen supply to the *tissues* [a]   Since death from anæsthesia must be regarded as death from anoxia it is well to see at what points the transfer of oxygen from the atmospheric air to the tissues may break down

Causes of Anoxia and their Treatment

(A) **Respiration of atmospheres deficient in oxygen**—The treatment is obvious

(B) **Any interference with respiratory exchange**

1 *Respiratory obstruction* as by occlusion of the larynx by the tongue or a foreign body or by laryngeal spasm

2 *Depression of the respiratory centre* as by sedative drugs or by lack of oxygen This decreases pulmonary ventilation by diminishing both rate and amplitude of respirations

3 *Emphysema phthisis and pneumonia* causing diminished area of air/blood contact

These three diminish the respiratory minute volume

4 *Mucus in the bronchial tree* And rarely

5 *Pulmonary fibrosis*

4 and 5 cause decreased permeability by purely mechanical means

Any respiratory obstruction must be removed and conditions 3 4 and 5 necessitate an increase in the oxygen supply above normal in order to increase the alveolar oxygen tension

(C) **Anæmia**—A given alveolar oxygen tension results in the oxygenation of a definite *proportion* of the hæmoglobin of the blood Thus at a fixed tension the oxygen carrying capacity of the blood depends on its total hæmoglobin content Reference to the oxygen association curve of hæmoglobin (p 38) shows for example that when the alveolar oxygen tension is 33 mm Hg the hæmoglobin irrespective of the total amount present is 60 per cent saturated with oxygen While the degree of oxygen lack resulting from this alveolar oxygen tension is scarcely enough to render an average patient unconscious it could be fatal to a patient suffering from advanced anæmia

In anæmia the amount of hæmoglobin available for the transport of oxygen is diminished Even with a normal alveolar oxygen tension the supply of oxygen to the tissues is diminished because of deficient transport If the alveolar oxygen tension is lowered the hæmoglobin will be only partly saturated with oxygen so that the supply to the tissues already reduced because of the anæmia will be further diminished The treatment should be prophylactic to ensure an adequate alveolar oxygen tension and if despite this anoxia still exists the only effective treatment is to provide an increase in the oxygen carrying capacity of the blood by blood transfusion

(D) **Diminished rate of circulation**—Here although the oxygen tension and the amount of hæmoglobin may be normal the slowly circulating blood does not carry oxygen to the tissues quickly enough

for their needs   This condition of circulatory insufficiency with fall
of blood pressure may occur in cardiac disease or as a result of shock,
or overdose of anæsthetic drug   If the condition occurs during
anæsthesia administration must be stopped immediately and the head
should be lowered to increase the circulation to the medulla

(E) **In the tissues themselves** —At least one respiratory
enzyme or ferment is present in all body cells   The ability of the
cells to utilise oxygen depends on the activity of the enzyme the
poisoning of which (the classical example is by cyanide) causes abrupt
and fatal termination of the oxidative processes throughout the body
A gradual increase in the concentration of anæsthetic within a cell has
a corresponding poisoning effect on the enzyme with corresponding
diminution of cell oxidation and activity   If the enzymes of the cells
of the respiratory centre are poisoned in this way the centre will suffer
from anoxia though abundant oxygen may be circulating in the
blood   The respiratory centre is thus depressed and the minute
volume exchange falls off appreciably   In the extreme case the
respiratory centre is so depressed that it does not respond to any
stimulus and respiration ceases   The treatment is to stop administra
tion of the anæsthetic immediately   Provided circulation continues
and the respiratory centre is not irreparably poisoned artificial respira
tion will supply oxygen for the activity of the heart and the continued
circulation will result in excretion of some of the anæsthetic drug
Progressive diminution of the tension of anæsthetic in the blood will be
followed by a shift of anæsthetic from all the other tissues (including
the respiratory centre) until a concentration is reached at which the
centre will be able to utilise the oxygen recover its activity and again
respond automatically to the stimulus of CO_2 If interference with the
metabolism of the respiratory centre has been severe and prolonged
it may never recover its activity and even if it does the damage
may be so severe that respiration continues for only a few hours   It
should be noted that in this fifth type of anoxia the patient has a good
colour even *in extremis*   Because of tissue poisoning he is dying of
oxygen want in the midst of plenty

The gravity of a patient's condition increases if any two or more
of the causes of anoxia co exist

REFERENCES

(1) Miller, W. S 1893 *J Morph* **8,** 165.

(2) Winton, F R , and Bayliss, L E 1937. *Human Physiology.* London. 164

(3) Peters, J P , and Van Slyke, D D 1931 *Quantitative Clinical Chemistry* **1.** *Interpretations* London 577.

Read also :

Cocking, T T *pH Values.* 5th Edition, published by British Drug Houses London

Drinker, C. K 1938. *Carbon Monoxide Asphyxia.* London, New York, Toronto

Henderson, Y. 1938 *Adventures in Respiration* London.

La Motte, F. L , Kenny, W R , and Reed, A B 1932 *Hydrogen Ion Concentration and its Practical Application* London

CHAPTER V

CYANOSIS

CYANOSIS is evidence of incomplete oxygenation but its absence whether the patient be conscious or unconscious is not an assurance that the circulating hæmoglobin is fully oxygenated In the healthy subject breathing air cyanosis may be seen in localised areas in which there is a decrease in the rate of flow of blood through the capillaries as the result of exposure to cold or from increased viscosity of the blood from other causes the slowly circulating blood is then deprived by the tissues of a greater percentage of oxygen than usual Cyanosis occurs too in a generalised form during inhalation of atmospheres grossly deficient in oxygen It is seen also in certain pathological conditions even if the patient is breathing air The commonest of these are (i) changes in the lungs which retard the transference of oxygen from the alveoli to the capillaries and (ii) cardiac failure resulting in stagnation in the systemic capillaries Cyanosis may also result from the use of drugs of the sulphonamide group Apart from this last cause its presence denotes the existence in the blood stream of a considerable proportion of hæmoglobin in the reduced form—i e not oxygenated

In this chapter the occurrence of cyanosis during anæsthesia *in an otherwise healthy patient* is considered and the absence of this colour change in the anæmic subject under similar conditions is also explained

The anæsthetist must appreciate the ætiology and significance of cyanosis if he is to administer an anæsthetic safely Anæsthetics with the conspicuous exception of nitrous oxide can produce profound anæsthesia even in the presence of unlimited oxygen and indeed should always be administered in an atmosphere containing at least 20 per cent of oxygen Under these conditions cyanosis is a danger signal indicating a breakdown in the transfer of this oxygen to the lungs the commonest causes being respiratory obstruction or respiratory arrest If either of these is present it must be relieved at once

In nitrous-oxide anæsthesia conditions are different This anæsthetic of limited potency has often particularly in dentistry to be administered without the help of premedication To be effective in an average patient its weak anæsthetic qualities have to be reinforced deliberately by a reduction of the oxygen intake to such a level that

some degree of cyanosis is usually noticeable Cyanosis is here unavoidable and not of serious import It exists in the presence of a free airway, and since the light anæsthesia of N_2O does not depress the respiratory centre, the O_2 lack can be relieved at will by the addition of oxygen to the mixture or by allowing the patient a few breaths of atmospheric air

The great majority of patients can become cyanosed while there is still enough oxygen carried in the blood stream to support the vital functions of the body, but the anæmic patient may die of anoxæmia without showing cyanosis The presence or absence of cyanosis depends on the quantity of reduced hæmoglobin in the blood Reduced hæmoglobin is purple (in contrast with fully oxygenated hæmoglobin which is bright red), and when present in the capillaries in sufficient concentration imparts a blue colour to the skin, irrespective of the amount of oxyhæmoglobin present As has been described (p 38) the quantity of reduced hæmoglobin in the blood is determined by the total hæmoglobin content and the tension of oxygen in the alveolar air to which it is exposed This latter, in turn, is dependent upon (a) the oxygen percentage in the mixture of gases inspired, (b) the adequacy of the pulmonary ventilation, and (c) the barometric pressure The last, because its fluctuations, in practice, are negligible, is unimportant

% O2 in inhaled mixture	Alveolar O2 tension in mm Hg	Hæmoglobin % saturation	cc O2 per 100cc. blood	Reduced Hæmoglobin gm per 100cc blood	Colour of patient
21	100	95	20	0	
12	35	66	13	5	
8	28	50	10	7 5	

Fig 12—Relationship between the oxygen percentage in the mixture of gases inspired and the colour of the normal patient For example with 8% oxygen in the mixture the alveolar oxygen tension becomes as low as 28 mm Hg , the hæmoglobin is then 50% saturated so that 100 c c of blood carries 10 c c of oxygen and contains 7 5 gm of reduced hæmoglobin The extreme right hand column shows the corresponding colour change

Cyanosis will not appear until the alveolar oxygen tension is so far diminished that 5 gm (or more) of hæmoglobin per 100 c c of blood remain reduced. The existence of this absolute amount of reduced hæmoglobin in the blood determines the development of cyanosis. This point may be illustrated by comparing the effects of inhalation of a mixture of nitrous oxide with 12 per cent oxygen (which will result in an alveolar oxygen tension of approximately 35 mm Hg) on three types of patients: a man with an average hæmoglobin content (i e 15 gm per 100 c c of blood) a plethoric man (with say, 18 gm per 100 c c of blood) and an anæmic patient (with, say, 9 gm per 100 c c of blood). Irrespective of whether a person is plethoric, normal or anæmic an oxygen tension of 35 mm Hg is sufficient to oxygenate only two-thirds of the circulating hæmoglobin. The arterial blood of the average man therefore will contain 5 gm per cent of reduced hæmoglobin (the capillary blood will contain a higher percentage) and he will be cyanosed: the plethoric man with 6 gm per cent of reduced hæmoglobin in his blood will be appreciably cyanosed, while the anæmic man whose blood will contain only 3 gm per cent of hæmoglobin in the reduced form will not be cyanosed at all, since 5 gm per 100 c c of blood is the minimum concentration necessary to produce this colour. Calculation of the amount of oxygen carried by the Hb (p 38) shows, however, that the blood of the plethoric subject, despite the fact that he is cyanosed, still has a greater oxygen content $(18 \times \frac{2}{3} \times 1\ 34 = 16)$ c c per 100 c c of blood than the normal $(15 \times \frac{2}{3} \times 1\ 34 = 13\ 4)$ c c and carries double the amount of oxygen $(9 \times \frac{2}{3} \times 1\ 34 = 8)$ c c carried by the blood of the anæmic patient who shows no colour change. Since nitrous oxide is carried in simple solution in the blood plasma, the blood nitrous-oxide concentration of these three types of patients will be the same. If the patients are tested for depth of anæsthesia, it will be found that the anæmic is the most profoundly anæsthetised (because he is suffering from the greatest oxygen lack). Even when conscious the diminished hæmoglobin content of his blood subjects him to some degree of O_2-lack, so that his general fitness, and with it his resistance to anæsthesia, is reduced. The plethoric and the average man are invariably more robust and anæsthetic resistant, and so there is greater difficulty in rendering them unconscious and in maintaining anæsthesia.
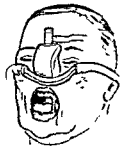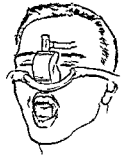
Since a concentration of 5 gm of reduced hæmoglobin per 100 c c of blood is necessary to produce cyanosis, it follows that a patient with an advanced anæmia (of, say, 33 per cent Hb, i e 5 gm of Hb per 100 c c of blood) can never show this colour change. It would be necessary for all his hæmoglobin to be in the reduced form for cyanosis
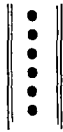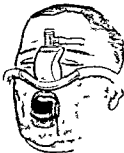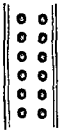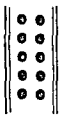
to occur   Since no oxyhæmoglobin would then be circulating, such a patient must die of oxygen lack before cyanosis could manifest itself
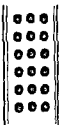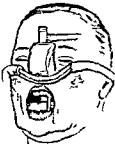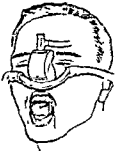
Recognition of the above facts is essential if nitrous oxide is to be given with safety and confidence   In an unpremedicated, plethoric man, the oxygen content of a nitrous oxide oxygen mixture has to be lowered to such an extent that cyanosis is inevitable if anæsthesia is to be achieved   On the other hand, the administration of a similar mixture to an anæmic patient *will not cause any change of colour*, but, if continued, will produce a truly desperate state of tissue anoxia If the anæsthetist interprets this latter patient's muscular tranquillity and unchanged colour as proof that anæsthesia is not deep, the peace of his fool s paradise will soon be rudely disturbed by the urgent necessity for resorting to artificial respiration
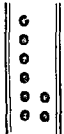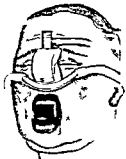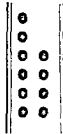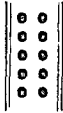
Fig 13 represents the degree of oxygenation of the blood and the complexions of the three types of patients described, when breathing air, when breathing a mixture of nitrous oxide and 12 per cent oxygen (i e sufficient to produce two-thirds saturation of the hæmoglobin), and the depths of anæsthesia thereby attained   These latter are indicated by a X in the last column, which depicts the four planes of the third, or surgical, stage of anæsthesia (fig 15, p 63)   The red and blue circles indicate the number of grams of oxyhæmoglobin and of reduced hæmoglobin respectively present in 100 c c of blood in these three types of patients

Fig 14 shows the oxygen reduction in a nitrous oxide oxygen mixture necessary to produce upper first-plane anæsthesia in these patients   In the plethoric patient the oxygen percentage has to be reduced to about 7, and profound cyanosis is inevitable ; in the normal, *to about 12, which results in mild cyanosis* ; *and in the anæmic only to about 18 and the patient's colour remains unchanged*

TYPE	Gms of Hb per 100 cc blood	Hb fully saturated with O₂	
			APPEARANCE
PLETHORIC	18		
AVERAGE	15		
ANAEMIC	9		

FIGURE
(For text

Hb.⅔ saturated with O₂ leaving ⅓ as reduced Hb.			cc of O_2 per 100 c. blood	Depth of anaesthesia reached
Gm of reduced Hb per 100 cc.	APPEARANCE	Gm of Hb combined c̄ o_2 per 100cc		×
			$12 \times 1.34 = 16$	1
				2
				3
				4
			$10 \times 1.34 = 13.4$	1 ×
				2
				3
				4
			$6 \times 1.34 = 8$	1
				2 ×
				3
				4

TYPE	Gm of Hb per 100cc blood	Hb fully saturated with O₂		Depth of anaesthesia to be reached	
			APPEARANCE		
PLETHORIC	18			1	*
				2	
				3	
				4	
AVERAGE	15			1	*
				2	
				3	
				4	
ANAEMIC	9			1	*
				2	
				3	
				4	

FIGURE
(For text

Estimated O_2 % in N_2O O_2 mixture	Gm of reduced Hb per 100cc blood	APPEARANCE	Gm of Hb combined with O_2	cc O_2 per 100cc blood
7				$10 \times 1 \cdot 34 = 13 \cdot 4$
12				$10 \times 1 \cdot 34 = 13 \cdot 4$
18				$7 \cdot 5 \times 1 \cdot 34 = 10$

CHAPTER VI

SIGNS OF ANÆSTHESIA*

IN considering the effects of administering increasing amounts of an anæsthetic we are concerned primarily with those exerted on the function of the central nervous system as judged by changes in the muscular responses evoked by external stimuli and by changes in respiration It is only these that are directly observable There is progressive depression in the function firstly of the cerebral cortex, later of the midbrain which is involved in the completion of reflex arcs by which the individual reacts unconsciously to noxious stimuli still later of the spinal cord and lastly of the respiratory centre in the medulla oblongata

The term ' unconscious ' will be used here as implying that the patient cannot give a correct account of what was happening to him or in his immediate environment during that period A man may be unconscious in this sense even though stimuli are beginning to provoke reflex actions so complexly co ordinated that they simulate skilled reactions dependent on paths from and to the cerebral cortex We assume also that consciousness proper is associated solely with the functioning of the cerebral cortex, and that the activities of the rest of the nervous system are purely automatic or reflex.

It is generally easy to tell whether a patient is unconscious or not, but in anæsthesia, determination of the depth of unconsciousness reached is important and this can be assessed only by the interpretation of landmarks or signs which are frequently present at different stages Is the patient adequately anæsthetised for the operation contemplated ? Is anæsthesia too light and response to stimuli therefore possible, unnecessarily deep for the operation being performed, or even dangerously deep ? We have heard a doctor enquire from time to time during the induction period, ' Are you asleep yet ? " apparently assuming anæsthesia to be attained when the patient ceased to answer Other unorthodox procedures, not calculated to instil confidence into a patient approaching unconsciousness, are to prod his eye vigorously to discover the reaction or to stick a pin into him or pull his hair to see whether there is any response to these stimuli !

* This chapter deals with anæsthetics other than nitrous oxide I or signs of nitrous oxide anæsthesia see Chapter VII.

With very few exceptions excess of any anæsthetic can bring about
death, however perfect the airway or abundant the supply of oxygen
To facilitate determination of the depth of anæsthesia it is proposed
to employ the very useful plan devised by Guedel [1] of California, of
dividing the period between the commencement of induction and the
point of death into the four stages (I) analgesia (II) delirium,
(III) surgical anæsthesia and (IV) respiratory paralysis shown in the
chart (fig 15), and to mark on the chart the changes in the intensity
of certain selected nervous activities and reflexes during these stages
Further, Guedel subdivided stage III that of surgical anæsthesia into
four planes '
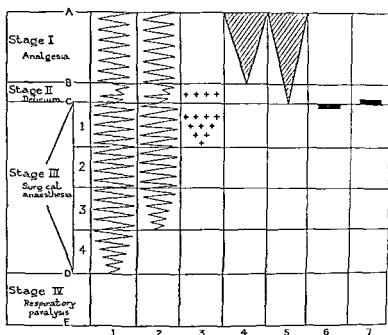
FIG 15   (*After Guedel [1]*)

Column 1 —Abdominal respiration   Column 4 —Eyelash reflex
        2 —Thoracic respiration   5 —Eyelid reflex
        3 —Eyeball activity   6 —Swallowing reflex
                        Column 7 —Vomiting reflex

Guedel based his chart on observations made when administering
ether on an open mask to numerous patients Morphia or other
sedatives were not given beforehand sufficient oxygen was always
available, and, needless to say, a clear airway was maintained through-
out The conclusions drawn from administering ether roughly hold

good for all anæsthetics capable of producing death even when oxygen
is abundantly supplied The chart, of course, is not invariably accurate
for every patient or for every anæsthetic For this to be possible
there would have to be no individual variance in the reactions of
patients, and all anæsthetics would have to produce identical results
In the chapters on individual anæsthetics we draw attention to signs
of anæsthesia characteristic of the particular anæsthetic when these
do not conform closely to Guedel's chart

During the **first stage**, that of ' analgesia," there is progressive
decrease in reaction to painful stimuli, and progressive loss of con-
sciousness, the latter becoming complete at the end of the stage
(line B) If the eyelashes of a conscious patient are touched this mild
stimulus will as Human[2] has pointed out, evoke movements of the eye-
lid, but this response gradually diminishes until it is lost at the level
indicated by line B   The first stage is generally easily recognised
The patient is conscious and generally co-operative Occasionally
there is hysteria, which may turn into struggling or delirium in the
second stage In any case it is difficult to draw a sharp line between
the end of the first stage and the beginning of the next

The **second stage** is known as that of ' delirium," although the
delirium may be merely potential or may be manifested by incoherent
talk or actual struggling During this stage the patient is unconscious
and will subsequently remember nothing of what has happened He
may become turbulent or remain peaceful according to the anæsthetic
used, the type of patient he is the presence or absence of stimuli,
and the skill of the anæsthetist Conscious control is removed, and he
may struggle either from a fear, the existence of which had been con-
cealed during the first stage, or because he is being subjected to some
stimulus e g pain from premature incision or extraction, or even the
noise made by dropping instruments, or as a response to injudicious
conversation

It is noticed that any inadvertent noise during this stage is
apt to evoke in those who have been subjected to air raids,
responses of terror such as would follow explosion of a bomb

Forcible restraint is liable to initiate or aggravate a patient's struggles
This too is the result of stimuli evoking in the aggressive the response
which might be expected Until the patient has entered the third
stage of anæsthesia, a soothing word or a pat on the arm is often more
effective than vigorous handling If, however, a struggling patient

does not respond to gentle treatment he must be restrained firmly enough to prevent him damaging himself or others

Struggling during the second stage is liable to occur (i) in the patient who is not really calm but has remained so during the first stage by the exercise of great self control During a slow induction the amount of struggling is likely to be proportionate to the nervous tension, and the release of mental control dominant during consciousness may result in unexpected violence Struggling occurs most frequently and most violently in the taut, active type of patient, (ii) if the patient is unpremedicated, (iii) in alcoholics or other drug addicts, (iv) when induction is too slow, the patient being kept too long in this stage of potential delirium, (v) when the anæsthetic is given badly, e g as when the concentration of ether vapour is increased too rapidly

The incidence of delirium varies with different anæsthetics, being greatest with inhalation agents, particularly if induction is slow For example, induction with ether alone is slow, because strong ether vapour is unpleasant, and the patient therefore cannot inhale it in concentrations sufficient to induce anæsthesia rapidly In contrast to this, when a patient is given an intravenous anæsthetic such as pentothal the stage of potential delirium is passed through in a matter of seconds Nitrous oxide also affords a rapid and pleasant induction Nevertheless struggling occurs not infrequently with this anæsthetic, because unless the oxygen intake is markedly diminished, it may be impossible to produce surgical anæsthesia in an unpremedicated patient

Delirium may occur also in the second stage *after* an operation when the patient is emerging from the effects of the anæsthetic, though it manifests itself then more often as restlessness than as violent struggling, since the patient is back again in bed, where noise and external stimuli are less Further, post-operative depression decreases any tendency to violent movement On the other hand, there may be sufficient post-operative pain to cause restlessness which will persist unless morphia is given

Third stage—From level C, where stage II passes into stage III, muscular depression is sufficient to prevent the patient from moving his limbs in response to stimuli This level marks the onset of surgical anæsthesia and is recognisable by (i) the onset of automatic respiration, particularly noticeable in cases where the breathing has previously been irregular, and (ii) the loss of the eyelid reflex—i e closing of the eyes evoked by retraction of the eyelid Only in the third stage (C–D), that of surgical anæsthesia, should surgical operations be performed As shown in fig 15, this stage is extensive and is sub-

5

divided into four planes   Plane 1 is characterised by progressive
decrease both in the range of excursion of movements of the eyeballs
and in the rapidity of these movements until at the bottom of the
plane the eye comes to rest in the central position where it remains
throughout the deeper planes   The range of eyeball movement is
represented on the chart by crosses   Plane 2 is dealt with at the end
of this paragraph   At the upper boundary of plane 3 there begins a
progressive decrease in thoracic respiration   Paralysis of the inter-
costal muscles increases until at the bottom of the plane respiration
is carried on solely by the diaphragm   Plane 4 is marked by complete
paralysis of the thoracic muscles and a progressive diminution in the
activity of the diaphragm and at the bottom of this plane respiratory
effort is absent because of paralysis of the respiratory centre from over-
dose of the anæsthetic drug   Plane 2 by the process of exclusion is
characterised by central immobile eyeballs and complete functioning
both of the intercostal muscles and of the diaphragm

In the fourth stage (D–E) that of respiratory paralysis the
heart still beats and the patient will remain alive if kept adequately
oxygenated by artificial respiration   By continuing artificial respira-
tion enough anæsthetic may be excreted to allow the respiratory centre
to recover and initiate respiratory movements on its own account
E marks the level of cardiac arrest   A few cases are on record where,
through massage or needling of the cardiac muscle the heart beat has
been restored and the patient revived even after this level has been
reached

Guedel has estimated that the minimum times in minutes taken
by different inhalation anæsthetics to reduce a patient to respiratory
arrest are roughly as follows   ether 10–30 chloroform 4–12 ethyl
chloride 1–4 cyclopropane $\frac{1}{2}$ 3   No matter what the drug or its
method of administration the time depends on the rate at which it is
given and on the rate of its absorption   Animal experiment shows
that a drug such as pentothal if rapidly injected can produce respira-
tory arrest in the circulation time of the blood

On general principles the patient should be reduced to the minimal
state of depression necessary for the operation in hand to be performed
to the surgeon's satisfaction   The shorter and the less profound the
anæsthesia the smaller is the risk to which the patient is exposed
during operation and the less the likelihood of post-operative compli-
cations   In other words the lighter and shorter the anæsthesia,
the better

The depth of anæsthesia necessary for different operations varies

considerably, e g for tooth extraction muscular relaxation is not essential (the mouth being kept open by a prop), and it can be performed at the very top of plane 1—in fact, as is well known, it occasionally takes place inadvertently at the bottom of stage II without deleterious effect on the patient   Examples of other operations which can be performed in plane 1 are   amputations, operations on the chest and on the brain, and any other procedures not requiring marked muscular relaxation   Operations in the abdominal cavity, however, necessitate profound anæsthesia to abolish the protective reflex spasm of the abdominal muscles   The reflexes from the upper abdomen are more vigorous than from the lower, and it can be stated, as a generalisation, that plane 2 is necessary for lower abdominal surgery (e g appendicectomy) and plane 3 for most operations in the upper abdomen (e g excision of the gall bladder)

REFERENCES

(1) Guedel, A E   1937   *Inhalation Anesthesia*   New York
(2) Human, J U   1938   *The Secrets of Blind Intubation and the Signs of Anæsthesia*   London   21

CHAPTER VII

SIGNS OF NITROUS-OXIDE ANÆSTHESIA

ALMOST every anæsthetic can reduce a patient to the point of death, even though he is abundantly supplied with oxygen   The one notable exception is nitrous oxide, the lack of potency of which is not sufficiently appreciated   If this gas, mixed with enough oxygen to meet basal metabolic requirements, is administered to an average, fit, patient who is unpremedicated, not only is it impossible to reach the point of death but it is often difficult to subdue him sufficiently to allow even a minor operation to be performed   This can easily be
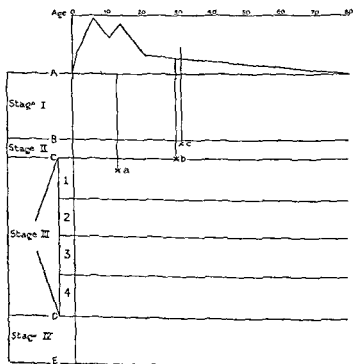
FIG 16

verified in a patient who is to have a tooth extracted, by administering nitrous oxide with, say, 12 per cent oxygen, and then allowing the dentist to begin   The great majority of normal patients in these circumstances will show considerable response to the stimulus   Some will scarcely lose consciousness and will give a vivid and unflattering account of the experience

Guedel[1] points out that nitrous oxide given with sufficient oxygen to satisfy basal metabolic needs can depress a patient in average health only a certain amount—from the line A to about the level (a), a man of 30 in normal health starts anæsthesia from the metabolic rate level (p 89) corresponding to his age, and he will be depressed to (b), the same man stimulated by pain and fear will have his starting point raised above the normal average metabolic rate line and can be depressed by a similar mixture of nitrous oxide and oxygen only to the level (c), which is just below the level at which consciousness is lost, if it is desired to anæsthetise the patient in this condition with nitrous oxide as the sole anæsthetic, anæsthesia can be achieved only by reducing the oxygen in the mixture   In a robust patient this deprivation of oxygen is often the main factor in the resulting unconsciousness   The signs of anæsthesia are then complicated, and possibly overshadowed, by the signs of acute asphyxia   The more the oxygen is reduced, the more are the signs of anæsthesia masked by those of asphyxia   Because of the introduction of this asphyxial element, which has no place in other anæsthetics, the utility of Guedel's chart for depth of anæsthesia is invalidated and the anæsthetist must rely on new landmarks

It is essential to understand, during the administration of nitrous oxide, which signs indicate that the patient is (i) adequately anæsthetised, and (ii) dangerously asphyxiated

The beginner often finds it difficult to know both when a patient is unconscious and when he is ready for operation   To judge the moment precisely needs much experience   It is easy to subdue the patient until he is obviously deeply anæsthetised, but by doing so refinements of anæsthesia are missed   It is impossible to give any fixed rules for determining the percentages of nitrous oxide and oxygen which will produce the correct depth of anæsthesia for any particular patient or for any particular operation

The chief signs of nitrous-oxide anæsthesia in order of importance are respiratory signs, muscular signs, eye signs, and colour changes

Respiratory Signs

The onset of automatic respiration is, with nitrous oxide as with other anæsthetics, the sign that surgical anæsthesia has been reached In an average induction the breathing becomes automatic after about twelve full breaths of nitrous oxide have been taken, that is after about 40 seconds   There is, however, this difference between the onset of surgical anæsthesia with nitrous oxide and with less pleasant inhalation anæsthetics such as ether and ethyl chloride—with the former, induction is not oppressive, so that the patient who is not nervous breathes regularly from the start, and since the early stages of anæsthesia are passed through rapidly, only the highly nervous show any irregularity of the respiratory rhythm during induction   Indeed, if, during this period the patient controls himself well, there will be little if any appreciable change in the character of respiration as unconsciousness supervenes   This is in marked contrast to the obvious transition from irregular to automatic respiration which occurs at the onset of surgical anæsthesia when a less pleasant induction is produced, as by ether or ethyl chloride   In dental anæsthesia, the presence or absence of nasal breathing is an all important indication of the depth of anæsthesia   When nitrous oxide is given nasally a one-way valve on the nose piece through which expirations are audible allows any change in the character of the respiration to be detected at once   The first thing to be learnt is that unless respiration is regular and is entirely nasal the patient is not sufficiently anæsthetised to tolerate any operative interference These must be regarded as negative signs, since in a co-operative patient respiration may show these features from the beginning of induction When such a patient is in the analgesic stage the respirations may lead the anæsthetist to think that anæsthesia has been reached, and he may allow the dentist to begin work   If the patient is very placid, he may continue to breathe through his nose even though he is aware of the extraction   It is obviously undesirable for extractions to be performed at this stage, but this is not a grave mistake if the patient is sufficiently placid, because, as a rule, when he recovers he merely remarks as a matter of interest that he knew of the removal of the tooth   The presence of nasal breathing does not prove that the patient is adequately anæsthetised, *but its absence shows that he is not*

Surgical anæsthesia sufficient for minor operations, such as incision of an abscess or dental extractions, is characterised by automatic respirations resembling those of natural sleep, though somewhat deeper and quicker   At a slightly deeper level of anæsthesia there may be a gentle snore or slight catch in inspiration, and the presence of either

of these more positive signs is a confirmation that anæsthesia is deep enough for minor surgery

In a normal or plethoric patient, deepening anæsthesia is marked by an increase in the frequency of respiration, followed by a change in its character The free, natural respirations give place to snatchy, irregular, guttural, or sobbing breaths These abnormal respirations are due to oxygen-lack, which causes irregular, jerky, unco ordinated action of the laryngeal muscles and are seen only in the robust who, by this time, show other confirmatory signs of unconsciousness At a deeper stage still there is a tendency for inspirations to be short and sobbing, whilst expirations become markedly prolonged

Muscular Signs

Since muscular relaxation results from deep anæsthesia it is seldom a feature of nitrous oxide anæsthesia Fortunately relaxation is not essential for a minor operation such as the opening of an abscess, nor for dental extractions, because here the mouth is propped open beforehand During induction the patient may make movements which are purposeful For example, he may cross his legs or fold his arms to make himself more comfortable he may attempt to push away the operator to show that he is not yet anæsthetised or he may put up his hand to adjust the mask or nose-piece because it is uncomfortable. During light anæsthesia a painful stimulus may lead to movement or a moan which shows that anæsthesia is inadequate The movement, such as an attempt to grasp the operator's hand, is usually purposeful, and the moan is one of pain This movement and moan are generally easily distinguishable from those of deep anoxia in which condition the movements are purposeless and unrelated to stimuli and the moan is a phonation which does not give the impression of being caused by pain If the oxygen intake is markedly reduced the tone normally present in muscle is readily superseded by spasmodic contraction This spasm occurs first in the small muscles of the tongue, but is here *rarely noticed, and its early manifestation can be more conveniently* observed in the eye, where spasm of the intrinsic muscles pulls the eye out of centre If the eyeball is examined at this stage, it will usually be found moving from side to side At a later stage it becomes fixed in an eccentric position, generally downwards Twitching and spasmodic contractions of the larger muscles of the arms and legs follow Later there may be opisthotonos, and inspiratory crowing caused by spasm of the adductor muscles of the larynx If deprivation of oxygen is continued still further, this spasm gives way to complete muscular relaxation, quickly followed by death

Eye Signs

Eye signs are helpful to a beginner but the experienced anæsthetist comes to use them less and less until finally he rarely if ever inspects the eye

Early in induction if the eyelid is drawn back it will be found resistant (fig 17) The anæsthetist should never inspect the patient's

FIG 17

eye at this stage If unconsciousness has not been reached the lifting of the eye lid may be construed as a prelude to premature operation and so alarm the patient A patient so disturbed may begin to breathe through his mouth or may move his arms to indicate that he is not unconscious If the anæsthetist wishes to inspect the eyeball he should make reasonably sure before he lifts the lid that the patient is sufficiently anæsthetised to be quite unconscious

If the eye appears to be able to focus (fig 18) unconsciousness has not been reached The eye soon loses this look of intelligence and it is often possible to tell solely by watching the eye the time at which consciousness is lost Later the eyeball develops a quick hori zontal movement the rapidity and excursion of which diminish with deepen ing anæsthesia

The characteristic eye movements of nitrous-oxide anæsthesia are all mani festations of muscular spasm due to oxygen lack

FIG 18

In a healthy patient anæsthesia deep enough for minor operations is attained before the eyes become fixed out of centre but if the adminis trator wishes to make doubly sure that the patient is adequately anæsthe

tised, he should continue until this eccentric fixation is reached (fig 19) The degree of anoxæmia at this stage is not enough to cause marked spasm of the larger muscles of the body, and if anæsthesia is maintained at this level any small operation not requiring muscular relaxation (e g dental extraction) may now be performed   If the muscles of the eye are all in spasm, the action of the strongest will predominate That the eye is generally pulled downwards has been attributed,

perhaps unconvincingly, to the fact that the inferior rectus muscle is more strongly developed than the others because it is the muscle in most frequent use, pulling the eye downwards, as in reading

In deep nitrous-oxide anæsthesia not only are the eyes fixed eccentrically, but in addition the pupils are widely dilated   The size of the pupil is useless as a
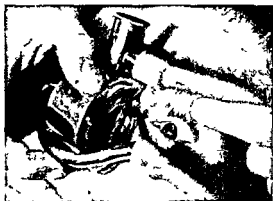
FIG 19

guide because it is often dilated throughout, in the early stages from fear and excitement, in the later from anoxia   Extreme dilatation of the pupil does indeed denote serious anoxia but by the time it appears other warning signs are present

Colour Changes

Cyanosis, as a sign of anæsthesia, is unreliable (Chapter V)   Its presence is no indication of danger nor is its absence an assurance of safety   In the average patient, however, when unpremedicated or only mildly premedicated, as is usual in the outpatient operating theatre or the dental surgery, the onset of cyanosis roughly coincides with the attainment of the correct depth of anæsthesia for operation This has led, perhaps instinctively, to the use of colour change as a rough guide even by the experienced   The anæsthetist, while relying primarily on the automatic character of the respirations nevertheless accepts the colour change as a confirmatory sign of unconsciousness   It is, however, the last sign on which reliance should be placed, and a reminder may be given here that in severe anæmia it cannot even occur

THE ANÆMIC PATIENT

Analysis of the signs of deep nitrous-oxide anæsthesia in the normal patient, e g the snatchy, jerky respirations the twitching muscles, the eccentric eye, reveals that they are almost entirely due to muscular spasm resulting from oxygen-lack It cannot be emphasised too strongly that signs which depend on anoxial spasm of muscles may be entirely absent in anæmic subjects, as also in patients heavily premedicated, those convalescent from severe debilitating illnesses, such as influenza, and in those with exophthalmic goitre The respirations of the anæmic patient are equally atypical As anæsthesia deepens they become shallower and shallower Respiratory effort diminishes progressively and the patient simply ' fades away,' without becoming cyanosed or jactitating Depression of respiratory activity and absence of muscular spasm are striking features of nitrous-oxide anæsthesia in this type of patient If the anæsthetist waits for the onset of irregular, jerky respiration, for the eyeballs to be pulled eccentrically, for jactitation or for cyanosis as signs of anæsthesia, he will soon be confronted with a patient *in extremis* At this point, the pupils of the centrally fixed eyeball are widely dilated and an ashen grey colour further contributes to the patient s alarming appearance Unless artificial respiration is promptly applied, death quickly ensues

Soon after the commencement of induction with nitrous oxide respiration becomes automatic Provided sufficient oxygen is now given satisfactory anæsthesia can be maintained without depression of respiration or asphyxial dilatation of the pupil

Pulse

The pulse is of little value as a guide to N$_2$O anæsthesia Early, it may be quickened from excitement or fear, while in asphyxia it becomes slow, full, and bounding The significance of both may be erroneously interpreted the former as heart disease, the latter as a reassuring sign By the time the asphyxial pulse is noticeable, other conspicuous signs indicate that oxygen lack is excessive The onset of any cardiac irregularity at this stage is an urgent indication for the administration of oxygen

REFERENCE

(1) Guedel A E 1937 *Inhalation Anesthesia* New York. 68

CHAPTER VIII

INDICATIONS FOR LOCAL OR GENERAL ANÆSTHESIA IN DENTISTRY

In deciding upon the type of anæsthesia to employ for a dental operation, it is well to remember that general anæsthesia is now so safe that it can reasonably be assumed that a patient who is fit for a local anæsthetic is also fit for a general. The solitary exception to this generalisation is the patient suffering from œdema of the glottis (p 267)

The responsibility for deciding between local and general anæsthesia is often borne by the dentist. Conditions in private practice are such that this choice is not the clear cut problem which it is at hospital, where the question of the anæsthetist's skill is not a deciding factor. In cases where the choice lies between local anæsthesia and a general anæsthetic given by a family doctor who is far from skilled in this specialty, local anæsthesia may well be selected when, ideally, general anæsthesia would be preferable. Thus, subject to there being no preponderant contra indication to either local or general anæsthesia, the dentist will find that the technical skill of the anæsthetist available inevitably plays a large part in determining his choice.

Assuming that the choice lies between local anæsthesia and *skilled* general anæsthesia, the following considerations will help the dentist in making his decision.

Considerable weight should be attached to any decided preference for either local or general anæsthesia which the patient may express, since any physical disability to which he is subject is often of far less importance than his mental attitude towards anæsthesia. Far too frequently a patient is persuaded against his will to submit to a type of anæsthesia which he dreads. One patient may be apprehensive of general anæsthesia because he dreads the idea of losing consciousness, while another may wish for general anæsthesia so that he will "know nothing about it." Usually men prefer local, women general anæsthesia.

No more definite reason than personal inclination often determines a dentist to choose one particular form of anæsthetic. A dentist may prefer to extract on a patient sitting upright, and on this account recommend local anæsthesia for a major dental operation, so that he

can work in the position in which he feels most at ease This preference should not be allowed to weigh too heavily, since a dentist can soon accustom himself to operating on recumbent patients In any case, it is easy and safe to administer a general anæsthetic even for a prolonged operation on a patient who is sitting up For this purpose an armchair may be used, or a dental chair can be taken to a private house or nursing home Similarly, for a prolonged difficult extraction some dentists prefer local anæsthesia, because they like to have the active co-operation of the patient, but in these days such co-operation can well be dispensed with by using a modern head-rest, and tongue and other tissue retractors

INDICATIONS FOR GENERAL ANÆSTHESIA IN DENTISTRY

1. The presence in the mouth of a general infection or of a local infective process.—A local anæsthetic must not be used here because of the danger of its carrying infection from the diseased region into healthy gum or bone Apart from this imperative contra-indication, it must be remembered that any local anæsthetic interferes, to a greater or lesser extent, with the circulation in the region affected, and by thus lowering tissue resistance favours bacterial invasion

2. Multiple extractions from the various quadrants of the mouth.

3. Operations on young children, who, on the whole, are unco-operative

4. Fractures of the jaw.

5. If the patient particularly requests general anæsthesia.

6. Where considerable force must be applied.—Under local anæsthesia, a nervous patient often finds it difficult to discriminate between force and pain If it is anticipated that a considerable amount of force will have to be exerted, a nervous patient should be advised to have his tooth extracted under general anæsthesia

7. For long operations.—General anæsthesia is usually preferred for such operations as the removal of an impacted wisdom tooth, alveolectomy, and excision of a cyst, for if a local anæsthetic is used not only is the patient likely to become fatigued but the effect of the anæsthetic is liable to wear off before the operation has been completed.

8. Cases where post-operative pain is specially to be avoided and quick healing is particularly desirable It is generally considered that ischæmia following local anæsthesia predisposes to after-pain and to slow healing of the sockets In fact, wounds often

heal more quickly after local anæsthesia than after inefficient general anæsthesia, because during the former there is more time for extractions to be performed deliberately and with less laceration of the mucous membrane and less damage to the alveolus

9. Removal of infected teeth for systemic disease.—There is a clinical impression that local anæsthesia is followed by a graver exacerbation of the patient's symptoms than if the teeth are extracted under general anæsthesia

10. If the dentist considers that the patient's temperament makes general anæsthesia advisable.—It is unwise to recommend local anæsthesia *for the super-critical patient who is only too keen to find grounds for complaint* If under local anæsthesia the tooth should break, the patient cannot fail to appreciate that it has to be removed in fragments If the extraction takes a long time to complete, the patient may consider this to be evidence of the dentist's inefficiency. For such a patient general anæsthesia is preferable

11. If the dentist particularly wishes to work with a general anæsthetic.

INDICATIONS FOR LOCAL ANÆSTHESIA

1. If there is any doubt about the anæsthetist's skill.—It has been pointed out that the dentist who cannot rely on skilled general anæsthesia may, in self-defence, choose local The patient seldom attributes an incomplete extraction to inadequate anæsthesia. If the dentist cannot rely on good general anæsthesia he is justified in advising local, particularly where extractions have to be made with deliberation—e g when the teeth are exostosed or where the apex of a tooth has to be preserved uncontaminated for bacteriological culture

2. If the patient particularly requests local anæsthesia.

3. Extractions during certain acute illnesses—e g bronchitis.

4. Where extractions have to be made on a patient who has recently had a meal.

5. Occasionally in patients with phthisis.—This disease is not a contra indication to administration of N_2O for simple extractions, but the risk of initiating a violent bout of coughing by the passage of an endotracheal tube often makes it preferable to use a local anæsthetic for such major dental operations When a phthisical patient has particularly requested general anæsthesia for dental operations, we have produced unconsciousness first with avertin and then, after abolishing the cough

reflex by cocainising the larynx and trachea, we have passed an endotracheal tube and continued the anæsthesia with N_2O

6. As an excuse, when the dentist is requested to perform a difficult operation under general anæsthesia in the patient's home, where conditions for surgery are far from perfect Every experienced practitioner is familiar with the patient who has a rooted prejudice against institutional treatment and argues that the expense is unnecessary and that the short period of convalescence could be spent at home—a plea frequently advanced by the woman who considers herself indispensable to the household These excuses are made the more strongly because of a mistaken idea that any operative procedure on the teeth, no matter how extensive, is " simple " The patient refuses to enter a nursing home and asks for the operation to be done at home The suggested ' operating table " is often the kitchen table or even a sagging bed Operating on the patient in an armchair or in a dental chair taken to the house solves some of the problems, but handicaps still remain The lighting is nearly always poor, but the most serious disadvantage of all is that it is almost impossible to ensure asepsis After treatment in the patient s home is, moreover, frequently much handicapped In such cases the dentist is justified in urging local anæsthesia in his own surgery, where asepsis will be perfect, the operator s own instruments are at hand, and the lighting is good Even after formidable dental operations under local anæsthesia, the patients are often fit to visit the dentist's surgery for after-treatment This indication for local anæsthesia does not exist where an enlightened patient agrees to enter a hospital or a good nursing home for his operation

7. If the dentist himself has a special preference for working with local anæsthesia.—Some dentists prefer local anæsthesia because the adrenaline added to the injected solution assists in checking hæmorrhage Local anæsthesia need not be chosen on this score alone, since for prolonged operations a local anæsthetic solution containing adrenaline can be injected immediately after general anæsthesia has been induced

8. Financial considerations.—With an indigent patient on whom a prolonged operation is contemplated, it is desirable to take into consideration also the fact that local anæsthesia is more economical, since it saves the anæsthetist's fee

CHAPTER IX

CHOICE OF GENERAL ANÆSTHETIC

AFTER the decision has been made to employ general anæsthesia, the means by which this is to be attained must be selected   The extent and nature of the operation, the anæsthetic agent and technique available, and the patient's temperamental and physical make-up must all be considered

Safety is of greatest importance, and is always in the mind of the patient, the anæsthetist, and the surgeon   Too much attention is often paid to the supposed safety or danger of a particular narcotic drug as indicated by the available statistics   *An anæsthetic is made safe or dangerous by the one who administers it*   If the anæsthetist is ready to deal with any untoward occurrences is not venturesome beyond his experience, and does not trust to luck, the risks to which his patient is exposed will be negligible   Avoidance of anæsthetic accidents undoubtedly depends far more on the experience care, and skill of the anæsthetist than on the choice of any particular anæsthetic agent

Statistics can be entirely misleading as a guide to the relative safety of the various anæsthetics   Figures may be produced to show that one death has occurred in, say, 50 000 administrations of nitrous oxide, 20,000 of ether, and 10,000 of ethyl chloride   Such figures are valueless because they *do not take into consideration* such important factors as the skill and experience of the anæsthetist, the state of health of the patient, the nature of the operation, its duration and severity, and they do not show how many times an operation had to be abandoned on account of difficulties in connection with the maintenance of anæsthesia   This last factor is significant, particularly in dental work where every dentist is familiar with the case in which it has been impossible to complete extractions because the length of anæsthesia, or the facilities afforded by nitrous oxide, were inadequate   Such a case would be classified for statistical purposes as a successful anæsthetic (i e not fatal), although it failed completely to enable the operation for which it was given to be performed

Taking surgery as a whole, it is found that the mortality rate of an operation is closely connected with its severity   To argue from statistics that nitrous oxide is a safer anæsthetic than ether is unjustified

Such figures are obtained only because nitrous oxide is rarely chosen for severe operations   It is, in fact, used almost exclusively for short and trivial operations and then often on robust patients in whom a fatal issue is extremely improbable   Ether on the other hand, is more frequently chosen for major operations, the outcome of which may cause the anæsthetist grave anxiety   The difference between the safety of a weak anæsthetic, such as nitrous oxide, and of a more potent one such as cyclopropane or ether, must therefore be considered in relation to the conditions it is asked to provide   It is wrong to state categorically that nitrous oxide will be a safer anæsthetic than ether without knowing what operation is to be performed

For minor operations, such as tooth extraction, nitrous oxide, although much more convenient, is in fact no safer than ether, although the incidence of post-operative complications, particularly vomiting, is greater after the latter   For major operations ether is safer than nitrous oxide   Very many major operations cannot be performed under such a weak anæsthetic as nitrous oxide, because satisfactory operating conditions cannot be produced unless this anæsthetic is "pushed" and the patient deprived of oxygen to such an extent that, in the hands of the average anæsthetist, the number of fatalities would be greater than if a more potent anæsthetic such as ether were used

In abdominal surgery, for example, the provision of muscular relaxation is necessary, for without it the surgeon is greatly handicapped at his work   An anæsthetic can be considered safe only if it produces muscular relaxation before the cardiac output and minute-volume respiration are appreciably depressed   Since ether possesses this attribute, it is justifiably popular in abdominal surgery   Cyclopropane is not so reliable   Only a slight increase in concentration of this drug above that necessary to produce muscular relaxation may be followed by respiratory arrest or cardiac irregularities   Similarly pentothal or evipan *can* be used for abdominal surgery, but a small increase in the amount of drug necessary to produce relaxation may cause profound respiratory depression   Spinal anæsthesia provides extreme muscular relaxation, but may not be desirable, either because of the fall in blood pressure which it causes or because it is unsuited to the patient's temperament

The patient s general health must be taken into consideration   If he suffers from phthisis or bronchitis although ether may be the safest anæsthetic for the period of the operation itself, many consider that its slightly irritant effects on the lungs are enough to aggravate the existing chest condition   They argue that the possibly greater risk

of cyclopropane anæsthesia at the time of operation is justified by the diminished chances of post operative complications and in fact, we ourselves use cyclopropane under these conditions It is, however, our opinion that the dangers of ether in such cases have been much exaggerated and we believe that provided the patient has been properly premedicated and that an uninterrupted free airway is maintained, then ether is no more likely to initiate a pulmonary complication or to aggravate an existing chest condition than is any other anæsthetic

It is still surprisingly common for the surgeon to ask a physician for his opinion on what would be a suitable choice of anæsthetic for a poor risk " patient It is extraordinary that a surgeon, who realises how much the safety of his patients depends on the experience and skill of the anæsthetist, should feel that the opinion of a physician, who may never enter an operating theatre, will be helpful in selecting an anæs thetic This is not to say that consultation on any of these matters is not advisable, providing the anæsthetist is present with the physician and surgeon when the question of choice of anæsthetic is to be considered, but all too frequently the surgeon calls in the physician only The physician by consulting with anæsthetists on doubtful cases, will gradually learn something of the problems of anæsthesia and when he does this, his opinion as to a suitable anæsthetic will be of value It is at present extremely rare for a physician s opinion in such matters to be at all helpful Anæsthetists recognise the truth of this statement, but for economic reasons this view is rarely publicly expressed If the surgeon is not satisfied to leave the whole question of the anæsthetic to the anæsthetist, and if he feels that he wants a second opinion, he should call in a second anæsthetist so that he may have the benefit of the advice of someone who appreciates the problems involved The best way to acquire an understanding of patients' reactions, physical and mental to anæsthesia, is to administer anæsthetics as often as possible, and it is significant that when an anæsthetist is faced with a difficult problem in anæsthesia he rarely, if ever, even considers consulting a physician, but obtains the advice of anæsthetists of experience who have dealt with similar cases in practice

It is also not at all unusual for patients who are anxious about themselves or those who are physically unfit and who have been under the care of a consulting physician or of the family doctor for some time, to enquire of their advisers whether general anæsthesia at some future date would be likely to be detrimental A physician should be extremely guarded in his remarks on this subject If he should give the impression that general anæsthesia is likely to be fatal

or if he should suggest that certain anæsthetics would be dangerous, his patient may consider that this is a proud distinction, for it is undoubtedly true that some patients derive a certain macabre pleasure from a feeling that they are thus distinguished from their fellows More usually, however, the patient is terrified of ever having to submit himself to general anæsthesia The following four cases in our own experience are instances of the unhelpfulness of the advice of the physician on anæsthesia , the first three cases occurred in private, the fourth in hospital, practice

Case 1 —This woman, aged 60, produced a certificate signed by a cardiologist stating that she must in no circumstances be given a general anæsthetic This was the only information the certificate gave It had been signed twelve years previously and had been a source of considerable anxiety to her through all these years She suffered from an ovarian cyst, which had so increased in size that operation had become imperative Despite the fact that the greatly distended abdomen hindered her respiration when she was lying down she took a general anæsthetic well and made an uninterrupted recovery

Case 2 —A young woman presented a certificate from a physician to say that on account of ' heart disease " she was not to be given in any circumstances, a general anæsthetic   On auscultation, a presystolic murmur was audible but since she carried out a usual day's routine quite normally, the anæsthetist had no compunction in giving her gas and oxygen for extraction of a tooth involved in an alveolar abscess for which it was considered undesirable to give a local anæsthetic She also, caused no anxiety whatever

Case 3 —Soon after the introduction of evipan we were requested by a distinguished physician not to give this drug to a patient whom we were to anæsthetise on the following day When pressed for any reason why evipan should not be given his only answer was that he had heard that " there had been a death in Peckham ' the week before from this drug ! Our previous experience with earlier barbiturates (pernocton and nembutal), added to our experience with evipan in about a hundred cases, persuaded us that it was particularly suitable for this nervous, resistant young man as a means of induction before continuing with endotracheal anæsthesia for removal of an impacted wisdom tooth Evipan was used for induction and the subsequent anæsthesia was uneventful

Case 4 —For this hospital patient suffering from rheumatic carditis the physician whose advice was asked as to what anæsthetic should be given wrote " Fit for gas " on the case-sheet.

There was no reason why the patient should not have a more potent anæsthetic and in fact nitrous oxide would have been unsuitable since anoxia in such a case should be avoided, so that the anæsthetist used his own discretion and gave ether

A point which must not be forgotten is that the mental attitude towards anæsthesia of a patient who carries a certificate forbidding general anæsthesia is not improved by the constant awareness of all that the certificate implies   Circumstances may arise in which anæsthesia is imperative, and the psychological problems involved in anæsthesia are difficult enough without the addition of such unnecessary mental burdens

The physician acts, as he thinks, for his patient's good, but the unwitting arrogance of his dogmatism betrays his ignorance of important fundamentals of anæsthesia   The result is that an anæsthetist has frequently been virtually forced to agree to the patient being deprived of the advantages of basal anæsthesia, solely to comply with the unwarranted advice of a consulting physician

Often the physician's choice of anæsthetic is one with which the anæsthetist does not agree, and then the latter must either deny his patient the advantages of what his experience leads him to know is the correct anæsthetic, or he must be prepared to face the economic repercussions which may result if he incurs displeasure through not following the advice of the physician whose opinion as an alleged expert has been sought   In practice the anæsthetist often does not spend time in disputing the choice advised but just as often deviates from it in what he actually administers   For instance, advice as unsubstantial as the " fit for gas ' mentioned in Case 4 is all too often written dogmatically upon the case-sheet of an ill patient   The physician giving such an opinion has usually only a scanty knowledge of and experience in anæsthesia, and has no appreciation of the limitations of nitrous oxide   He believes from what he has heard that nitrous oxide is the safest anæsthetic, but we have already shown on what slender evidence this opinion is based   Indeed nitrous oxide may be advised when in fact it is actually contra indicated, sometimes because of the type of patient, sometimes because of the nature of the operation to be performed.   It is not surprising that the anæsthetist should not then follow the physician's advice, but that he should quietly supplement the " gas " with cyclopropane or ether so that anæsthesia is attained mainly by the more potent agent   A happy outcome is regarded by everyone—except the anæsthetist—as justification of the physician's choice !

If a physician objects to a particular anæsthetic he should be prepared to take full responsibility for anything untoward which may result from the course taken in deference to his objection If he is not willing to take this responsibility he should leave the choice to the anæsthetist

Choice of General Anæsthetic in the Dental Surgery

Before considering the above question it is well to emphasise that the dental surgery is not the place of choice for administration of general anæsthetics for long operations   Quick recovery and lack of after effects rarely fail to satisfy the patient and these benefits follow anæsthesia of short duration   A long operation in the dental surgery, even if the operative result is highly successful inevitably causes some degree of collapse and often a disappointed and dissatisfied patient   This is particularly so if the patient has previously had a quick recovery to normal following an easy extraction   He naturally assumes that the dentist and anæsthetist on the second occasion are unskilful and in the interests of all, work which is expected to take a long time should not be embarked upon in the dental surgery

A good general rule is not to anæsthetise in the dental surgery any case which the dentist estimates will take longer than ten minutes' operating time   Sometimes, however an extraction which was expected to take only a few minutes lasts much longer   The situation here is quite different and in such cases it may be kindness, or good policy, if the anæsthetist is sufficiently skilful, to continue the nasal administration of nitrous oxide until the extraction is completed There are alternatives, neither completely satisfactory   The first is to abandon the operation, in which case the patient must again submit to the procedure , the second is to continue the operation knowing that the patient will probably suffer unpleasant after effects which he would not anticipate   Which course should be adopted is dictated, to some extent, by the type of patient   If he is likely to blame the dentist for an incomplete extraction under the impression that it indicates inefficiency, it might be entirely justifiable to proceed with the operation in the expectation of its successful completion   In such a case, however, the anæsthetist must not expect from the patient the appreciation to which his skilled assistance has entitled him , the patient will be acutely aware of his post-operative depression and will probably blame the anæsthetist for this part of his experience

One of the causes of post-operative depression is moving a patient from the dental surgery soon after consciousness is regained   A long operation of the type indicated, if carried out in hospital or a nursing

home, is attended with much happier after effects and recollections
In these circumstances ideal induction by basal anæsthesia can be
obtained, and after the operation is over, the patient need not be
roused   The patient's gratitude to the anæsthetist may be earned
more easily under such conditions than in the dental surgery, though
the amount of skill exercised may be far less

Each of the various agents used in producing general anæsthesia
in the dental surgery has its own merits and limitations, and these will
now be considered briefly   In a nursing home or hospital, appropriate
basal anæsthesia can be used to modify the patient's reaction to
anæsthesia   In the dental surgery patients can be premedicated only
very lightly and the anæsthetist s main problem is that he is expected
to provide a pleasant induction, tranquil anæsthesia, and a quick
recovery with freedom from after-effects for all his patients, despite
their individual reactions to anæsthesia

Nitrous oxide.—This is the only anæsthetic which has a reasonable
chance of satisfying all the above requirements   It is emphasised through-
out this book that the anæsthetic properties of N_2O are feeble, but it
owes many of its desirable qualities to this very fact, and it is justifiably
the most popular anæsthetic at present available for extractions from
the average patient   In fact, the number of administrations of this
gas is far greater than of those of all other anæsthetics used in dentistry,
put together   Unconsciousness can be easily and pleasantly produced
with N_2O, recovery is prompt, and the after-effects are usually minimal
—factors gratifying to both the patient and the busy dentist—but it
is in the production and maintenance of adequate anæsthesia that the
limitations of N_2O are appreciated   It is not, on its own, able to
supply tranquil anæsthesia in the highly resistant patient   An
anæsthetic emergency which was due solely to the incorrect choice of
N_2O for an anæsthetic resistant patient for dental extractions is
described on p 277

Nitrous oxide is the only non explosive inhalation anæsthetic in
common use   A dental surgery so often contains a naked flame that
the use of several other anæsthetic gases, which but for their explosive-
ness would be of great value, is precluded   For example, though the
potency of ethylene is not extreme, it is enough to produce tranquil
anæsthesia adequate for minor surgery and dental work, even when
mixed with 15-20 per cent of oxygen   Ethylene is, however, highly
explosive, and many deaths from explosions have been recorded

Although induction with nitrous oxide should be pleasant, certain
patients, particularly those who have had a previous disagreeable
anæsthetic experience, dislike the induction of unconsciousness by

any inhalation anæsthetic. For these the advantages offered by the ultra short acting barbiturates must be considered.

Ether.—This is conceded to be a safe anæsthetic which affords excellent operating conditions. There are however many objections to its use in the dental surgery. Induction of anæsthesia with it is a much longer and generally more unpleasant experience than is induction by nitrous oxide. Recovery is slower and is often followed by nausea and vomiting. The use of ether in small doses to supplement nitrous oxide for short operations in difficult patients and its use in general surgery are considered on pp 117 and 167

The ultra short acting barbiturates (e g pentothal evipan) **for intravenous administration.**—The main advantage of these drugs is that induction with them is pleasant and rapid. Their use is indicated in patients who fear anæsthesia or who are known previously to have been troublesome during induction and for anæsthetic resistant patients as a basal supplement to nitrous oxide anæsthesia. There are no contra indications to their use in small doses (e g 0 2–0 5 gm of pentothal) in the above types of case. There are however disadvantages in employing barbiturate anæsthesia alone for long dental operations. These are that in giving the larger doses which are then necessary technical difficulties arise in connection with the continuous intravenous administration of the drugs and although recovery from a small dose may be almost complete in a few minutes a fairly large dose may incapacitate the patient for hours.

For an operation lasting a few minutes both a pleasant induction to anæsthesia and a quick recovery can be obtained by producing unconsciousness with a minimal amount of pentothal and then continuing with nitrous oxide administered nasally.

Although pentothal is often ideal for the difficult (i e anæsthetic resistant) patient from whom extractions are expected to be easy this drug does not help at all in solving the problem of anæsthesia for a difficult extraction in an easy or normal patient. In fact pentothal here should usually be avoided for if it is used as the sole anæsthetic for an extraction which lasts several minutes complete recovery from its effects may not take place for some hours. Some dentists erroneously regard pentothal as a panacea for difficulties encountered in troublesome extractions and ask for it for this type of work in the normal patient whereas in fact its use is indicated for the *resistant* patient to be anæsthetised for easy extractions.

Ethyl chloride.—This drug may be used alone or to supplement nitrous oxide when the latter proves inadequate as the sole anæsthetic. Although seldom necessary in the average patient over 8 or 9 years

of age, it is of great value in such apparently divergent types as the very young child and the anæsthetic-resistant adult   For the former ethyl chloride alone is commonly given (p 151), whilst for the alcoholic patient it is more commonly used to supplement nitrous oxide (p 160)   The chief disadvantage of ethyl chloride is the frequency of nausea and vomiting during the recovery period

Vinesthene (di-vinyl ether).—The indications for the use of this drug are very similar to those for ethyl chloride   It has the advantage over the latter that in the period of recovery, nausea, vomiting, and collapse are rare

Since these various drugs of known and proved value are available, it is usually easy to choose appropriate anæsthesia for a particular case   The matter is not, however, uniformly simple, and all the difficulties are not solved once the anæsthetic agent has been selected

The experience of the administrator must be taken into consideration, and while the general practitioner cannot be expected to master the many anæsthetic techniques used in general surgery, the choice in dentistry is more restricted and he can with practice become reasonably proficient in them all   The range of utility of any anæsthetic is extended by experience in its use   For example, although with nitrous oxide the student will at first be successful only in straightforward cases, familiarity will soon enable him to employ this anæsthetic successfully for cases presenting greater difficulties   Even a skilful anæsthetist is prepared to use supplementary anæsthesia for particularly difficult cases, and the inexperienced will be wise to resort to this expedient rather than to try to force the maximum of usefulness out of nitrous oxide alone

PRE-ANÆSTHETIC MEDICATION

BERNARD SHAW s gibe that anæsthesia spares us nothing but the knife[1] is fortunately not as true now as when it was written   Many modern improvements in surgical results are due to advances in the practice of anæsthesia   Nor is it only the relative immunity from grave issues which commands attention   The development of anæs thetic technique has not only diminished the hazard of operation but it has reduced to a minimum the terror and discomfort of the patient Not many years ago the patient s preparation for an operation con sisted mainly in the administration of a vigorous purge   After a disturbed night he walked in a more or less apprehensive state of mind to the operating theatre which even in happier circumstances is a terrifying sight to most laymen   After he had climbed on to the operating table he had the unpleasant experience of having a mask applied to his face and then inhaling a strange and often distasteful vapour   It is not surprising that such physical and mental chastening was often followed in major surgery by post operative shock which might well turn the scale against the patient and even after a minor operation often left a deep mental impression the gravity of which it was difficult to evaluate   In contrast to all this the patient is now a days assured of a good night s sleep before operation and he can be given a basal anæsthetic while still in bed before he is taken to the scene of the operation   From the drowsiness which supervenes he wakes up in his own bed to find with surprise and pleasure that the operation is a thing of the past and this early peacefulness of mind contributes materially to speedy and uninterrupted convalescence   Such modern improvements notwithstanding anæsthesia is still dreaded because it is commonly experienced in association with pain acute illness, sleeplessness financial worries and enforced absence from work

It is helpful to consider anæsthesia as the summation of the effects of the premedication and of the anæsthetic proper   The student who desires to master the technique of anæsthesia should not overlook the important part played by premedication in achieving good results

Guedel[2] has rendered a great service to anæsthetists by explaining the well known fact that some patients are more resistant to anæs

thetics than others   Different patients and even the same patient at
different times show different degrees of alertness, as also do normal
healthy people   In other words, there are different levels of con
sciousness   Guedel points out that anything which increases the basal
metabolic rate of the patient (expressed by his oxygen consumption)
*increases his reflex irritability and makes him more resistant to the
effects of anæsthetics*
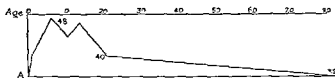
Fig 20 *—The curve of the normal metabolic rate at different ages expressed in
calories per hour per square metre of body surface   Line A of this diagram corres
ponds to line A in fig 16 p 68

The metabolic rate varies with age   Thus in a patient aged 20,
*induction begins at a point more remote from surgical anæsthesia
than in one aged 40 and consequently the amount of anæsthetic
required to bring about surgical anæsthesia is greater in the younger
patient*   Apart from variations in the starting-point of anæsthesia
due to age, anything which prevents the onset of normal sleep makes
for increased resistance to the onset of anæsthesia   Thus pain, fear,
apprehension, and excitement increase reflex irritability, so that a
given amount of anæsthetic fails to produce as much effect as it would
in the absence of these factors
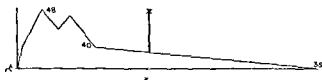
Fig 21

A patient of, say, 35, who is frightened of anæsthesia and who has
been in pain for some time, will start at X, a height much above
level A, and will be correspondingly difficult to subdue

* Compiled by Will Shimer from the tables of Du Bois and Benedict ; pub-
lished 1924 *Journ Amer Med Assn*, 83, 1736

Premedication in a case such as this is of great value since it minimises the effects caused by the adverse mental and physical conditions of the patient The effect of reassurance alone does much to allay fear and this effect can be increased by sedative drugs such as the barbiturates or aspirin Pain can be relieved by morphia or aspirin The starting point of anæsthesia can by these means be reduced even below the level A say to 'A'

The use of premedication spares the patient much mental anxiety shortens the induction period and makes it tranquil and diminishes the amount of anæsthetic required Moreover post-operative depression is less because less subsequent anæsthetic is needed and because the exhaustion which frequently follows the state of stimulation in the hyper alert patient is eliminated

It must not be overlooked that any condition which causes pain pyrexia or fear if continued to a degree which exhausts the sympathetic nervous system will result in shock a lowered metabolic rate and a commensurate depression of the starting point of anæsthesia This is well seen in the patient exhausted from exposure severe wounds or by infective disease of some months duration Premedication with morphia or the barbiturates is here not necessary and is even contra indicated if the superimposition of further depression is considered dangerous

Psychological Premedication

Reduction of alertness which may be regarded as the beginning of anæsthesia can be accomplished in varying degree not only by drugs but by psychological treatment Such treatment can often greatly reduce the increase in resistance to anæsthetics brought about by fear or pain The method employed depends upon the anæsthetist and may range from an unimaginative slap on the back with a hearty You'll be all right to the other extreme of hypnotisation The time available often makes it impossible to prepare the patient psychologically as fully as is desirable but every opportunity to do so should be utilised

A patient before an operation is in an abnormal frame of mind It must be remembered that the operation is a crisis in his life vastly more important to him than it is to the anæsthetist or dentist for whom such an occasion is a matter of routine Expectation that the operation will be painless does not necessarily remove a patient's dread , some fear the anæsthetic more than the operation The patient's attitude towards anæsthesia must not be judged by the experience of

the student who has been rendered unconscious for a few minutes experimentally The latter naturally chooses a time when he is feeling particularly well, the period of anæsthesia is short he chooses his own anæsthetic and carefully selects an anæsthetist in whom he has complete confidence He has none of the anxiety produced by the anticipation of an operation and, since no operation is performed post anæsthetic depression is reduced to a minimum

It is rare to find anyone apprehensive of a first anæsthetic the need for sedation is often increased by a previous acquaintance, generally made in childhood with some unpleasant experience of anæsthesia Since anæsthesia has improved so rapidly during the past few years, the fear of it will probably gradually be met with less and less frequency, but it must not be forgotten that even under the best conditions an inhalation anæsthetic can rarely be described as pleasant We may add that addiction to anæsthetics is practically unknown [1]

A patient's fears are largely created by an active imagination, and prolonged psychological treatment might be necessary to enable him to overcome them but since an operation has to be faced only once or twice in his lifetime, it is justifiable to take the course, less satisfactory in theory, of exploiting the sedative and euphoric effects of drugs

The Use of Sedative Drugs

The dose of premedicating drug a patient will require can often be roughly gauged by his resistance to alcohol For example, the plethoric middle aged man who is accustomed to drink half a bottle of whisky a day will need a much larger dose of premedicating drug than will the frail woman, as also will robust individuals heavy cigarette smokers, and, for an unknown reason, malarial subjects

Pre anæsthetic medication ranges from the administration of 5 gr of aspirin to the production of basal anæsthesia The sedative drugs used for pre-anæsthetic medication exert a beneficial effect by counteracting the factors which increase reflex irritability Many of these drugs if exploited to the full would provide anæsthesia deep enough for minor surgery, but for one reason or another it is inadvisable to use the large doses which would be necessary This is well illustrated by morphia, the specific effect of which in therapeutic doses, e g $\frac{1}{4}$ gr to an adult, is to relieve pain Although I gr of this administered to an average adult may produce anæsthesia deep enough for a minor operation it is unsuitable for use as a sole anæsthetic, because doses sufficient to establish surgical anæsthesia produce dangerous

respiratory depression. A therapeutic dose of $\frac{1}{4}$ gr has hardly any obvious effect upon respiration, but it is a quarter of the amount which might produce full anæsthesia, and any anæsthetic will be effective in much lower dosage if morphia has been given beforehand This potential anæsthetic effect of morphia is often overlooked because the pre-anæsthetic dose does not produce sleep

This facilitation of anæsthesia can best be demonstrated when the premedicating drug is followed by an anæsthetic injected intravenously, the quantity of which can be measured accurately If, for example, pentothal 0 5 gm is necessary to anæsthetise for a minor operation a nervous man in pain, 0 5 gm would probably suffice if his nervousness is reduced by psychological treatment, and if such treatment is reinforced by $\frac{1}{4}$ gr morphia then pentothal 0 3 gm might well prove to be sufficient The practical importance of morphia in reducing the amount of anæsthetic subsequently necessary is best appreciated when a therapeutic dose of this drug is given before the administration of N_2O Although the patient may not be made asleep, not only is anæsthesia achieved and maintained with a lesser element of anoxæmia than is otherwise necessary, but the combination will produce peaceful anæsthesia in cases where N_2O alone would be quite inadequate

Different sedatives have characteristic and widely different actions Some e g the short acting barbiturates, act primarily by relieving fear and producing sleep, others, e g drugs of the opium group, relieve pain when given in doses which do not produce sleep These differences can be attributed to selective action on different parts of the brain For example, the cerebral cortex is specially sensitive to the short-acting barbiturates, e g nembutal, and the midbrain to alkaloids of the opium group, of which morphia is the most frequently used

The short acting barbiturates diminish apprehension and fear, and in large doses produce drowsiness and unconsciousness long before they produce any notable change in the reflex response to pain They are quite unsuitable for the production of general anæsthesia, since among other drawbacks elimination, even after therapeutic doses, is slow, and after the large doses which would be necessary to produce general anæsthesia recovery of consciousness might be delayed for as long as forty-eight hours If premedication is achieved solely by means of these cortical depressant drugs, the patient benefits in that he will be asleep before the inhalation anæsthetic is given, but the amount of the latter necessary to ensure lack of response to painful stimuli is but little reduced During recovery, after the effects of the inhalation

anæsthetic itself have worn off, the slowly excreted premedicant drug keeps the patient unconscious although painful stimuli may cause extreme restlessness, since pain is not obtunded. If there is no pain he will sleep peacefully. These two results are seen in the alternation between peaceful sleep and extreme restlessness when nembutal is used to produce amnesia of the pains of labour. The restlessness which occurs during recovery from a painful operation must be controlled by administration of morphia or a similar analgesic drug. It is noteworthy that a patient exposed to pain is more restless when under the influence of a cortical depressant drug than when conscious. Probably this is to be explained by loss of control of the higher centres enhancing the responses to pain and other stimuli—a condition existing in the decerebrate animal.

The basal anæsthetics (e g avertin paraldehyde), the ultra short-acting barbiturates (e g pentothal evipan), and the inhalation anæsthetics all produce unconsciousness comparatively early and recovery from anæsthesia is not unduly prolonged although it is generally slow from the effects of drugs of the first two groups. Drugs of the last two groups abolish response to painful stimuli in doses which do not cause marked respiratory depression but at the light level of unconsciousness which is all that should be aimed at with drugs of the first group, while respiration is not unduly depressed, response to painful stimuli is not abolished.

For the purposes of premedication operations can be divided into those on ambulatory patients and those on hospitalised patients. The former are of necessity trivial.

PRE-ANÆSTHETIC MEDICATION FOR THE AMBULATORY PATIENT

Most of the operations performed on ambulatory patients are dental extractions under nitrous oxide. In few branches of anæsthesia can premedication be more useful, and in no branch is it more neglected. The anæsthetist is asked to provide tranquil anæsthesia in a patient whom he may have met only a few minutes before. Since the patient is probably nervous and usually healthy, he will be to some degree anæsthetic-resistant, but he will in any case expect a recovery rapid enough for him to go home soon after and even to continue with his usual day's routine.

There may not be an opportunity of arranging for premedication with sedative drugs in every case, and the anæsthetist should always

make an effort to gain the patient's confidence both immediately before and during induction. Even such brief psychological preparation makes it possible to achieve peaceful anæsthesia with a smaller amount of anæsthetic than would otherwise be necessary.

Ideally preparation for a dental extraction should begin with the administration of a sedative the night before the operation in order to prevent the irritability which follows loss of sleep. Even if a sedative should be unnecessary it will do no harm and it may do a great deal of good. Aspirin usually to hand in every household is suitable for this purpose. For an average adult the dose is 5-15 gr. Alternatives are luminal ½ gr. or potassium bromide 20 gr.

If the patient has to resume his normal occupation soon after recovery the choice of premedication to be given on the day of operation is restricted. It is neither necessary nor desirable to make him drowsy, but the dose of premedicant drug should be sufficient to obviate anxiety at the thought of the anæsthetic. Two half doses of the premedicating drug used the night before should be given on the day of the operation. It is a good plan to give half the full dose at breakfast and the remaining half one hour before operation. These proportions one full dose at night and two half doses one at breakfast and the other one hour before the operation should always be observed. Thus if an extraction is timed for midday aspirin 15 gr. should be taken on retiring the previous night 7½ gr. is taken at breakfast time and again at 11 a.m.

When nitrous oxide without adequate premedication is used for a nervous patient irritable and worn out by toothache it may be necessary to diminish the oxygen percentage in the inhaled mixture to such a degree that asphyxial movements of the body make operating difficult, post-operative collapse is then probable. One of the secrets of good nitrous-oxide anæsthesia is correct premedication for by this means undue asphyxia with its complications and sequelæ can be avoided. It should be noted that for anæsthesia by nitrous oxide premedication is not only a comfort to the patient but of considerable practical assistance to the anæsthetist. In fact it may determine the difference between a turbulent and a peaceful anæsthesia. In contrast when anæsthetics more powerful than nitrous oxide are used sedative premedication is given chiefly as a comfort to the patient. In this case although the amount of anæsthetic subsequently needed is indeed reduced the adequacy of the ultimate anæsthesia is not affected since the potency of the anæsthetic drug is such that any desired depth of anæsthesia can be produced.

Nitrous oxide given nasally by a moderately experienced anæsthetist

to the average patient should allow the dentist to accomplish any ordinary extractions. For convenience the methods by which N_2O anæsthesia can be facilitated are summarised.

1 The patient's reflex irritability and resistance should be diminished by—

(a) Gaining his confidence. Common fears and their treatment are dealt with on p 108

(b) Ensuring that he has a good sleep on the night before operation

(c) Reducing apprehension by premedicating drugs such as aspirin bromides or for alcoholics even by alcohol

2 The anæsthetic effect of the gas can be reinforced by—

(a) Diminishing the oxygen intake

(b) The preliminary use of a small dose of pentothal given intravenously

(c) Adding a more powerful agent such as ethyl chloride

Whenever possible the dentist and anæsthetist should see that the measures enumerated under heading 1 are carried out in every case while those under 2 are resorted to only when necessary

PRE-ANÆSTHETIC MEDICATION FOR THE HOSPITALISED PATIENT

The desirability of giving some sort of pre-anæsthetic sedative drug before any operation cannot be disputed but the choice of drug and the dose in which it shall be administered is governed by such considerations as the desirability of long or short post-operative unconsciousness the nursing facilities available the length of time a patient is to be hospitalised and the accompanying financial implications

Morphia—In the premedication of hospitalised patients morphia is more extensively used than any other sedative drug Certain aspects of its action were dealt with earlier in this chapter The standard dose for premedication is $\frac{1}{10}$ gr per stone of body weight with a maximum of $\frac{1}{3}$ gr For this purpose larger doses should rarely be given because they are accompanied by a depressant action on the respiratory centre Although its anodyne effect is noticeable 10–15 minutes after hypodermic injection maximum depression of respiration and of metabolism is not seen for a further hour If morphia is given intravenously respiratory depression is maximal after about 10–15 minutes When used for premedication morphia should be given sufficiently early for this maximum respiratory depression to

be manifest before the anæsthetic is begun If this precaution is not taken absorption of morphia will continue after anæsthesia has been achieved and dangerous depression of the respiratory centre may result

If by mistake morphia is given in the standard premedicant dose before drugs such as avertin or cyclopropane which also have a marked respiratory depressant effect the course of the anæsthesia may be fraught with difficulty and danger If respiratory depression becomes pronounced the patient will need undivided attention until it has worn off

Although subsequent anæsthesia is eventually achieved with less anæsthetic than if morphia were not given full doses of this drug in the rare cases where ether is used for induction as well as for maintenance of anæsthesia have the paradoxical effect of making the attainment of deep anæsthesia difficult Before the beginning of induction the respiratory depressant effect of the morphia may not be obvious but it becomes so immediately ether is used The sensitivity of the respiratory tract is scarcely diminished by morphia so that the irritant effect of ether on the larynx raises the threshold of the respiratory centre to CO_2 (p 48) above the level to which it has already been raised by the morphia Shallow and slow breathing results and if the anæsthetist attempts to shorten the induction period by increasing the concentration of ether vapour frank laryngeal spasm raises the threshold of the centre still further During this period the blood ether will be absorbed by the body tissues and anæsthesia may even become lighter rather than deeper

The special use of morphia as a premedicating drug for N_2O anæsthesia is well recognised and it is also of value before local anæsthesia because it reduces appreciation of any discomfort attendant on the operation but it is seldom used for the ambulatory patient in the dental surgery It could and possibly should be used much more for these cases than it is at present One marked disadvantage is that a patient under the influence of morphia should not be allowed to travel unaccompanied any more than he would be if mildly intoxicated by any other drug Further liability to nausea renders a morphinised patient unfit to undertake his normal work for a few hours after injection

Morphia is of great value in the recovery period to abolish restlessness from pain (p 206)

Hyoscine (scopolamine) —This drug is frequently used in hospitalised patients because of the combination of its depressant action on the central nervous system and its effects in reducing mucus secretion We have not used it for children and avoid giving it to

the elderly because it may produce delirium and restlessness, frequently shown by "picking at the bedclothes" Between these age groups hyoscine will be found advantageous In doses of $\frac{1}{100}$ gr it is sedative but not soporific It is not suitable however, for the ambulatory patient, for in many ways the patient under hyoscine behaves like one slightly concussed and not fully responsible His actions are automatic and there is loss of memory for events following the injection It is for this reason that it is so useful in childbirth During the "twilight sleep" of hyoscine the patient complains and appears to feel the pains of labour, but remembers little or nothing afterwards Similarly, when it is given as a premedicant drug before an operation although the patient may talk rationally and object to the inhalation anæsthetic, if one is given he seldom remembers the induction

For hospitalised patients morphia may be conveniently combined with hyoscine in the proportion of 25 1 (e g morphia $\frac{1}{3}$ gr , hyoscine $\frac{1}{100}$ gr), given $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours before operation By the time the patient reaches the operating theatre the sedative effect will be maximal The summation of the actions of these two drugs causes a marked general depression of nervous activity without corresponding depression of the respiratory centre Respiration in fact, is little more to be pressed than when morphia alone is given Besides the amnesic action of hyoscine its action on the parasympathetic nervous system is generally sufficient to make the use of atropine unnecessary

Alcohol—Much confusion exists as to the position of alcohol in relation to anæsthesia The narcotic effect of alcohol is seen daily, yet oddly enough this action is seldom taken into account when anæsthesia is considered Numerous cases are on record where the ingestion of a large quantity of alcohol has led to death with signs, apart from the smell of the breath, indistinguishable from those produced by an overdose of ether Although its use as a basal or as a sole anæsthetic has now been abandoned, it is well to remember that this drug did enjoy a brief popularity as an anæsthetic for a few years after Mann's thesis in 1929[3] We have produced anæsthesia for abdominal and other operations solely by giving alcohol intravenously Anæsthesia and recovery were entirely uneventful There is, however, no method of administering alcohol which is simple enough to warrant its routine use

We have often anæsthetised patients who had resorted freely to the whisky bottle to assuage the pains of toothache, and have found them easy subjects for nitrous oxide A drunken patient who has to be anæsthetised for, say, reduction of a fractured tibia, will be

7

found to need much less anæsthetic than if he had been sober
The effect of alcohol here is the same as that of small doses of
ether, and it is evident that if the patient is under the influence
of small doses of ether, he will need less subsequent anæsthetic than
if he were not

On the other hand alcoholism is an addiction, and tolerance of
and resistance to alcohol and other narcotics are soon acquired   A
patient who drinks alcohol daily acquires a resistance to the effects
of anæsthetics in the same way as if he inhaled daily small quantities
of ether   For this reason the chronic alcoholic, unless heavily pre-
medicated or unless he is under the influence of alcohol, is very difficult
to anæsthetise with a weak anæsthetic such as N_2O Because resistance
to anæsthesia is well known to follow the continuous taking of alcohol,
a regular drinker is frequently warned not to take alcohol for the few
days before he is to be anæsthetised   Such advice is greatly mistaken
It rests on a failure to appreciate that resistance is produced by the
adaptation of the body to alcohol and is not due to the effect of alcohol
recently taken   It is the alcohol taken during the last ten years
which causes the resistance, but the alcohol taken during the last
forty-eight hours acts as a sedative and diminishes resistance   The
intoxicated man is easy to anæsthetise, whereas the chronic alcoholic
deprived of alcohol is very difficult   The following examples in our
own experience illustrate the typical effects of alcohol on anæsthesia

A drunken man was brought to hospital with a broken leg and
a dislocated shoulder   He was given N_2O He did not struggle
and a mixture with a high percentage of oxygen provided good
muscular relaxation which allowed the shoulder to be reduced with
ease   He was warded in hospital for two days and then anæs-
thetised for reduction of a fractured tibia   In the meantime he
had been deprived of alcohol according to the hospital routine
Standard premedication proved insufficient   During induction
by a competent and experienced resident, he struggled violently
and was not subdued until a large amount of anæsthetic had been
given   Such struggling could have been largely averted by
correct premedication or even by two or three strong   whiskies
and sodas   in the few hours preceding induction

In another case the patient was a woman whom the dentist
stated had been an alcoholic, but he expected that she would not
cause any trouble since she had taken a cure and had been tee-
total for six months   There was no reason to doubt the latter
part of the story, yet she proved difficult to manage, showing
reactions to anæsthesia typical of the chronic alcoholic

On many occasions we have anæsthetised patients, alcoholic and otherwise, who had indulged freely in alcohol to relieve tooth ache The dentist has expected lack of co-operation, but almost invariably we have found these patients easier to anæsthetise than if they had not been under the influence of alcohol

With the great number of good pre anæsthetic drugs now at the anæsthetist's disposal we do not suggest that alcohol should be used to produce sedation, but we feel strongly that any patient, particularly the alcoholic, should not be deprived of his customary alcohol for the few days preceding an operation Such deprivation greatly increases reflex irritability and resistance to the onset of unconsciousness

There is no objection to a patient drinking a brandy and soda, or a whisky and soda, one hour or even immediately before the anæsthetic proper, provided it helps him to face the ordeal, in fact, he will be all the better for it On the other hand, the patient who finds this necessary must be regarded with considerable suspicion, as he is likely to be accustomed to indulgence in alcohol and therefore to give trouble, but such last minute fortification will make him less, rather than more, troublesome

BASAL ANÆSTHESIA

As their name suggests, basal anæsthetics are used to produce a basic level of unconsciousness which can be deepened to surgical anæsthesia by an inhalation anæsthetic In larger doses they could be used as the sole means of producing surgical anæsthesia, but such use is rarely warrantable

Broadly speaking an anæsthetic may be considered safe only if it affords a satisfactory margin between the quantity necessary to provide good operating conditions and that which would cause respiratory failure, and if it can be administered by a method which enables the anæsthetist to deepen or lighten anæsthesia at will Although *most of the sedative drugs in common use provide a wide safety margin*, it is only with inhalation anæsthetics that the depth of anæsthesia can be varied from moment to moment as may be demanded by fluctuation in the state of the patient and the exigencies of the operation If an attempt is made to obtain full anæsthesia by a non inhalation anæsthetic, an error of judgment may easily cause a lethal dose to be given In any case, the rate of recovery from any such drug is so slow that it should rarely be used as the sole anæsthetic for a long operation Nevertheless, non inhalation anæsthetics have a wide sphere of usefulness as basal anæsthetics

There are many basal drugs at the anæsthetist's disposal They can be given by rectum, by mouth, or intravenously   In all cases, the onset of sleep is peaceful and pleasant   For some reason for which no adequate explanation can be offered drugs given by mouth, rectum, or subcutaneous or intravenous injection produce a more pleasant transition from consciousness to unconsciousness than do drugs which must be inhaled   With basal anæsthetics the onset of narcosis is almost imperceptible and so much resembles normal sleep that resistance to anæsthesia is not mobilised as often as by inhalation anæsthetics   The rate at which the patient becomes unconscious depends on the rate of absorption, and is therefore greatest when the drug is given intravenously   The length of the recovery period depends on the drug chosen and the amount given

Some writers have stated that the preliminary use of a basal anæsthetic increases the risk of post-operative morbidity which accompanies the administration of an inhalation anæsthetic   This view is erroneous, although it is true that return to consciousness is usually delayed by a basal anæsthetic, so that the patient needs longer post-operative care

The one tenable argument against most basal anæsthetics is that the prolonged period of unconsciousness which they produce increases the period, pre- and post-operative, during which the patient must not be left without skilled supervision   For this reason a shortage of nursing staff prevents the fuller use of basal premedication

There are no age limits to the use of basal anæsthesia   In the very young metabolism is high so that a proportionally higher dose is necessary   The basal metabolic rate of the elderly is low ; their dread of surgery is less than in the young adult ; and if a basal anæsthetic is to be given these factors make it necessary to reduce the dose accordingly   If this adjustment is not made, deep and prolonged unconsciousness may result   This is particularly undesirable because protracted immobility in elderly patients is liable to be followed by hypostatic congestion and œdema of the lungs, and by venous thrombosis which may result in pulmonary embolism

The duration of sleep produced by the basal anæsthetics about to be described varies from a few minutes to several hours   Since the sleep produced will not be deep, all stimuli should be eliminated as far as possible   The room should be quiet and the patient protected from strong light   He must not be jolted during transport to the theatre, nor bumped clumsily on to the operating table   Under avertin narcosis a patient may be roused during transit to the theatre and may be apparently awake on arrival   If he is left undisturbed he

will fall asleep again in a few minutes and the inhalation anæsthetic may then be commenced

Of the many basal anæsthetics available we discuss here only those of which we have had considerable practical experience   The dose of each drug mentioned is that for an adult patient in average health This ' standard   dose should be reduced for the asthenic, and increased for the robust or resistant patient

The Rectal Route

Gwathmey in 1913, gave ether mixed with olive oil by rectum to a patient in bed before taking him to the operating theatre, and, as Rowbotham indicates this was the first big step towards preventing   the mental distress which often has such a deleterious effect upon his condition before, during, and after operation " [4]

To obtain successful results from administration of anæsthetics by the rectum the following routine is recommended   An enema should be given the night before operation   Whether this has been done or not, it is unnecessary and even undesirable to give an enema on the morning of operation since this increases the sensitivity of the rectum for a few hours and the anæsthetic given may be expelled   The patient lies on his left side and two pillows are placed under his buttocks

FIG 22 —This position by allowing the fluid to run freely into the bowel hastens absorption and prevents discomfort from distension of the rectum

Nothing is to be gained by running the fluid in slowly, but it should not be run in fast enough to cause discomfort from rectal distension With children, particularly if they are unco operative, expulsion of the fluid can be prevented by pressing the buttocks together both during and after the rectal injection

Avertin fluid * (Tribromethylalcohol (CBr₃CH₂OH) in amylene hydrate) —The dose is 0 1 c c per kilo of body weight of the patient The avertin fluid is shaken vigorously with forty times its volume of distilled water at approximately body temperature, tested with Congo Red (to make sure that the solution is not acid enough to turn this blue) and then run into the rectum through a catheter The patient rapidly becomes drowsy, unconsciousness is reached in 10–30 minutes and lasts about an hour and a half Since avertin has an appreciably depressant action on respiration the standard dose must be greatly reduced if another drug with this action, e g morphia, has been given within the previous 3 hours One advantage of avertin, very useful for jaw surgery is that the masseter muscle is relaxed even during light anæsthesia
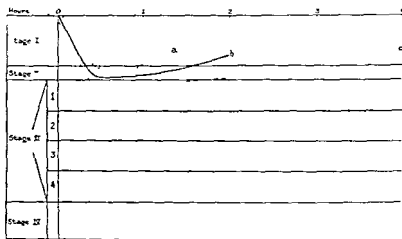
FIG 23 —Chart of sleep resulting from rectal administration of (a) pentothal (b) avertin and (c) paraldehyde in the doses mentioned in the paragraphs dealing with these drugs There is no significant difference in the time taken to produce unconsciousness with all three but they differ in the depths of depression produced Since the rates of excretion differ there is a corresponding difference in the duration of their effects

Paraldehyde (CH₃CHO)₃ —The dose is 1 drachm per stone of body weight with a maximum dosage of 1 oz (8 drachms) Before being given by rectum it should be thoroughly shaken with twelve times its volume of water or saline or it can be given well mixed with an equal volume of olive oil Unconsciousness comes on rather more

* This drug is now made in this country and is available as various brands of bromethol

slowly than after avertin and lasts longer—usually four to five hours It does not produce any marked respiratory depression The main contra-indications to its use are (1) the prolonged unconsciousness (2) its excretion in the breath makes the atmosphere of the nursing room objectionable and (3) in our experience it has occasionally proved sufficiently irritating to the rectum to make its retention uncertain

Pentothal and evipan—Recently we have been administering these barbiturates by the rectal route in doses of 0 1 gm per year of age, with a maximum of 2 gm The powder is dissolved in 20–30 c c of water and the solution run into the rectum The patient is usually lightly asleep in 15 minutes and remains so for a further half hour

The Oral Route

The advantage of this route is that it involves the minimum of fuss for everyone concerned The disadvantage is that gastric and intestinal motility and absorption are notoriously unreliable in the nervous individual the very one for whom basal anæsthesia is particularly desirable The oral route is successful in about 95 per cent of cases but *in the remainder the anæsthetist is faced with the problem of dealing with a patient who has ingested but not absorbed a strongly depressant drug* If the operation is postponed all concerned are inconvenienced If it is decided to proceed and an inhalation anæsthetic is given the patient will have lost the advantages of basal anæsthesia and the anæsthetist will have to allow for absorption of the ingested drug at an unpredictable time during unconsciousness.

Some disappointments are inevitable when basal anæsthetics are given orally It cannot be promised as with a basal anæsthetic given rectally or intravenously that sleep will certainly follow

> One of us was called in to anæsthetise a child in the early afternoon She had been put to bed at this unusual time in a bedroom transformed into an operating theatre She was apprehensive, of course, *in such surroundings, even though she had not been told she was to have several teeth extracted* The family doctor insisted upon nembutal by mouth as the basal anæsthetic, and this was given one hour before it was intended to start the operation Since the drug had not produced any effect by the appointed time the operation was postponed An hour later the child fell into a sleep which lasted several hours If she had been premedicated with bromide for two or three days beforehand, she might have been spared her apprehensions and gastric absorption might not have been delayed Alternatively she should not have been allowed to know anything of the preparations for

operation, and should have been given nembutal in place of lunch, and encouraged to lie down on the sofa while somebody read to her Under these conditions the nembutal would have been absorbed, and once asleep the child could have been undressed and put to bed

The percentage of failures will be decreased by any preliminary procedure which reduces apprehension and ensures normal functioning of the stomach The night before operation an adult should receive luminal $\frac{1}{2}$ gr to ensure a good night's sleep, and 2 hours before operation morpha $\frac{1}{6}-\frac{1}{4}$ gr subcutaneously

Nembutal.—This barbiturate is a bitter powder which is supplied in gelatin capsules The dose for an adult is 3–6 gr Unconsciousness comes on in about 20 minutes and lasts for about $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours The dose for children in *grains* (not grams) is 0 6 per stone of body weight, with a maximum of 3 gr Since it is often difficult to persuade a child to swallow a capsule, the powder can be shaken into a medicine glass and its bitterness largely disguised by the addition of honey and orange juice

The Intravenous Route

The barbiturates which are given intravenously can be classified roughly as ultra-short- and short-acting according to the rates of their excretion

Pentothal and evipan.—These belong to the ultra-short-acting group and are discussed more fully on p 138 As basal anæsthetics
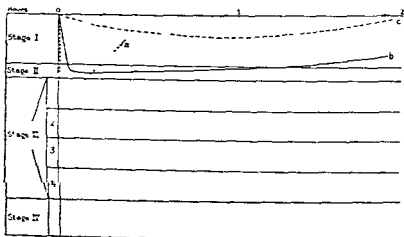
Fig 24 —Chart of sedation produced by (a) intravenous pentothal, (b) intravenous nembutal and (c) subcutaneous morpha

they can be used for the ambulatory patient if only a very small dose (e g 0 25 gm) is given rapidly , to a patient in bed, double this dose or even more may be necessary to allow him to be transported in the unconscious state to the operating theatre

Nembutal and pernocton --Of the short-acting barbiturates, we have had most experience with these two drugs The former is a powder readily soluble in water, the latter, because of its greater stability, is distributed in solution in ampoules These drugs must be injected slowly and the administration stopped when unconsciousness is reached On an average this is attained by 3-6 gr of nembutal or 3-5 c c of pernocton Both drugs are excreted slowly Average doses produce unconsciousness lasting for 1½ to 2 hours and drowsiness persists for many hours afterwards

ATROPINE

Although atropine is the only pre-anæsthetic drug which does not have a sedative effect on the central nervous system, it is used almost as a routine before general surgical operations By depressing the activity of the parasympathetic nervous system which supplies secretory nerves to the salivary glands and to mucous glands of the bronchial tree, atropine prevents the excessive secretion of mucus which otherwise occurs when the anæsthetic vapour is irritant Hyoscine, structurally related to atropine, similarly depresses the parasympathetic nervous system Only those who have given ether to unpremedicated patients realise fully the value of this protection both against obstruction of the airway by mucus and against post-operative chest complications

Atropine is still recommended by some as a protection against sudden death in chloroform anæsthesia Despite the work of Goodman Levy,[5] it is still frequently taught that high concentrations of chloroform stimulate the vagus, and that the resulting inhibition of cardiac action is one of the causes of the sudden deaths which are known to occur during chloroform anæsthesia It is probable that these deaths are due to ventricular fibrillation against which atropine offers no protection

The dose of atropine for an adult is $\frac{1}{100}$ gr , and since it cannot be relied upon to be effective in smaller doses than $\frac{1}{150}$ gr , this latter dose should be given even to an infant Its action on the submaxillary gland becomes manifest after about 10 minutes The cessation of salivary secretion will be found particularly helpful to surgeons operating in the mouth To the patient, however, the dry mouth may

be a cause of acute discomfort particularly on a hot day   Atropine
should therefore not be injected an unnecessarily long time before the
operation

There is no contra indication to the use of atropine in an ambulatory
patient   There is no need for it however before simple extractions
If it is desired to ensure a dry mouth for a major jaw operation under
local anæsthesia in the dental chair the drug can be given as a tablet
by mouth half an hour before the operation

REFERENCES

(1) Shaw G B   1906   Preface to *The Doctor s Dilemma*   London
(2) Guedel A E   1937   *Inhalation Anesthesia*   New York   61
(3) Constantin J D   1929   *Lancet*   **1**, 1247
(4) Rowbotham E S   1931   *Brit med J*   **2,** 693
(5) Levy A G   1922   *Chloroform Anæsthesia*   London

CHAPTER XI

THE MORE DIFFICULT PATIENT

MENTAL and temperamental differences between individuals are as
common as the more obvious physical differences, and they play an
equally important part in affecting a patient's reactions to anæsthetics
The behaviour of an individual may differ so little from the average
that, although the stress of fear and excitement temporarily reveals
a previously unsuspected abnormality which makes him a difficult
subject for anæsthesia, yet he could hardly be described as abnormal
The anæsthetist should learn how to assess quickly the type of patient
with which he has to deal, so that he can foresee when anæsthesia is
likely to be easy and when difficult   This is particularly important
for the ambulatory patient whom the anæsthetist often sees for only
a few minutes beforehand, and who has usually had little or no
premedication   The everyday social experience of a sympathetic
observer will help him to detect such psychological traits as may
be expected to influence the course of anæsthesia   The informa-
tion he derives from the patient's behaviour, during their short
acquaintance before anæsthesia is begun, together with his experience
of the ways in which patients react during the early stages of
anæsthesia, enable him to foresee the probable behaviour of the
patient during anæsthesia   The ability to "size up' his fellow-
men during a few minutes' conversation is a valuable asset to an
anæsthetist

This chapter deals with the various categories of patients who
present difficulties to the anæsthetist   The problems encountered
and the principles employed in overcoming them are illustrated as
far as possible by examples from anæsthesia in dental surgery

THE NERVOUS PATIENT

The way in which a patient reacts to the thought of an operation
or of being rendered unconscious is of great practical importance to
the anæsthetist   The fear reaction, which is an essential factor in
biological survival, consists of a complicated series of changes which
prepare an individual either to resist the incident which evokes fear,
if necessary by means of physical violence, or to run away   This is

aptly described as the   fight or flight mechanism   a primitive
defensive mechanism of the body put into action as a result of stimula
tion of the sympathetic nervous system   A similar response is shown
after the injection of small doses of adrenaline   There is increased
activity in the relevant bodily functions   Dilatation of the pupil
improves vision   the respiratory centre is rendered more sensitive
facilitating intake of oxygen and excretion of CO_2 and respiratory
exchange is further improved by the substitution of oral for nasal
breathing   liver glycogen is mobilised and the blood sugar thereby
increased to supply muscles with energy   cardiac output is increased
and blood pressure raised for the same reason   Reflex action time is
shortened and mental alertness is increased and the ability to sleep
correspondingly diminished to cope with the emergency   This
means that the starting point of anæsthesia is raised considerably
above the level at which consciousness is lost and that induction will
therefore take longer and that there will be more time and oppor
tunity for the patient to behave violently before surgical anæsthesia
is attained

The   highly nervous   individual is one who readily shows this
reaction to fear   He over responds to ordinary stimuli and the mere
thought of visiting the dentist is enough to upset him   Unless he
has been calmed by appropriate premedication his inability to co
operate is liable to lead to difficulty in the induction period   It must
not be thought that this over reactive type is always easily recog
nisable   Education and training can so modify a patient's reactions
that his tendency to over respond may be hidden successfully until it
is revealed by removal of higher conscious control as during induction
of anæsthesia   Other modifying factors have a temporary effect and
act in the ways one would expect   For instance if a patient who does
not normally over react has been overworked or if he is upset by
business or family worries he will be converted temporarily into the
over reactive type and will behave accordingly   A familiar illustration
is seen in hospital practice during a morning session of extractions when
one sometimes has to deal with a patient who has just been on night
duty   Such a patient is almost invariably difficult to anæsthetise
Similarly over reaction is seen in patients who have been kept awake
all night by toothache

Some degree of fear associated with the prospect of losing conscious
ness and of an operation is so natural as to be quite normal   Such
nervousness is one of the commonest causes of difficulty during
induction and in extreme cases is so marked that the patient is
incapable of co-operating with the anæsthetist

The anæsthetist should treat with understanding, reassurance, and encouragement any particular fear which he may detect   The fear most commonly confessed is that of losing consciousness   This vague fear occurs independently of, and is much more frequent than, fear of death   The patient may be afraid of losing self control or of behaving badly or of talking indiscreetly   If previously he has had a feeling of suffocation or a vivid ' nightmare " or any other unpleasant experience associated with anæsthesia, he fears with a certain amount of justification that this experience is likely to be repeated

Fear that too small a dose of anæsthetic will be administered, and that the pain of the operation will be felt, is far commoner than fear of over dosage   The patient who is afraid that the operator will begin work before he is unconscious often tries to keep his eyes open, or holds up his hand, or moves his arm up and down, or attempts to speak or to repeat a monotonous sound to signify that he is still awake

It is unusual for the patient to start to make any such movement or noise until he has taken about three or four breaths of gas   The administrator should take his cue immediately from any of these signs and put the patient's mind at rest by patting him reassuringly on the shoulder and by saying, in a decided tone, " No, you needn't worry, I know you are not nearly asleep yet   I promise you that ' Mr Jones ' won't begin until you are completely asleep   Now I want you to breathe a trifle more deeply for a few breaths—one, two, excellent "

One can often reassure the patient who indicates that he is not yet asleep by saying, " I am purposely putting you to sleep very slowly and giving you a lot of oxygen as a stimulant   That means that you will go off to sleep slowly, but you will feel all the better afterwards "   Although O_2 is not, in fact, added until anæsthesia is established, such a statement calms the patient and so conduces to a good recovery.   A regular movement of the hand, arm, or foot, such as has been described, when once initiated during consciousness may persist after unconsciousness has been reached, but will disappear during deep anæsthesia   Sometimes merely putting the patient's arm down by his side will arrest these automatic arm movements

Most people keep their eyes closed during the induction of anæsthesia   Nervous patients, however, tend to keep them open   For the sake of these the wise dentist will stand where he can be seen, in front of the patient, and endeavour to give the impression that he has no immediate intention of beginning to operate   He should show himself occupied, for example, in the contemplation of an X-ray film,

or merely in gazing out of the window   If the patient should open his eyes before consciousness is lost, he will then have less reason to suppose that the operation will commence prematurely than if he finds the dentist, forceps in hand, standing eagerly over him

Fear that anæsthesia will be too great a strain for the heart may be indicated by the patient putting his hand to his heart during induction   The anæsthetist should pat him on the shoulder and inform him that the forceful beating is a usual, indeed a reassuring, phenomenon !   " I know you can feel your heart beating strongly—that's nothing to worry about, in fact it is a good sign   I want you to continue taking nice deep breaths exactly as you are doing now "

The nature of the proposed operation may itself determine the appearance of the fear reaction   A woman, in particular, is nervous and depressed or hysterical if she is to lose her front teeth   She may be afraid of wearing dentures, or afraid that the need for this operation indicates the onset of old age, and on such an occasion one may anticipate that she will not be as co-operative during induction nor as placid on recovery as if a molar tooth were to be extracted

Fear is a complex phenomenon, and patients often reveal specific individual fears   The person who is generally recognised by his friends as a " nervous individual " does not always present difficulties, but sometimes the ordinarily well balanced individual shows a surprising instability when confronted with the prospect of being anæsthetised

A striking instance of this contrast was seen one morning in two consecutive patients   The first, a V C of the Great War, entered the dental surgery for simple extractions in such a state of terror at the prospect of losing consciousness that it was thought advisable to postpone the operation and to arrange for its performance in a nursing home where he could be given a basal anæsthetic before nitrous oxide   The next patient, a frail old lady, nervous of crossing the road, had no fear of unconsciousness or of an operation, and anæsthesia with nasal nitrous oxide was quite smooth

The anæsthetist is forewarned by an apprehensiveness which declares itself before the anæsthetic begins, but an important degree of nervousness may exist without obvious signs, leading to difficulties in the induction period which may take him unawares   It should be remembered that the reaction to fear varies in different individuals   Although it is governed by the laws of inheritance, it may be brought under control by training or by the habits of a lifetime and, as pointed out above, it is not always possible to recognise when this has occurred

Thus a man may, by years of practice, have developed so perfect a voluntary restraint that his friends do not realise that he is a highly "nervous" individual, that is his own secret He is often one of the community's best types, intelligent and acutely alert to every danger, but with all his fears controlled and hidden

The duration and intensity of the training process determine the extent to which a nervous patient is able to suppress the signs of fearfulness The "stiff upper lip" training begins very early to modify the fear response A good example is that of the young midshipman, who, although acutely terrified by his visit to the dentist, conceals his fear completely However, during induction of anaesthesia, voluntary control is the first function to be lost and then his real nervousness becomes manifest The stage at which this occurs depends upon the strength of his initial self control The young midshipman who has only relatively recently acquired the ability to control his emotions continues to obey instructions implicitly until the onset of unconsciousness He thus retains his control for a longer time than does the patient who shows panic early in induction but patients with more rigorous self-control retain it until various later stages of unconsciousness In some patients it is so strong that it persists until late in anaesthesia, by which time muscular and obvious mental action are in abeyance so that its loss is unnoticed, and the anaesthesia remains smooth throughout

The anaesthetist may be surprised by the patient whose emotional control is only superficial if he has not learned to be suspicious of the person who embarks on anaesthesia in an abnormally light hearted fashion, for such light heartedness may represent an attempt to conceal a nervousness which is extreme The patient at first co operates perfectly, but just as consciousness is lost he suddenly struggles violently and may get out of hand unless the anaesthetist has been anticipating this emergency and is ready to cope with it

With many nervous patients, difficulties are experienced only during the induction period and for the first few minutes of the supervening anaesthesia The energy for resistance then seems to be dissipated and subsequent anaesthesia is easy Loss of control is evidenced by lack of co operation, the onset of vigorous oral breathing, by movements of the arms and legs, and sometimes by screaming The patient may retch and spit out the prop and at last be subdued only with difficulty When these reactions occur they indicate that fear influences the mind to such an extent that the subject is not susceptible to any reassurance It is useless then for the anaesthetist to show impatience, since this only increases the fear These patients once

anæsthetised become peaceful and easy   others the wiry, aggressive or resistant will respond vigorously if stimulated at any stage during light anæsthesia

Once the fear reaction has occurred it is liable to recur if anæsthesia is allowed to lighten unduly   Moreover in an extremely nervous and resistant patient even deep N_2O anæsthesia sometimes too deep that asphyxial jactitation is imminent may be insufficient to prevent the operative stimulus evoking reflex muscular responses   Continuance of the stimulus may rouse the patient to mouth breathing and extreme restlessness and the operation must then be interrupted until anæsthesia is deepened again   As stated above the fear response is probably an adrenaline release mechanism producing a degree of alertness which is antagonistic to relaxation and sleep and therefore to the onset and maintenance of anæsthesia   Clinical experience shows that the antagonistic effect of the adrenaline mobilised by the fear reaction is so strong that in order to render the patient quiescent after the reaction has occurred and to restore nose breathing and a state of unresponsiveness to stimuli the O_2 content of a N_2O O_2 mixture may have to be reduced temporarily to a level considerably lower than that required to maintain satisfactory anæsthesia in a non nervous patient   Indeed the largest concentration of O_2 in the mixture which will permit of successful anæsthesia can be regarded as an inverse measure of the amount of adrenaline in the circulation   Premedication (Chapter X) is the method *par excellence* by which the condition of a nervous patient can be so modified that he can be anæsthetised by nitrous oxide without resorting to extreme deprivation of oxygen

Cumulative Dislike of Anæsthetics

The resistance of an individual to the onset of anæsthesia may vary from day to day   It is a curious psychological phenomenon that during the course of five or six administrations the patient becomes increasingly unwilling to resign himself to unconsciousness brought about by *inhalation* anæsthetics however pleasant his previous experiences may have been   At the first or second administration of N_2O his tranquil state of mind may make it possible to give a relatively high percentage of oxygen   If the patient is more nervous on the next occasion this percentage has to be reduced in order to achieve the same depth of anæsthesia a phenomenon described by Hewitt as progressive intolerance to nitrous oxide   For this reason a patient who is at first normal may after repeated anæsthetics become a nervous patient   By reassurance and premedication the nervous element can be reduced and the patient s

metabolic rate depressed so that anæsthesia is started from the same level as on the first occasion , the original concentration of anæsthetic will then have its previous effect   It is, however, of greater importance, particularly for a nervous patient, to plan the dental work to be done so that as few separate anæsthetics as possible are needed   Although he feels less well after a long than after a short anæsthetic, the average patient prefers one or two long anæsthetics, during which the work can be completed, than to have his visits to the dentist multiplied If two visits are necessary it is generally preferable to do the less difficult extractions first so that, after anæsthesia and as short as possible and recovery as pleasant as possible, the patient will not approach the second occasion with dread   However, if the dentist is concerned about the operative difficulties he may begin with the more difficult extractions   if he finds them even more formidable than he anticipated, it is best for him to stop operating as soon as possible, in order that post operative depression may be minimal and to arrange for the patient to enter a nursing home for the rest of the work to be done at a single session

THE ANÆSTHETIC-RESISTANT PATIENT

There are two chief variables which determine an infinite variety of reactions to anæsthetics   These are the potency of the anæsthetic agent used and the resistance of the patient to the onset of unconscious ness   For instance, if an average dose of a potent anæsthetic is administered to a patient depressed by shock, dangerously deep anæsthesia may be produced   On the other hand, often in the dental surgery, the anæsthetist is tempted to try to subdue a resistant patient with N_2O, the weakest of anæsthetic agents, with the expectation that the resulting anæsthesia will be tranquil enough to allow difficult extractions to be accomplished   Only too often, when the anæsthetist is inexperienced, have hopes of this kind, together with some of the surgical equipment, been dashed to the ground !

The nature of the resistance shown by the anæsthetic resistant patient is different from that of the patient who is merely " nervous ' The latter is unco operative during induction but is subsequently easy to manage   The former possesses a fundamental resistance to the effects of anæsthetics, a resistance which is particularly evident when a weak anæsthetic such as N_2O is used   It is with the healthy robust patient that anæsthetic difficulties are encountered when N_2O is used —not, as is generally supposed with the frail elderly patient   Whilst

with the frail anæsthesia is easy throughout with the robust both induction and maintenance are difficult   There is only a narrow range of safe anæsthesia between marked response to an operative stimulus and asphyxial jactitation   Nervousness of course increases the difficulties encountered with this group of patients

The anæsthetic resistant patient should be recognised as a definite type and dealt with appropriately   He possesses the quality of sthenicity   (Gr σθενος, = strength) a term used by American writers to signify excessive vital energy   Typical examples are the hunting major the international footballer the navvy and the man who does not know when he is beaten   With a little experience resistance to the effects of anæsthetics can be estimated with fair accuracy   A direct comparison can be made with the resistance to the onset of unconsciousness from any other cause   A man who can take a severe blow and continue fighting will be anæsthetic resistant   so will the man who can drink half a dozen strong cocktails without showing any effects   If a patient is resistant to one anæsthetic he will be resistant to all   This state of resistance to unconsciousness may be innate or acquired   The determined wiry physically aggressive pugnacious individual is innately resistant   while the patient who faints easily is not   Those who have acquired resistance include the physically fit robust subject   in training   and the alcoholic who by daily consumption of this drug has become resistant to the effects not only of alcohol but of all narcotics

When an anæsthetic resistant patient presents himself for dental extractions he often gives a history of previous troublesomeness during anæsthesia   He is usually somewhat proud of this and does not spare any opportunity of telling of his previous difficult behaviour   Attention should be paid to the patient's warning that he   takes gas badly   Wayward behaviour under N₂O is accounted for more often by the patient's idiosyncrasies than by unskilled anæsthesia   Every anæsthetist remembers with regret some case in which he did not regard the patient's warning laying the fault in his own mind at the door of the previous administrator   Even if the patient is being anæsthetised for the first time or if he does not mention the difficulties of former *occasions the anæsthetist with any* experience can generally recognise that he is likely to prove resistant   While resistance to anæsthesia is most apparent when N₂O is used   it will be seen also if ether is used as the sole anæsthetic for a major operation   With ether and N₂O in the resistant patient struggling is common   with the former during induction with the latter during maintenance   Difficulties are experi-

enced in inducing anæsthesia with ether in such a patient because its irritating effects on the mucous membranes make it impossible to hasten the patient through the delirium stage Struggling is then inevitable but once anæsthesia has been produced maintenance presents no difficulties because of the potency of ether Although unconsciousness is rapidly produced with N_2O this agent alone is not strong enough to produce peaceful anæsthesia in a resistant subject unless a noticeable element of asphyxia is introduced By the use of the more modern powerful and pleasant anæsthetics (pentothal evipan, cyclopropane etc) the anæsthetic state can be reached quickly and maintained easily without struggling Resistance which would be obvious with N_2O is not seen with pentothal where the stage of potential delirium is passed through in a few seconds and where the degree of resistance encountered is conveyed, not in terms of a struggle but in terms of the dose of anæsthetic needed to produce peaceful anæsthesia Thus an anæsthetic resistant patient might need as much as 0 7 gm of pentothal for an operation which in the average patient could be accomplished with 0 4 gm With a drug of rapid action such as pentothal the alcoholic or other resistant patient is scarcely more difficult to anæsthetise than the average since all the difficulties can be overcome by administering a large dose

Fig 25

If it is recognised before anæsthesia is begun that a patient is likely to be resistant a strap should be used so that the pelvis is fixed well back in the chair (p 182) Without attracting the patient s attention the foot rest should be taken away If the foot rest cannot be removed the feet should be placed on either side of the chair

Oxygen lack and surgical stimulus almost invariably cause some muscular response in these patients which may be violent enough to make them assume a position of opisthotonos, unless these pre-

FIG 26

cautions have been taken   If the foot rest is left in position when the strap is in use a powerful patient may press on it with sufficient force to break it

Any movable furniture within reach of the patient s arms or legs should be moved out of range   Violence of an extent to justify this precaution is extremely uncommon but when it does occur it usually develops suddenly   Besides the genuine danger that the patient may damage himself because the attendants cannot control him, and incidentally, the danger of his damaging the attendants, the effect of his struggles may be disastrous to furniture within his reach

In addition to these preliminary precautions, it is necessary when nitrous oxide is the anæsthetic to enhance its action by suitable means   As pointed out elsewhere the range of anæsthesia with N_2O is extremely narrow   During light anæsthesia a surgical stimulus will cause reflex responses—restlessness, struggling, mouth breathing, and return to consciousness   If an attempt is made to provide deep anæsthesia by further diminishing the O_2 intake asphyxial movements soon follow, and later respiratory arrest   If N_2O is to be used for the unpremedi cated anæsthetic-resistant patient, satisfactory results can be obtained by increasing the range of anæsthesia by a small dose of pentothal or evipan given intravenously immediately before the N_2O or by the use

of supplementary ethyl chloride Smooth anæsthesia can then be maintained without reducing the oxygen content of the anæsthetic mixture to a dangerous degree If it is decided to use a barbiturate intravenously the amount to be given depends on the degree of resistance anticipated from the patient and on the interval at which he has afterwards to leave the surgery in a normal condition

If an anæsthetic-resistant patient is not recognised as such before anæsthesia is begun and is given nitrous oxide, he will cause difficulty Even when cyanotic and obviously unconscious he is far from peaceful, even though no operative stimulus is applied He may purse his lips, roll his tongue, spit out the sponge, hold his head in an awkward position, be restless in the chair, and hold his arms rigidly extended Respiration is irregular, the breath being held in inspiration, and expiration is preceded by a grunt In this type of case any of the following three procedures will be found useful

1 The nose-piece is kept in position, and a corner of the towel over the chest is turned up over the mouth and ethyl chloride is sprayed on to this (fig 42, p 160)

2 As soon as the patient is unconscious an ordinary marine sponge soaked in ether is put into the mouth and the mouth-piece is applied This method is much more effective and pleasant than the description suggests The effect, considering the amount of ether, is quite extraordinary Very quickly the patient quietens and anæsthesia remains tranquil Recovery is unexpectedly rapid In our experience, this manœuvre has not been followed by nausea or vomiting, and the patient would appear to be unaware that ether has been given

3 In a similar way a 3-c c phial of vinesthene may be poured on to the upturned bib or on to a marine sponge, which is inserted into the mouth

For the inexperienced anæsthetist the addition of ether will be found more fool-proof and safer than the addition of ethyl chloride, because the latter drug, if given in excess, rapidly produces dangerously deep anæsthesia The after-effects of the addition of ether, ethyl chloride, or vinesthene are practically non existent if their use is confined to the type of case for which they are necessary If, however, these agents, particularly ethyl chloride, are used for the normal, or the frail, patient, collapse may occur and return to consciousness be associated with nausea and vomiting

Deepening of anæsthesia may be obtained by compressing the carotid arteries against the transverse processes of the cervical

vertebræ This method of producing temporary unconsciousness is
well recognised by the Japanese, and we have on occasions found it
very helpful in increasing the effect of N_2O in short operations when
this gas alone was not adequate

ALCOHOLISM

The relation of alcohol and of the alcoholic patient to anæsthesia
is dealt with on p 97

MORPHIA AND COCAINE ADDICTION

We have anæsthetised both morphia and cocaine addicts and found
them no more difficult than normal patients provided they had not
been deprived of their customary allowance of these drugs

> On one occasion we were asked to give nitrous oxide to a
> cocaine addict for dental extraction The patient's doctor under
> the impression that it would facilitate the anæsthetist's work,
> diminished for 24 hours the patient's customary allowance of
> cocaine On arrival at the dental surgery the patient was
> restless and unco operative It would have been impossible to
> give him gas without resorting to forcible restraint He was taken
> home and brought back the next day having been given slightly
> more than his usual amount of cocaine He was then contented,
> relaxed and co operative and as such was an easy subject to
> anæsthetise

An operation takes place only a few times in a patient's lifetime
and everything possible must be done on these occasions to make him
feel at ease If he happens to be a drug addict of any sort—cocaine,
morphia, alcohol or tobacco—he should not be deprived of the one
essential he needs to face the everyday difficulties of life An increased
allowance of his drug on this special occasion will soothe him and
make the situation easy both for him and for the anæsthetist
Premedication should take the form of a slightly larger dose of the
drug on which the patient leans for support

MENSTRUATION

There is no justification for the common impression that a patient
who is menstruating should not be subjected to anæsthesia, or to most
operations, on the grounds that it would be more detrimental to her
than at any other time Surgeons appear to agree however, that

where the operation is to be performed on the pelvic organs, on the thyroid gland or breast, it should, unless urgent, be postponed during menstruation Bleeding which is freer than normal occurs at this time in these areas from generalised pelvic congestion in the first group of operations, and in the second and third groups it is thought that there is increased vascularity of the organs concerned during the menstrual period as a result of some endocrine inter relationship In other cases, fear that there may be increased bleeding, e g from the tooth sockets after dental extraction, is without foundation, since the rate of clotting of the blood is not slowed

Not infrequently a patient volunteers that menstruation has begun and asks if the operation should be postponed on that account Except in the instances mentioned, she can be assured that this will not influence the operation in any way, and with this knowledge the average patient decides to undergo the operation as arranged

If, however, the patient is physically upset by menstruation, or if there is any marked temperamental disturbance, it may be desirable to postpone the operation

PREGNANCY

Experience in anæsthetising patients from antenatal clinics leads us to believe that there is no evidence that administration of an anæsthetic to a pregnant woman renders her more liable to abortion or is harmful to the foetus Since, however, there appears to be a greater tendency to spontaneous abortion at the times when the first three monthly periods would otherwise be due, these times should be avoided for operations which are not urgent

The choice of anæsthetic is determined by the patient's general condition and not by the fact that she is pregnant If N_2O is used, the foetus will not suffer from oxygen lack as much as is generally supposed, because foetal hæmoglobin is saturated at a much lower oxygen tension than is that of the mother

PULMONARY DISEASE

If an extraction is necessary for a patient suffering from acute bronchitis the merits of local anæsthesia must be considered If a general anæsthetic is decided upon, nitrous oxide may be administered without any fear that its use will lead to an extension of the catarrh Sedation with a full dose of morphia (say $\frac{1}{4}$ gr to a 10-stone adult) one hour before the anæsthetic makes it possible to produce adequate anæsthesia with less O_2 deprivation than would otherwise be necessary

Since N₂O has no irritant action on the mucous membranes it can
be used in phthisis or chronic bronchitis   If it is desired to avoid
deprivation of O₂ the action of N₂O may be reinforced by an intra
venous barbiturate morphia or avertin   Alternatively anæsthesia
can be produced by cyclopropane or by an intravenous barbiturate
given alone   A warning is usually given against using ether in these
conditions   This may be correct but it is doubtful if ether properly
given through a perfectly clear airway to a patient premedicated with
atropine is as undesirable as is usually suggested

Any asthmatical subject whether in an attack or not should be
liberally premedicated with morphia   Even in a normal patient the
use of the barbiturates may be followed by a narrowing of the bronchial
and bronchiolar lumina   We have seen a case of acute œdema of the
lungs following a few hours after the administration of a barbiturate
as the sole anæsthetic for an appendicectomy in a youth whom we
had not known to be an asthmatic subject   Postural drainage and
periodical suction through an endotracheal tube were instituted early
and recovery followed

CARDIAC FAILURE

*The patient with an inadequate circulation due to cardiac failure
must not be subjected to anoxia*   The mere presence of abnormal sounds
of valvular origin is of little importance   What matters is the efficiency
of the heart muscle   A heart may hypertrophy and compensate for a
valvular lesion whilst a patient recuperating from a debilitating
illness such as influenza may have a grossly impaired cardiac mus
culature of which no evidence can be found with the stethoscope   The
cardiac musculature of a normal individual is well able to withstand
a surprising degree of anoxia but the intolerance of the failing or the
flabby heart even to a very small reduction of the oxygen intake is
equally striking   If nitrous oxide is used for patients with inadequate
circulation the oxygen content of the mixture must *not* be reduced
below that in atmospheric air   The anæsthetic effect of this weak
N₂O O₂ mixture can be reinforced by premedication with morphia or
with pentothal or by simultaneous administration of ethyl chloride
in small doses   Ether is not contra indicated in fact if a long or
deep anæsthesia is required it is the anæsthetic of choice since it
can be administered with a high percentage of oxygen

Occasionally N₂O may be given to a patient in whom degeneration
of the myocardium has not been suspected or recognised   When the
O₂ content of the inspired mixture is reduced the blueness of the
cheeks takes on a waxy appearance   The colour lacks the lividity

of the cyanotic patient with a strongly beating heart   Unless O_2 is given the colour changes to grey and rapidly becomes ashen   Respiratory effort also fails, so that if O_2 is to be effective it must be given rapidly   Besides these colour changes any change in rhythm and volume of the pulse can be appreciated if the anæsthetist accustoms himself to keeping one finger on the pulse at the facial, temporal or carotid arteries

Hyperpiesia

Most anæsthetics cause some fall of blood pressure   This is particularly noticeable with intravenous barbiturates and avertin   With nitrous oxide, a slight rise occurs in the early stages if an asphyxial element is introduced   Profound asphyxia results in a fall of blood-pressure, which is quickly corrected by the administration of oxygen   The early rise of blood pressure in nitrous-oxide anæsthesia has led to an impression that this gas is contra indicated for patients with high blood pressure   We are satisfied, from practical experience in many thousands of cases managed by ourselves and hospital colleagues, that no harm has followed the use of nitrous-oxide anæsthesia, although many of the patients are known to have had high blood-pressures   Nevertheless, in dealing with a hyperpietic patient, any factor which may raise the blood pressure further should be avoided as far as possible

ANÆMIA

(See also pp 56 and 73)

Patients suffering from anæmia, shock, or long-continued sepsis may be considered together   Although discussed in this chapter, in reality they should be grouped under the heading " the more easy patient "   Compared with the doses one is accustomed to administering to normal patients, appreciably smaller doses of any anæsthetic will produce satisfactory and often deep anæsthesia in these patients who are susceptible to any anæsthetic, and as such are suitable subjects for nitrous oxide   Any difficulties which may arise during nitrous oxide anæsthesia are created by the anæsthetist expecting from them the responses usually shown by normal patients

PATIENTS CONFINED TO BED

When for dental extractions it is necessary to anæsthetise a patient in bed, certain additional difficulties have to be overcome   To be accessible to the dentist the patient should be moved to the edge of

the bed and the bed pulled away from the wall so that the anæsthetist can stand behind and support the head   When the patient is recumbent there may be difficulty in maintaining a clear airway owing to the greater liability of the tongue to fall or be pushed backwards There is an increased danger of the intrusion of a foreign body into the air passages   If anæsthesia is light blood or mucus gravitating backwards will irritate the posterior pharyngeal wall and make the patient restless

EPILEPSY

Epilepsy is not a contra indication to any form of general anæsthesia   We have seen only one attack in any way connected with anæsthesia and that was on recovery from nitrous oxide used for dental extractions   If a patient is known to be an epileptic, it would be advisable to premedicate him with luminal or morphia

INSANITY

Induction of anæsthesia in an insane patient may sometimes be difficult if he is nervous or uncontrolled but once anæsthesia has been attained he is no more difficult than the normal subject   If a good vein is available we recommend that the patient's arm be steadied if necessary by force whilst anæsthesia is induced by pentothal   If a patient is turbulent and it is necessary to use an inhalation anæsthetic for induction ethyl chloride, owing to the rapidity of its action will be found the most humane

Occasionally the administration of an anæsthetic is said to be responsible for the exacerbation of a psychosis or even for its onset   There is no evidence that an anæsthetic *per se* is ever the responsible factor but the mental stress associated with fear of anæsthesia and an operation in an unstable individual may precipitate a breakdown   Permanent cerebral degeneration has followed prolonged anæsthesia with nitrous oxide in which oxygenation has been inadequate [1]   These tragedies do not incriminate the anæsthetic itself but its injudicious use   Similar changes can be produced by simple oxygen deprivation if continued for a sufficient length of time

CLAUSTROPHOBIA

The anæsthetist occasionally has to deal with a claustrophobic patient who is terrified when a mask is placed over his face   This difficulty can be successfully overcome by inducing anæsthesia with

pentothal or avertin so that the face mask or nose-piece is applied only after the patient has become unconscious

PATIENTS WITH CLEFT PALATE

Patients with cleft palate present no special anæsthetic difficulties for general surgery or even for ear nose and throat surgery for which an oral endotracheal tube is inserted. For nitrous oxide given in the dental chair however a difficulty is encountered in that the patient cannot breathe through the nose when the mouth is propped open. Anæsthesia here should be induced with either pentothal or ethyl chloride and then a nose piece applied and nitrous oxide given. Although anæsthesia cannot be maintained indefinitely, it can at least be prolonged if nitrous oxide is supplied under moderate pressure

STATUS LYMPHATICUS

This subject is discussed in Chapter XIII

REFERENCE

(1) Courville C B 1939 *Untoward Effects of Nitrous Oxide Anesthesia* Mountain View California

CHAPTER XII

CHILDREN

ALTHOUGH the drugs used to produce anæsthesia and the methods of their administration are the same for children as for adults, there are different indications for their use   The problems of anæsthesia in dentistry are simplified in that extractions are usually easy, and because children have not yet developed the habits and indulgences of later life which lead to resistance to anæsthesia   Nevertheless, children present difficulties all their own

Intelligent co-operation, which plays a large part in successful anæsthesia, particularly in the dental chair, cannot be expected from the very young, nor from the spoilt child   A harassed mother may communicate her fears to the child and make him a correspondingly more difficult patient   Since children under seven or eight years of age over-react to a diminution of oxygen-intake the administration of nitrous oxide to them is often exceedingly difficult   It is a well known clinical fact that if anæsthesia in the young unpremedicated child is established by nitrous oxide, it is seldom possible to give sufficient oxygen to inhibit the jerky muscular movements, resembling the jactitations of the deeply cyanosed adult, without lightening anæsthesia so that the patient responds to surgical stimuli   These movements may involve the arms, legs, shoulders, and back to such an extent that operating becomes almost impossible   Numerous explanations, none of them entirely satisfactory, have been given to account for the early onset of these asphyxial movements in childhood   Since the spinal reflexes are known to be augmented during asphyxia, the instability of the nervous system in the very young is as good an explanation as any other

If the child is being anæsthetised for the first time, the credit or blame for the mental impression created must belong in great part to the anæsthetist   Basal anæsthesia provides such a pleasant transition to unconsciousness that it is specially indicated for children, although at present not used as much as it should be   For a nervous child who has not been anæsthetised before it is ideal because it leaves only a pleasant memory of the onset of unconsciousness, while the confidence of a child who has had a previous unfortunate experience of anæsthesia often can be regained by employing basal anæsthesia

It is a mistake to restrict the use of basal anaesthesia in children solely to major surgery. Unfortunately there are general practitioners who ridicule the idea of taking the trouble of giving a basal anaesthetic for a trivial operation. They do not appreciate sufficiently that a child, particularly if he has had a previous unpleasant experience, is less concerned with the nature of the operation than with the terrifying prospect of being rendered unconscious. This applies equally to many adults.

For a particularly difficult child the advantages of basal anaesthesia, even for minor dental surgery, should be discussed with the parents. The mother should be made to realise that although an inhalation anaesthetic can safely be forced on an unwilling and resistant child, he may suffer psychological trauma and that the responsibility for this would be hers. Psychological disturbance can be entirely avoided by the use of a basal anaesthetic, and this should be advised if the parents are willing and able to bear the extra expense.

The spoilt child is often one whose teeth have been neglected. The dentist may not have had an opportunity of examining the mouth, or he may have been able to conduct only such a superficial examination that he could not decide which teeth could be saved and which were beyond saving. Any necessary dental treatment, including examination, conservative work, and extractions, can be finished in a single session under basal anaesthesia continued by endotracheal inhalation anaesthesia. Further, the operation can be performed satisfactorily at the child's home.

The successful administration of a basal anaesthetic depends as much on the tact of the nurse as on the type of child. It is common for the mother to give her opinion that the child will object to a rectal injection more than to an inhalation anaesthetic, only to find later that it has been accomplished without protest.

For basal anaesthesia in children avertin and paraldehyde each has its supporters. We prefer the former, possibly merely because we have had more experience with it. The technique of administration and dosage are discussed in the chapter on "Premedication" (p. 102). Nembutal by mouth (p. 104) is an alternative to avertin and paraldehyde by rectum, but the certainty of success is not so great. However, if all concerned co-operate well there is every prospect of a satisfactory result.

Ideally the basal anaesthetic should be given at the child's usual bedtime, so that his day may be interfered with as little as possible. If the house is in a turmoil about the operation and if the child's usual routine is disturbed, for example, if he is put to bed early, his

gastric functions may be upset The last meal of the day should be a light one taken two or three hours before the basal anæsthetic The timing of the operation to correspond with the child's bedtime may give inconvenience to dentist and anæsthetist, but it plays a considerable part in minimising the child's suspicions and so contributes to the success of the operation

If the basal anæsthetic is to be administered rectally, this is done about half an hour before the operation is due, and the room is kept quiet and darkened until the child is unconscious If nembutal by mouth is decided on it is mixed with honey and orange juice and should be given by the mother or nurse half to three quarters of an hour before the child's usual bedtime He is then allowed to play about as usual under supervision When he shows signs of drowsiness he can, without difficulty, be persuaded to lie down, when someone may read to him As soon as he is asleep, he is undressed and put to bed The inhalation anæsthetic should be commenced any time within the next half hour

The dentist and anæsthetist, with their apparatus, remain out of sight in an adjoining room until the child is unconscious After anæsthesia has been deepened by an inhalation anæsthetic, an endotracheal tube is passed and anæsthesia maintained by nitrous oxide, with the addition of ether if necessary After the larynx has been packed off, the dentist can make a thorough examination before proceeding with the necessary work Even if conservative dentistry only is to be performed, the larynx must be packed off to prevent tooth fragments or amalgam from being inhaled A considerable time must be allowed for this type of operation, for if the mouth is in bad condition the dentist may require two to three hours He may drill a tooth for many minutes only to find that it is beyond repair and must be extracted Teeth which have been drilled should be filled, and the whole mouth put in order at the one sitting

When the operation is over, the nurse should remain with the child at least until he has recovered consciousness, and it is best for her to remain throughout the night Provided the child is not in pain the anæsthesia will merge smoothly into natural sleep, and when he wakes on the following morning he will be unaware that anything unusual has happened and may be allowed to pursue his normal day's routine

Unless basal anæsthesia is to be used, the child should always be told beforehand that he is going to have an anæsthetic The ambulatory child patient for dental surgery should be informed of this before he actually arrives in the surgery, but not too long beforehand, or he may worry about it, even though he does not talk about it Such fear

may disturb digestion, and the child may come to the surgery with a full stomach because food taken hours earlier has not been digested It is equally mistaken not to tell a child anything of what is to happen until he arrives in the dental surgery, since he may then fail in the future to have confidence in the dentist and anæsthetist He should lead as normal a life as possible until an hour or so before the anæsthetic, and on his way to the surgery should be told that he is going to have some teeth out, but he will not feel anything of it because he will be enjoying a pleasant sleep

On arrival the patient should always be given a chance to empty his bladder, since involuntary micturition is commoner in children than in adults

It is generally advisable to persuade the mother or guardian to leave the surgery before the anæsthetic is started, since the child instinctively seeks maternal protection, and may cry and sob as long as the mother is present Very often when she leaves the room, the previously unmanageable patient submits to treatment without any more ado After the operation it is often helpful to allow the mother to come back and comfort the child while he is recovering from the anæsthetic

The choice of an anæsthetic for dental surgery for a child is determined by the degree of co-operation which can be obtained, by the difficulties of the extractions, and by the parent's insistence on remaining in the room If the parent remains in the room, not only is the child less likely to settle down, but he may be penalised by the necessity for considering the mother's feelings , for movement or moaning of the child during a light but adequate anæsthesia may make it difficult to convince her that he is not feeling pain so that she may faint or interfere with the dentist during the extractions, or may afterwards tell the child she is sorry he was hurt The deeper and more tranquil anæsthesia obtainable by the addition of ethyl chloride will avoid such complications This can be done conveniently by giving N₂O nasally and at the same time covering the mouth with the upturned bib (fig. 42 p 160) on which the ethyl chloride is sprayed Even a small amount of ethyl chloride prevents or abolishes these movements or noises The child may pay, however, for the parent's peace of mind by not feeling so well afterwards as if N₂O alone had been given The presence of the parent may even lead to a decision to use ethyl chloride or vinesthene as the sole anæsthetic, partly because the anæsthesia is tranquil and partly because cyanosis and jactitation will be avoided The mother will be reassured by the unchanged colour of the child and by the resemblance of respirations to those in sleep

Fortunately, extractions in children are generally simple so that

N₂O is often adequate   If however perfectly tranquil anæsthesia for a few minutes is demanded nitrous oxide should not be chosen for a very young or obstructive patient   It is impossible to persuade such children to breathe through the nose and the use of a mouth piece to give the gas through the mouth is unsatisfactory because its neces arily tight application is frightening and often difficult when the child is throwing his head from side to side   In such cases ethyl chloride or vinesthene should be used   They have the advantages that either can be administered with ease even when the patient is obstreperous that anæsthesia is quickly established and that the operating conditions afforded are entirely satisfactory   We have sometimes used intravenous anæsthesia in children as young as 5 but its use in the young is limited because there is often not a large enough vein into which the solution can be injected and because the child often refuses to keep his arm still

When there is only one tooth to be extracted and the case is simple a few seconds unconsciousness suffices   In such cases it is immaterial whether nitrous oxide ethyl chloride or vinesthene is chosen since with the very small amount necessary the patient wakes immediately without unpleasant after effects

It is important to remember that the prospect of repeated anæs thesia commends itself even less to a child than to an adult and that it is generally advisable to finish all necessary extractions at one sitting if possible   Although a child may be coaxed into facing one or pos sibly two sittings he cannot reasonably be expected to co operate in three or four

A child should not be hurried and if he is co operative everything should be explained to him and nothing forced on him unexpectedly Even a few minutes unhurried chat with an averagely intelligent child will usually secure his co operation and make it possible to administer nitrous oxide nasally

For a very small child the head rest should be taken off and the nape of his neck rested on a cushion on the back of the chair   The child can be raised the required amount by seating him on telephone directories or cushions placed on the chair (fig 40 p 158)

Every anæsthetist has his own tricks for inducing an effective anæs thesia pleasantly   For example if nitrous oxide is to be given to a boy he can be shown the rebreathing bag and told to blow it up like a football in as few breaths as possible but entirely through his nose and that we would like him to beat the previous record of ten breaths A prize may be offered as an incentive[1]   As he expires through his nose he is encouraged by the administrator counting his expirations

aloud If the patient expires through the mouth the anæsthetist at once says We can t count that you know

Children who have been dreading the anæsthesia and yet have been plucky enough to conceal their fears are often difficult particularly under N_2O just as consciousness is being lost Then there may be restlessness until anæsthesia is fully established and an apprehensive child may even vomit food eaten several hours before Warnings that vomiting may occur are slight irregularity of breathing pallor and swallowing or retching If vomiting occurs before extractions are commenced it should be allowed to finish and the anæsthetic and operation can then be continued as described on p 208

If the child is unwilling or unable to co operate and if it is desired to proceed at once with the operation the easiest method of anæsthetising him is to spray ethyl chloride over an open mask or over the up-turned bib adjusted over his nose and mouth (fig 43 p 161)

If it is thought undesirable to place the patient in the dental chair for the induction of anæsthesia the dentist (or nurse) can sit on a settee or the dental chair and take the child on his lap His sole function is to hold the patient s wrists so that the hands cannot pull the mask away from his face The child may kick and damage the shins of the person on whose lap he is sitting but this can be easily avoided if the holder en circles the patient s legs with his own The patient held in this way can move only his head which can be followed easily by the anæsthetist and the patient soon rendered unconscious When this stage is reached he is carried and placed in the usual position in the dental chair

FIG 27

9

CHAPTER XIII

STATUS LYMPHATICUS

Status lymphaticus was first described in modern medicine in 1889 by Paltauf [1] as a syndrome characterised by an enlarged thymus gland, generalised lymphoid hyperplasia, vascular hypoplasia, and a susceptibility to sudden death from trivial causes   In fatalities which have been attributed to this syndrome almost invariably the patient has been a child " which at first sight one might be tempted to call a fine child but qualifies the passage, adding ' rather pasty perhaps ' " [2]   During an operation, however slight this may be, e g for removal of tonsils and adenoids, or even late in induction, he is noticed to be pale , he soon stops breathing and, unless resuscitative measures are instituted immediately, he dies   At the subsequent investigation the anæsthetist states that he has given the anæsthetic in his usual manner   The autopsy reveals no abnormality beyond hyperplasia of the thymus gland and lymphoid tissue generally   These findings are considered by some pathologists and coroners to provide a sufficient explanation for death under anæsthesia, and as exonerating the anæsthetist from any responsibility for the death

In 1926 a committee was set up by the Medical Research Council and the Pathological Society of Great Britain and Ireland to enquire whether any such condition as status lymphaticus really exists   Examination of the available statistics, taking into account the normal limits of the weight of the thymus at different ages, showed that in the twenty three cases analysed of death during anæsthesia or as the result of shock, the thymus could be considered abnormally large in only four, and even in these four there was no satisfactory proof that the large thymus played a part in accounting for the deaths   No correlation was found between the weight of the thymus and the amount of lymphatic tissue elsewhere in the body   The Committee concluded [3] that there was no evidence that status lymphaticus exists as a pathological entity

The views expressed in the previous two paragraphs are irreconcilable   We should not be justified in expressing an opinion on pathological findings, but we think it proper to make certain observations on the clinical reactions of children to anæsthesia based on our

experence of many thousand anæsthetics given to children for dental, and for tonsil and adenoid operations

It is unprofitable to attempt to prove a negative, but if by the term "status lymphaticus" is implied a condition in which the administration of an anæsthetic *inevitably* causes death—an impression so frequently conveyed by the coroner's verdict—then in our opinion no such state exists Nevertheless, some children die as a result of slight traumatic or psychological insults which would have little or no effect on others This category would include the rare instances in which death is alleged to be due to operative shock under light anæsthesia We ourselves have no first-hand knowledge of such cases, but as anæsthetists we recognise a *status periculosus* in which the child shows a susceptibility to the depressant effects of anæsthetics which amounts to an idiosyncrasy With this child a little anæsthetic goes a long way , what would be a safe amount for a normal child, for him may prove rapidly fatal We have seen about twelve cases of collapse early in anæsthesia in such children, where the prompt institution of treatment brought about recovery and permitted the completion of the operation We feel, however, that if death had occurred in any of these cases "status lymphaticus' might well have been diagnosed, and that the anæsthetist would have been exonerated from any blame Although these twelve cases had certain characteristics in common, we are not able to describe them as a clinical type in which abnormal reaction to anæsthesia can reasonably be anticipated, because a very large number of children with apparently similar characteristics do not show this idiosyncrasy Our outstanding impression of the twelve children is that they exhibited an immoderate docility These children who "show no fight" must be anæsthetised with extreme care The reactions which commonly occur during the induction period are not seen Instead of flushing, pallor is remarked , respiration is shallow and regular from the beginning , resistance is strikingly absent , and there is an almost imperceptible merging into unconsciousness, which supervenes after an unusually small amount of anæsthetic has been given This sudden and unpredictable response to a small dose of anæsthetic may easily be overlooked, and a small additional amount of anæsthetic results in extreme loss of muscular tone accompanied by wide dilatation of the pupils We believe such a patient can be anæsthetised with safety provided the amount of anæsthetic administered is carefully limited to the quantity required for the satisfactory performance of the operation, and we consider that when death occurs it is due to the effect of an overdose of anæsthetic upon a susceptible patient

Since this undue sensitivity to anæsthetic agents produces a liability to overdosage, it is imperative that the anæsthetist understand what measures are to be taken should respiration fail   These are the same as in any other case of respiratory arrest under anæsthesia, namely, provision of an absolutely clear airway, the institution of artificial respiration, and administration of oxygen   This treatment, applied promptly, will save life in those cases in which a large overdose of anæsthetic has not been given

It is our opinion that in deaths under anæsthesia the anæsthetist is more responsible than either the drug used or the pathological condition of the patient (always excepting the unusual emergency where the patient is pulseless and practically moribund before anæsthesia is begun)   The following facts support the validity of this point of view even when applied to cases where an idiosyncrasy to anæsthetics admittedly exists   (i) Verdicts of   status lymphaticus '' have been brought in as an apparently satisfactory explanation of death under anæsthesia in children who have previously withstood successfully the effects of an operation under general anæsthesia   (ii) Often when a child has collapsed under anæsthesia the operation has been abandoned solely through fear that he was *in statu lymphatico* and therefore that death probably would occur if the anæsthetic were continued   In some of these cases, operation became imperative and a second anæsthetic given a few days later has been entirely successful   (iii) We have not heard of an anæsthetist in whose practice has occurred more than one death attributed to this cause   Such unfortunate coincidences, no doubt, have been recorded   but the general failure of individual practitioners to encounter repetitions of this catastrophe appears to indicate that the experience gained in dealing with one case confers upon the anæsthetist the ability to avoid recurrences   But the admission that death from status lymphaticus is avoidable destroys the very argument upon which belief in the existence of such a condition rests   (iv) Routine autopsy upon the victims of accidents where the extent of the injuries (e g ruptured liver) would have made death inevitable in the most robust individual has occasionally disclosed a degree of lymphoid hyperplasia greater than that upon which a verdict of " status lymphaticus " has been founded in cases of death under anæsthesia   Nevertheless, on enquiry many of these individuals in whom lymphoid hyperplasia is revealed by chance are found at some time or other to have negotiated successfully the hazards of anæsthesia and operation without exhibiting an undue tendency to succumb to either

In a large percentage of all cases of death under anæsthetics,

autopsy fails to reveal any cause for death   In death from overdose of an anæsthetic, for example, there is no diagnostic autopsy finding The coroner finds his task simplified if the pathologist can state that the autopsy revealed a definite condition which could account for the death, and hyperplasia of the lymphatic system is at present accepted by many as one such condition   Partly because of his desire to report some positive finding, partly because of his sympathy for the anæsthetist, and partly because of public policy, a pathologist may diagnose "status lymphaticus" when no convincing explanation for death is found This diagnosis which in some quarters has now come to carry with it the suggestion that death was inevitable and that no one was to blame, may serve a useful purpose for the reasons indicated, but it must not be overlooked that in these cases a detailed anæsthetic history of the sequence of events prior to death is far more illuminating than the most searching autopsy

According to Greenwood,[2] the deaths now ascribed to status lymphaticus "would in more pious but not more superstitious days have been attributed to the visitation of God," a verdict which he suggests would be "at least as scientific and as modest than 'status lymphaticus'"   To this opinion we add our suggestion that deaths under anæsthesia attributed to status lymphaticus may well be due to nothing more nor less than overdosage in a susceptible patient

REFERENCES

(1) Paltauf, A   1889   *Wien klin Wschr* **2**, 877   1890   *Ibid* **3**, 172.
(2) Greenwood M and Woods H M 1927   *J Hyg , Camb* **26**, 305.
(3) Young M and Turnbull H M 1931   *J Path Bact* **34**, 213

Read also
Cohen, H   1936   *Practitioner* **136**, 252
Cohen H   1939   *British Encyclopædia of Medical Practice*   London **12**, 23

CHAPTER XIV

PREPARATION FOR OPERATION

BEFORE a minor operation it is desirable, and before a major operation essential, for a patient to receive treatment which will reduce his apprehension and appreciation of the preliminaries of anæsthesia, and make him a suitable subject both for anæsthesia and for operation The degree of preparation depends on the nature and extent of the operation to which the patient is to be subjected, and on the anæsthetic chosen   Premedication, an important feature of the preparation of a patient, is dealt with elsewhere   Although for the ambulatory patient little or no preparation may be actually necessary   it will make anæsthesia more tranquil, and at the same time make recovery less un pleasant   For the hospitalised patient pre operative preparation is a matter of routine

THE AMBULATORY PATIENT

For nitrous oxide anæsthesia and a tooth extraction of average difficulty, the average patient requires no physical preparation at all The more abnormally resistant the patient and the longer the period for which anæsthesia is expected to be necessary, the more important does it become to prepare him for the occasion   The sedative drugs 'suitable for the ambulatory patient are discussed on p 93   Purgation is neither necessary nor advisable   Unfortunately the old fashioned prejudice in favour of starvation before anæsthesia still persists, and the patient may, in consequence, come to the dental chair weak from lack of food   In the ambulatory patient starvation is, in fact, a much more frequent cause of post-operative complications such as nausea, retching, faintness, or collapse than is the presence of food in the stomach at the time of operation   The patient therefore should take an average meal three or four hours before operation and if apprehension has been prevented by appropriate premedication, digestive activity will continue undisturbed, and the stomach will be empty by the time the operation is due   If this period of abstinence from food must be exceeded, some sugar-containing food should be given two hours before operation , for example, a cup of tea containing three or four lumps of sugar   Alternatively, an ounce of barley sugar or half a glass of orange juice may be taken.

Many dentists and anæsthetists consider that the taking of certain articles of diet predisposes to post operative vomiting Even milk, beef tea, or some equally innocuous food may be prohibited because post operative vomiting has occurred on some previous occasion, although adequate enquiry in all probability would have revealed that the patient had been abnormally apprehensive Instead of banning any such item, it is more rational to arrange for pre operative treatment calculated to allay the nervousness which is responsible for a derangement of normal digestive function and a tendency to post-operative vomiting

Such preparation is especially necessary for a patient with a history of having vomited previously after nitrous-oxide anæsthesia If on a second occasion special care is taken to allay apprehension, it is rare for vomiting to occur

One of us was called in to anæsthetise a nervous woman who gave a history of vomiting after gas The patient was first seen in the dental surgery, and there was therefore no opportunity to premedicate her Anæsthesia with nasal nitrous oxide was short and two teeth were extracted After recovering consciousness the patient vomited a small meal taken six hours previously To prepare her for a further tooth extraction the following week she was given a prescription for a mixture containing chloral hydrate 5 gr and potassium bromide 10 gr to the ounce of peppermint water She was instructed that on the two days preceding the next anæsthetic she should take one ounce of the mixture three times a day after meals With this premedication the next session passed off uneventfully

THE HOSPITALISED PATIENT

It is often difficult, particularly for a dental operation to persuade the patient to enter the hospital or nursing home even for one night beforehand, and frequently he is admitted after lunch time for operation in the late afternoon Experience shows that the longer the patient spends in the institution prior to operation, the smoother is the period of anæsthesia and the more rapid the convalescence Apart from the considerable advantage conferred by the rest, the patient benefits from being given correct diet and appropriate sedative drugs

Before minor surgery or major dental surgery, if the patient is not constipated neither a purgative nor an enema is necessary, but if constipated he should be given an enema in the early morning on the day of operation No special diet is necessary beyond the regime

to which a poor sailor would subject himself before facing a rough sea-crossing   The patient may have a light supper the night before operation and if this is timed to take place in the morning about three hours previously he can take for breakfast a cup of tea well sugared and a piece of bread and butter   If the operation is timed for the early afternoon he can have an ordinary light breakfast and a cup of tea or soup in the middle of the morning   A sedative (e g luminal ½ gr) should be given on the evening before operation   Pre operative medication on the day of operation is discussed on p 95 et seq

For a **major abdominal operation** the patient should be in the nursing home for the two previous nights   Extensive pre-operative purgation and starvation are now things of the past   The modern custom is to give a mild aperient preferably one to which the patient is accustomed on the evening of the day but one before operation and a soap-and water enema early on the morning of the day of operation

A sedative should be given on each of the two evenings before the operation on the first evening aspirin 10 gr or luminal ½ gr and on the next a more powerful one (medinal 10 gr or nembutal 3 gr)

On the day before operation the patient should have chicken or fish for the main meal in the middle of the day and a light evening meal   If the operation is to be in the morning a cup of tea can be given at 7 a m and if in the afternoon the patient may have another drink in the middle of the morning

CHAPTER XV

BARBITURATES

BARBITURIC acid compounds, first synthesised in 1902, have continued to increase in popularity as hypnotics   Barbitone, better known as Veronal, was the first with which success was achieved   Its chemical formula is

$$\left.\begin{array}{c} C_2H_5 \\ C_2H_5 \end{array}\right\rangle B$$

the essential malonyl urea radicle of barbituric acid being represented as " B "   By the substitution of other groups for one or both of the C_2H_5 (ethyl) groups of veronal, new barbiturate hypnotics have been produced   For example phenyl ethyl barbiturate, the well-known drug the proprietary name of which is Luminal, has the formula

$$\left.\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5 \\ C_2H_5 \end{array}\right\rangle B$$

The barbiturates are sedatives, but since the potency, sites of action, and rates of absorption and excretion of different members of this group of compounds vary considerably, there are correspondingly marked differences in their pharmacological actions   For example, veronal, because it is only slightly soluble in water, is therefore slowly absorbed and has a correspondingly delayed action   On the other hand, medinal, a salt of veronal and much more soluble in water than the latter, is more rapidly absorbed, and because of its quicker action has become more popular than veronal   Both these drugs are typical of the "long-acting barbiturates" so-called because of their slow excretion   The number of barbiturate compounds now in use is great, and discussion of them is complicated by the confusion which has arisen because different proprietary names have been given to drugs the actions of which are clinically indistinguishable. In fact, in some cases the same barbiturate manufactured by different commercial houses is known by different names , for instance, phenyl ethyl barbiturate can be purchased either as Luminal or as Gardenal

Greater structural alteration than had previously been made in

the substitution groups resulted in the production in 1928 of Sodium
Amytal, and in 1930 of Nembutal in America and of Pernocton in
Germany These are very soluble in water, and their administration
intravenously leads within a few minutes to unconsciousness Each
of these short-acting barbiturates soon became popular as a basal
anæsthetic, but low therapeutic quotients (p 17) render them un-
suitable as sole anæsthetics for the production of general anæsthesia
Further, they are slowly excreted, so that even after their use as basal
anæsthetics, return to consciousness is delayed for two to three hours
longer than if they had not been given Even for production of basal
anæsthesia these drugs have now been largely superseded by the
ultra-short-acting barbiturates

Evipan,* the first of the ultra-short acting barbiturates, introduced
in Germany in 1932, was followed by Pentothal, a thio barbiturate
(sulphur-containing barbiturate) from America in 1935 These
drugs are extremely soluble both in water and in lipoids, and the
therapeutic quotient of each is high They can be given by mouth,
but because there are marked variations in the rate of absorption
from the alimentary tract in different individuals and in different
circumstances, the intravenous route is safer, more accurate, and more
reliable Drowsiness, sleep, or anæsthesia of varying degree results
according to the dose injected

Pentothal is a more satisfactory drug than evipan, in that its use
is not accompanied by the slight muscular twitchings occasionally seen
during evipan anæsthesia Moreover, pentothal produces greater
muscular relaxation and more peaceful anæsthesia However, it
causes a greater depression of the respiratory centre than does evipan,
and if a solution of pentothal is in error deposited extravenously, the
local tissue reaction is more severe than after the same accident with
evipan Except for these differences, the actions of these drugs are
so similar (although pentothal is rather more potent than evipan) that
we shall refer only to pentothal, but observations on it can be taken
as applying equally to both

PENTOTHAL

Pentothal is supplied as a sterile powder in ampoules containing
0 5 or 1 gm Ampoules containing 10 c c or 20 c c of sterile distilled
water are supplied separately When water is added to it, the powder
dissolves immediately The solution is unstable and should therefore

* This drug is now made in this country and is available as various brands
of hexobarbitone.

be used within two hours of preparation   The strength of solution most commonly recommended is 5 per cent , but we have used solutions of strengths between 2½ and 20 per cent , and have observed no differences in the character of the resulting anæsthesia nor in the incidence of post operative complications   When the dose of pentothal is to be given quickly it is immaterial what strength of solution is used, but if anæsthesia is to be continued for some time by intravenous injection, the use of dilute solutions makes it easier to control the dosage and so to maintain a uniform level of anæsthesia

The extreme ease with which the ultra-short acting barbiturates can be administered constitutes one of the dangers attendant upon their use, and should never tempt the operator to act as his own anæsthetist , the safeguarding of an unconscious patient is a whole-time responsibility   When these barbiturates were first introduced the opinion was generally held that the simplicity of the technique of their administration would reduce the scope of the specialist anæsthetist   Experience has shown however that the use of these drugs should be confined to those who have a sound knowledge of anæsthetic drugs and anæsthetic routine generally

Pentothal may be given to a patient of any age but this is rarely practicable in children under six both because their co operation is difficult to obtain and also because their veins are seldom large enough to enable an intravenous injection to be given with certainty Although the production of the state of anæsthesia with pentothal is invariably easy if it is possible to locate a vein into which an injection can be given, the patient should not be *promised* this drug before it has been ascertained that his veins are suitable

Pentothal given intravenously may be used

1. As a basal anæsthetic before a major operation —The dose to be given depends on whether anæsthesia is to be continued at once with an inhalation agent such as ether, or whether the period of basal anæs-thesia has to be prolonged to allow the transport of the unconscious patient from his bed to the operating theatre   In the first case 0 3–0 4 gm will usually be found sufficient and in the second case the dose must be increased but should rarely exceed 0 7 gm

2. As the sole anæsthetic for a prolonged operation —This method of anæsthesia has been prevented from becoming popular by the difficulty of simultaneously superintending a continuous in-travenous injection and maintaining a clear airway and because the rate of recovery of consciousness after large doses of pentothal is slow

The total dosage of pentothal given for an operation for appendicectomy which lasted thirty five minutes was 2 4 gm   Two anæsthetists were present, one to give the intravenous injection over a period of half an hour, the other to superintend the airway. In order to obtain muscular relaxation, the dosage given was sufficient to produce noticeable respiratory depression at certain stages of the operation   The slow rate of recovery made it necessary for a nurse to be in constant attendance on the patient for five hours after completion of the operation

3. As the sole anæsthetic for a short operation

—The anæsthetic technique here is usually easy   generally the dose estimated to be necessary is given by the anæsthetist in a single injection, and immediately thereafter he devotes his attention to the maintenance of the airway

Anæsthesia produced in this way is a contrast to that produced by inhalation agents in that the depth of anæsthesia does not remain at a steady level   It is at its maximum almost immediately after the injection and then becomes progressively lighter as the drug is eliminated

Another disadvantage of this method is the necessity for calculating beforehand how much anæsthetic will be required for a given operation   For this, the probable duration of the operation must be estimated, and the reaction of the patient to the drug must be anticipated   If an incorrect estimate is made it may lead to the administration of too small a dose, in which case the patient will begin to recover consciousness before the operation is completed, or of an unnecessarily large dose, providing adequate anæsthesia for the operation but inconveniently delaying recovery   For instance, difficulties which will be encountered in a particular extraction may be greatly over estimated

A colleague asked to be anæsthetised with evipan alone for extraction of a tooth and was given 8 c c of a 10 per cent solution (0 8 gm), it being estimated that the extraction would taken seven or eight minutes   The tooth, however, was out in a minute, but it was two hours before the patient had recovered sufficiently to leave the surgery   If an accurate estimate had been made of the length of anæsthesia needed, only half the dose administered would have been given, and the patient would have recovered completely in 20–30 minutes

4. As a very transient basal anæsthetic preparatory to a potent anæsthetic such as ether for a prolonged operation, or

to N₂O for a short operation such as a dental extraction —In describing the technique for the administration of pentothal we shall deal with this latter use of it, which has a special application to the ambulatory patient in the dental surgery   There is here the additional problem of enabling the patient to return home within a short time after the operation is completed

When a quick recovery is desired, it is our practice to inject rapidly the whole of the dose which we estimate will be needed just to produce unconsciousness and immediately the latter is attained to apply the nose piece and to continue anæsthesia with nitrous oxide   The dose varies from 0 1 gm in the frail to 0 5 gm in the robust alcoholic patient It is important to recognise that the anæsthetic effect produced by this dosage may be slight and in any case it will be only transient The amount given should be such that once it is injected anæsthesia can be maintained only by continuing at once with N₂O given in the usual way, as though it had not been preceded by pentothal

The opinion that pentothal has no place in the dental surgery because of the slow recovery, and because of the lowering of blood pressure which large doses may induce (particularly in patients in the upright position), is not now tenable   Each of these disadvantages is avoided by the use of pentothal in small dosage given rapidly prior to N₂O anæsthesia   A pleasant induction to anæsthesia is assured, recovery is rapid, and when the patient awakes he is unaware of any feature of anæsthesia beyond the beginning of the injection

The use of a preliminary dose of pentothal is particularly valuable for the anæsthetic resistant patient   In this case, sufficient should be given actually to assist the nitrous oxide anæsthesia   On an average 0 3 to 0 5 gm of either pentothal or evipan is required and should be given moderately rapidly   The nose piece is then put on and nitrous oxide administered   After a dose of 0 3 gm given quickly to a powerful man, nitrous-oxide anæsthesia can be continued in the usual way, and the effect of this small amount of barbiturate can be disregarded but when a larger dose is given, oxygen deprivation should not be allowed   On recovery, the patient should rest until the effect of the anæsthetic has worn off, usually about twenty minutes to half an hour

Although recovery from pentothal is almost invariably peaceful, the anæsthetic resistant subject may during recovery go through a brief period of drunken aggressiveness during which he has to be forcibly restrained

The occurrence of vomiting after average doses of pentothal is rare   We have, however, encountered a few patients in whom the

injection of a barbiturate intravenously has been followed by giddiness and bouts of vomiting lasting for as long as twenty four hours

Indications for the Use of Pentothal in the Dental Surgery

In the great majority of patients for dental extractions anæsthetic difficulties are not encountered but it is not sufficiently appreciated outside the dental profession that there is a small percentage of cases where the problem of anæsthesia is by no means simple   Difficulties which can be overcome by the use of pentothal as a transient basal anæsthetic arise in two totally different groups of patients   The first is the anæsthetic resistant group (p 113) in members of which even the experienced anæsthetist does not find it easy to provide five minutes tranquil anæsthesia with N_2O alone   With this gas conditions adequate for operation can often be achieved only by pushing the anæsthetic until a degree of anoxæmia is produced which would be dangerous if it were maintained for any length of time or if it were increased   A small dose of pentothal given intravenously before N_2O anæsthesia is begun produces unconsciousness so rapidly that the stage of potential delirium is passed through quickly enough to eliminate struggling during induction   In addition the pentothal enables tranquil anæs thesia thereafter to be maintained with nitrous oxide

Patients of the second group have a horror of *inhalation* anæsthesia Anæsthesia here presents no technical difficulties and can in fact be achieved and maintained with N_2O with ease but the patients suffer mental distress both before and after administration   This group includes also patients who have to face a series of anæsthetics and who instead of deriving reassurance from experience dread each approaching inhalation anæsthesia more than the last even when the administration has been in skilful hands   This reaction described by older writers as cumulative resistance to anæsthetics is psychological and can be almost entirely abolished by the use of intravenous barbiturates

It was necessary for a woman to have all her remaining teeth extracted and the work was planned to occupy five sittings over a period of a month   She was very apprehensive before the first occasion but since pentothal was given prior to nitrous-oxide anæsthesia the experience completely reassured her and she approached with equanimity the subsequent sessions at which the same technique was repeated

The following case in which pentothal was indicated but was refused by the patient provides a contrast to the case described

above A colleague in poor health had to undergo the extraction of a number of teeth at four sessions at weekly intervals He refused premedication and insisted that anæsthesia should be with nitrous oxide alone Although anæsthesia was uneventful on the first occasion he disliked the prospect of its repetition On the second occasion in order to abolish his heightened reflexes a greater degree of anoxæmia had to be induced than was previously necessary and there was some post anæsthetic collapse The patient's dread the necessity for reducing the oxygen intake during anæsthesia and post operative prostration were still more marked on the third and fourth occasions

It should be emphasised that in dental anæsthesia for the ambulatory patient pentothal is indicated where *anæsthetic* difficulties are anticipated and not for cases in which the difficulty is that of extraction

Contra indications to the Use of Pentothal

The short acting and ultra short-acting barbiturates are excreted or detoxified mainly by the liver and large doses should therefore be avoided in cases of liver deficiency Although it is highly improbable that the first two conditions described below as contra indications will be encountered in dental practice it is essential to include them at the head of the list since the use of barbiturate anæsthesia in these cases may turn the scale against the patient

1 Acute intestinal obstruction—The liver function is disorganised by the action of toxins absorbed from the obstructed bowel

2 Jaundice—This condition is usually associated with gross disturbance of the liver function and should be regarded as a definite contra indication to the use of pentothal We have however used the drug in very small doses without untoward effects but its excretion is extremely slow A dose of 0 15–0 20 gm in an adult may produce unconsciousness lasting for several minutes

3 As the sole anæsthetic for operations on the throat, and for operations in which the protective laryngeal reflexes may be elicited as for example if a laryngoscope is to be used In our experience the motor response to such stimuli is hyper active during light barbiturate anæsthesia and may lead to persistent and alarming laryngeal spasm

4 Asthma—There is experimental evidence that a general constriction of the bronchial musculature may result from the use of any barbiturate[1 3] For this reason many regard these drugs as contra indicated in asthma (p 120)

5 **Anæmia, and marked debility**—These are only relative
contra indications   Anæsthesia in such patients is produced with only
a small amount of any anæsthetic   Doses of the barbiturates which
would be correct for the average adult may be dangerously excessive
for them   and in any case will lead to post operative depression and
delayed recovery   The dose given should therefore be reduced to
correspond to the patient s lowered resistance to anæsthetics

If these contra indications are observed there is no need before
inducing anæsthesia with pentothal to conduct any special physical
examination of the patient or to perform any particular tests beyond
those to which he might be subjected before any other general
anæsthetic

Technique of Administration of Pentothal

If the operation is for dental extractions a prop should always be
placed in the mouth immediately before anæsthesia is begun

FIG 28
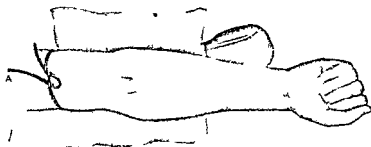
FIG 29

An assistant supports the patient s extended right elbow with his
own right hand, and with his left hand compresses the patient s right
arm above the elbow tightly enough to prevent the return of venous
blood (fig 28) but not so tightly that the flow of arterial blood into

the arm is impeded   The patient should clench his fist to assist in making the veins as prominent as possible

Alternatively, the extended arm is supported by a pillow which rests on the arm of the dental chair   To distend the veins a piece of soft rubber tubing is tied round the upper arm (fig 29) in such a fashion that it can be released simply by a pull on one end of it (A)   The skin is cleansed with spirit

FIGS 30 AND 31

Air must be expelled from the syringe before the needle is inserted into the vein

FIG 32

The syringe has an eccentric nozzle to allow the barrel to rest closely on the fore arm so that if the patient moves his arm the relation of the needle to the vein will not be disturbed   The needle is almost parallel to the vein, and before
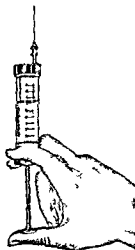
FIG 30
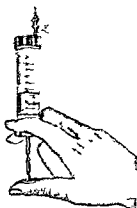
FIG 31

the skin puncture is made the vein is steadied in position by stretching the skin which lies over it   The needle is inserted through the skin a little to one side of the vein, and it is then advanced
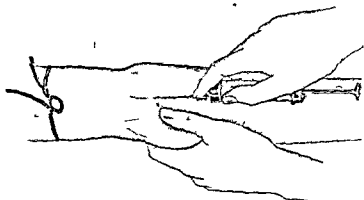
FIG. 32

alongside the vein for about $\frac{1}{8}$ inch before being introduced into it
When the vein is entered in this way the skin puncture does not
lie directly over the vein puncture and the occurrence of bleeding
after the needle is withdrawn is thus prevented

Fig 33

After a little practice it is easy to recognise by sense of touch when
the vein has been penetrated but in any case this should always be
confirmed by withdrawing the plunger gently when if the needle is
in the vein blood will be aspirated into the syringe

Fig 34

The syringe should not be filled completely with pentothal solution
because then it will be impossible to withdraw the plunger to verify
that the vein has been entered   The position of the plunger here
should be contrasted with that shown in fig 33

Fig 35

If the bevel of the needle does not lie completely within the lumen
of the vein blood can be aspirated into the syringe but when the

solution is injected some will be deposited extravenously If this accident occurs it is generally revealed by the production of a superficial swelling At the same time the patient may complain of pain or of a burning sensation at the site of injection and if there is the slightest doubt whether the bevel of the needle is wholly within the vein the injection must not be continued until the needle has been manipulated to correct any error If this is not possible the needle must be withdrawn and reinserted into another vein after making sure that the needle is not blocked by blood clot
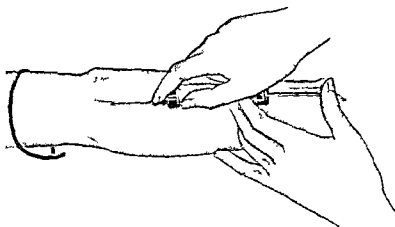
Fig 36

When the vein is entered the venous circulation is restored by a pull on the tourniquet or by removal of the assistant s left hand and the pentothal is then injected by pressure on the plunger by the anæsthetist s left hand The grip of the syringe by the right hand remains unaltered throughout (see figs 32 and 36)

Rate of injection of pentothal —Since the strengths of solutions *used are not constant we refer to doses in terms of weight and not of* volume

The advice usually given is that for a normal adult about 0 3 gm (i e 3 c c of a 10 per cent solution) should be injected over 10–15 seconds and then a pause made of 30 seconds the average time for the circulation of the blood so that the effect of this amount can be noted before a decision is taken as to what additional amount if any should be given

The rate of injection has a very important influence on the effect which a given quantity of pentothal will produce (p 26) Slow

injection results in a widespread distribution of the drug throughout the body whereas rapid injection produces an immediate knock out effect on the brain after which the more widespread distribution takes place   Thus although 0 6 gm injected uniformly over a period of say two minutes may not produce unconsciousness but only drowsiness or drunkenness lasting for some considerable time 0 3 gm to the same patient injected as rapidly as possible will produce transient deep anæsthesia followed within a few minutes by almost complete recovery

The rate of excretion of pentothal also influences the rate of attainment and the duration of anæsthesia   Excretion appears to be more rapid in the robust individual

The effect of a given quantity of pentothal therefore depends on the rate of injection the amount injected the rate of excretion of the drug and on the resistance of the patient to the effects of narcotics generally

Cases are reported where it is alleged that after pentothal given intravenously the development of anæsthesia was delayed   According to such reports although the injection had no immediate effect it was followed some hours later by drowsiness   There can be no doubt that a large part if not the whole of the injected solution had been deposited extravenously   This explanation has often been confirmed by the development within twenty four hours of pain and sometimes of inflammation at the site of injection   If the drug is given wholly into a vein and the patient does not become unconscious within a minute this is proof that it has been given either too slowly or in insufficient dosage

Signs of Anæsthesia with Pentothal

When the injection is made rapidly the first and second stages of anæsthesia are passed through almost instantaneously   The patient from talking quite rationally stops suddenly perhaps in the middle of a sentence and the next second a gentle snore or the automaticity of respiration shows that he is anæsthetised   If the injection is made slowly there may be yawning sneezing or coughing just as conscious ness is lost but frequently the onset of unconsciousness is characterised simply by the appearance of generalised muscular relaxation quiet shallow respiration and abolition of response to stimuli

It may be extremely difficult to differentiate between deep anæsthesia and light undisturbed anæsthesia   In both cases the respiration is shallow   there is general muscular relaxation and the eyeball is central   The depth of anæsthesia may not be revealed until a stimulus

is applied : in deep anæsthesia respiration remains shallow, whilst if anæsthesia is light the rate and excursion of respiration increase at once.

Overdosage with Pentothal

The immediate treatment of a gross overdose of any barbituric acid drug is the same as the treatment of overdose from any other anæsthetic. Artificial respiration (p. 293) must be continued until sufficient of the drug is excreted for the respiratory centre to recover its normal automatic activity.

The only analeptic drug of proven worth in the treatment of poisoning from barbituric acid derivatives is picrotoxin. This potent drug should be given intravenously at the rate of 1 mg. per minute until the patient rouses or until the appearance of muscular twitchings, usually seen first in the face.

Where it is desired merely to accelerate the rate of recovery from pentothal anæsthesia Coramine in doses of 5 c.c. intravenously or intramuscularly will be found effective.

REFERENCES

(1) Burstein, C. L.   1937.   *Proc. Soc exp. Biol.*   **37**, 267.
(2) Burstein, C. L., and Rovenstine, E. A   1939.   Personal communication.

CHAPTER XVI

ETHYL CHLORIDE

THE boiling point of ethyl chloride (C_2H_5Cl) is 12 40 C   At ordinary room temperature and pressure it is therefore a gas but the increase of pressure required to liquefy it is so small that it can be kept with safety as a liquid in glass containers   It is supplied in bottles of a convenient size and shape from which it can escape through a nozzle when the small control lever is depressed   If the nozzle is directed

downwards opening it by means of the lever will cause the expulsion of a jet of liquid ethyl chloride which rapidly volatilises   In this way the anæsthetic agent can be directed on to a mask at a reasonable concentration with very little loss   An attempt to obtain a spray when the nozzle is directed upwards releases only the ethyl chloride which has already vaporised above the fluid in the bottle so that the rate of ejection of the anæsthetic is negligible and since the vapour density of ethyl chloride gas is 2 2 any which does escape falls downwards i e away from the direction in which the nozzle is aimed   Ethyl chloride burns with a bright blue flame but it can be used safely in a room with an open flame

FIG 37 —Bottle containing 60 c c of ethyl chloride Note the pointed nozzle and convenient control

The liquid can be purchased mixed with 0 5 per cent eau de Cologne   Although ethyl chloride vapour has not an objectionable smell the addition of the eau de Cologne makes induction less unpleasant

Ethyl chloride is a potent anæsthetic agent   Its advantages are

1 It is not unpleasant to inhale

2 It is easy to administer

3 It is economical

4 It is easily portable

5 Induction of anaesthesia is rapid

6 The signs of anaesthesia are simple and well defined

7 Recovery after short anaesthesia is rapid

The disadvantages of ethyl chloride are

1 Nausea vomiting headache and prostration frequently occur after deep or prolonged narcosis Were it not for this disadvantage ethyl chloride would be used more extensively than it is at present

2 The stages of anaesthesia are passed through so rapidly that it is easy to administer an overdose For the same reason it is an unsuitable drug for the maintenance of anaesthesia

3 *Involuntary micturition and even defaecation are more liable to* occur than under anaesthesia with other agents

Indications for the Use of Ethyl Chloride

Although potentially highly dangerous ethyl chloride used intelligently is a safe anaesthetic That its administration needs the strictest supervision does not detract from its value A patient fit enough to be anaesthetised by any other anaesthetic can be given ethyl chloride The special indications for its use are

1 As a sole anaesthetic for operations of short duration particularly dental extractions in children The margin of safety here is high and is not exceeded by any other anaesthetic except possibly vinesthene

2 As a supplementary anaesthetic to nitrous oxide anaesthesia for young children or resistant adults including alcoholics

3 To provide a quick induction when prolonged anaesthesia is to be maintained by ether Its use for this purpose has been largely superseded in recent years by that of basal anaesthetics such as avertin or intravenous anaesthetics such as pentothal

Signs of Anaesthesia with Ethyl Chloride

The stages of ethyl chloride anaesthesia can be conveniently divided into three induction surgical anaesthesia and overdose Fortunately these stages are readily distinguishable and since ethyl chloride is employed only for short operations no subdivisions are necessary The character of the respiration is the guide *par excellence* to the stage of anaesthesia

Induction is often peaceful but breath-holding or other irregularity of respiration, screaming, or tightening of the body musculature are not uncommon   Breath-holding may occur early in induction either because the child is unco operative or because the strength of the vapour on the mask is increased too quickly   Just before the establishment of surgical anæsthesia, there is usually a tautening of the muscles of the body   This is responsible for a hesitancy in respiration which may simulate breath-holding

The stage of surgical anæsthesia is marked by regularity of respiration, relaxation of the muscles of the limbs, and flushing of the face   If induction has not been peaceful the transition from irregular breathing to the automatic respirations of surgical anæsthesia is often dramatic and is more noticeable with ethyl chloride than with any other anæsthetic   With pentothal and generally with nitrous oxide the onset of the automatic respirations of surgical anæsthesia is seldom striking, because the patient breathes quietly and regularly from the beginning   Respiration at this stage of anæsthesia with ethyl chloride is regular, slightly more rapid than normal, and moderately deep and audible   The breathing resembles that of a child sleeping soundly.

The eye signs are unreliable   A large pupil may be seen at any stage of anæsthesia   Strabismus is not uncommon during light anæsthesia

In the stage of overdose respiration becomes progressively shallower   This is accompanied by pallor and an increase in muscular flaccidity and by wide dilatation of the pupil   As with all other anæsthetics, excepting chloroform occasionally, respiratory failure precedes cardiac failure, though in the case of ethyl chloride only by a short interval

Dangers of Ethyl Chloride and their Avoidance

When any anæsthetic is given by the open method, anæsthesia deepens for a few breaths after the mask is removed because of the absorption of the gas still in the lungs   This effect is particularly noticeable with ethyl chloride because of its potency   Therefore if removal of the mask is delayed until anæsthesia is deep, it will be dangerously deep a few seconds later   For this reason until the administrator is experienced it is a good rule immediately regular respiration is established to remove the mask and allow one breath of air before the operation is commenced

Early in induction an unco-operative child may hold his breath

long enough for slight cyanosis to be produced before the accumulating carbon dioxide forces a deep breath If the mistake is made of spraying ethyl chloride on to the mask when the patient is not breathing, a strongly concentrated vapour accumulates, and a single deep inspiration of this strong vapour might lead to respiratory paralysis The observance of the rule **if the patient holds his breath stop the anæsthetic** will prevent the occurrence of this emergency

Although some degree of respiratory irregularity is common during induction it is not invariable Some patients, notably the "good" type of child, breathe shallowly and regularly throughout The muscles are not tautened nor the breath held at any stage, so that the onset of muscular relaxation and the automatic respiration of surgical anæsthesia may be overlooked If the anæsthetist, under the impression that the child is not yet "off," continues to give ethyl chloride after anæsthesia is established, dangerously deep anæsthesia will quickly result

Respiratory obstruction is a grave danger in ethyl chloride anæsthesia Because of the potency of the agent, obstruction may be followed quickly by grave tissue anoxia Cessation of respiratory effort at any time must be immediately investigated The causes are (i) voluntary breath holding in an unco operative patient, (ii) reflex breath holding from too strong a concentration of vapour, (iii) mechanical obstruction of respiration, and (iv) gross overdosage These are generally easy to differentiate, but if there is any doubt, treatment for mechanical obstruction and overdosage must be instituted

During induction with ethyl chloride, spasm of the laryngeal muscles may cause inspiratory stridor that, unlike that developing with other anæsthetics, may persist into deep anæsthesia Attempts are sometimes made to deepen anæsthesia with the object of relaxing the laryngeal muscles, but such attempts are dangerous, because the spasm may not relax until anæsthesia is dangerously deep

When stridor occurs the mask should be removed to allow the patient to breathe air The stridor disappears before consciousness is regained, and if the mask is then reapplied and anæsthesia gradually deepened, it rarely returns If it does recur, the administration should be discontinued and no attempt should be made to extract until the stridor ceases Respiratory exchange is already markedly affected by the obstruction which causes the stridor, and if to this further respiratory obstruction is added, e g by the sponge or by the dentist pushing the lower jaw and tongue backwards, the limitation of oxygen intake will increase to a dangerous degree the tissue anoxia already existing After the stridor passes off approximately thirty

seconds operating time remains before the patient recovers   The
cause of stridor in these cases has not been satisfactorily explained
The fact that it occurs with less frequency now than formerly has been
attributed to greater purity of the drug   but this cannot be a complete
explanation   for ethyl chloride out of the same bottle may produce
stridor in one patient and uneventful anæsthesia in another

Pallor during administration of ethyl chloride is a danger sign
Ethyl chloride causes dilatation of the peripheral vessels   giving the
patient a flushed appearance   and absence of this normal reaction is
of serious significance   In some cases pallor occurs only after a large
quantity has been administered   but in children with an idiosyncrasy
it is seen relatively early   In such children soon after the loss of con
sciousness the respiratory excursion diminishes rapidly and the colour
which probably has never been good becomes still paler   Muscular
flaccidity return of the eccentric eyeball to centre and wide dilatation
of the pupil occur coincidentally with the pallor but are more easily
overlooked   When pallor occurs it is wise to suspend the operation
until anæsthesia has lightened   Further administration of ethyl
chloride or the existence of any respiratory obstruction at this stage is
fraught with great danger

Since small doses of ethyl chloride produce rapid changes in the
depth of anæsthesia the principal danger in its use is that of over
dosage for signs of which the anæsthetist must be constantly on
the watch   Close adherence to the following rules will make for
safety

1   A free airway must be maintained —This applies to all
anæsthetised patients but is particularly to be stressed when powerful
drugs are used to produce unconsciousness

2   Every breath should be seen or heard —Generally either
inspiration or expiration is audible and the expired air after passing
through the frozen mask is always visible   The respiratory excursions
of the chest can usually be followed with ease   but it must be remem
bered that these movements are not an infallible indication of the
expansion of the lungs   If respiration is obstructed and unconscious
ness is not deep   movement of the thoracic wall may continue for a
short period without achieving any pulmonary ventilation

**3   If the patient holds his breath, stop the anæsthetic until
the cause of cessation of respiration is discovered and until
breathing recommences**

**4   If there is any doubt about the depth of anæsthesia the
patient must be treated as if deeply anæsthetised until the
contrary is proved**

ADMINISTRATION

Ethyl chloride may be given by the open or closed method
Although the former is more wasteful, we prefer it, mainly because it
is more pleasant for the patient, and partly because the oxygen intake
is not restricted   Before discussing the respective advantages of these
alternative procedures we shall consider certain points common to
them both

Two bottles of ethyl chloride should be at hand before induction
is begun   This precaution is advisable in case one becomes empty or
falls and breaks, or in case the nozzle becomes frozen and the size
of the spray is thereby so much reduced that induction is greatly
delayed

An attempt must be made to insert a prop in a child's mouth
before the anæsthetic is started, and efforts to spit it out should
be frustrated by the application of pressure with the little finger
under the chin

If the administration is stopped as soon as respiration becomes
automatic, about 60 seconds of anæsthesia will be obtained, it is
followed by analgesia lasting 20 to 30 seconds   Complete recovery is
not so rapid as after nitrous oxide, and the patient may remain dazed
for a minute or two   On recovery the previously flushed face often
becomes pale, and this, especially if the pallor is of the circumoral type,
suggests that vomiting is imminent

Repeated applications of ethyl chloride —In dealing with
children, if lengthy extractions are to be made it has to be decided
whether to attempt to complete the work on a single occasion or to
divide it between two or more sittings   In making the decision it
must be remembered that children, even more than adults, dislike
repeated anæsthetics   If the former course is chosen, there are still
alternatives   the more popular is to secure a sufficient duration
of anæsthesia by producing profound unconsciousness by a single
administration of a large enough dose of ethyl chloride   Most
anæsthetists have a strong prejudice against the other alternative of
reapplying ethyl chloride during dental work, it outweighs for them
the danger of overdosage which accompanies the attempt to secure
long anæsthesia from one application   However, even when this risk
is taken, a sufficiently prolonged anæsthesia cannot be guaranteed, if
the operation proves longer than was anticipated, it may have to be
abandoned because of returning consciousness and completed at a
further sitting   Moreover, the complications of vomiting and prostra-
tion are associated more with depth than with length of anæsthesia

For these reasons, we believe that the better course is to make repeated small applications during a single sitting   It is often convenient to give only enough ethyl chloride to allow one half of the mouth to be operated on, and then, before the child is conscious to apply an additional amount sufficient to allow extractions on the other side to be completed   Readministration should not be deferred so long that the child is responsive enough to struggle, for he is then liable to pull the mask away from his face   There may then be difficulty in settling him down again, and his movements favour aspiration of any foreign body which may have been overlooked in the mouth   The anæsthetist must therefore stop the dentist operating at the point where he thinks recovery and restlessness will take place in a few seconds   The signs of returning consciousness are movements of the body or limbs, phonation, screwing up of the face, and lachrymation   If reapplication of ethyl chloride is deferred until the patient is almost conscious, vomiting may occur

It is an inviolable rule that ethyl chloride, or any other anæsthetic, must never be reapplied unless the airway is clear and the mouth free from debris   The head should be tipped forward to drain the mouth of blood, and the soiled sponge should be taken out and replaced by a clean one   If the fresh sponge becomes frozen during readministration of ethyl chloride, it will cease to provide adequate protection and must again be changed before the operation is recommenced

Open Ethyl Chloride

The equipment for administering ethyl chloride by the open method is very simple , it consists merely of a Schimmelbusch mask (p 169) and a few thicknesses of gauze   In case of necessity even these can be dispensed with, and an ordinary linen hand towel or bib held over the nose and mouth will make an effective substitute

This latter method, although neat and always available, has one disadvantage   The ethyl chloride coming into contact with the patient's face and lips, and also with the operator's left hand, is unpleasantly cold, and may, if applied long enough even cause a mild " burn '

A few drops of ethyl chloride are sprayed on the mask or hand towel, which is gradually lowered on to the patient's face   Nothing is to be gained by a slow induction   The vapour concentration should be increased steadily and as rapidly as possible, but the rate of increase should never be enough to make the patient uncomfortable nor to tempt him to hold his breath   Many children can be persuaded to

inhale the anæsthetic quietly and a good anæsthetist may coax the patient to unconsciousness without upsetting the easy rhythm of normal respiration A child may be disinclined to breathe in ethyl chloride sprayed on the mask but he may often be persuaded

FIG 38   FIG 39

to blow away the scent The hearty puffs are followed by proportionately deep inspirations and anæsthesia quickly follows

The unsympathetic anæsthetist may try to hurry induction by forcing a concentrated vapour suddenly on the child without waiting to see if he will co operate in a more gradual induction This inevitably results in some degree of breath holding or struggling Even with a co-operative patient however induction though gradual should not *be prolonged unduly*

Peaceful induction is impossible where the patient screams or struggles If a child cries it is obvious that he is maintaining a good airway Gradual increase of the dose should not then be attempted but ethyl chloride should be given freely to induce anæsthesia as quickly as possible A spoilt obstreperous child is in this way easily and quickly subdued by ethyl chloride The onset of surgical anæsthesia is here sudden and the mask must be removed immediately respiration becomes automatic

Occasionally with nitrous oxide even with a co operative child it

is advisable to supplement anæsthesia by the addition of ethyl chloride (p 127)

Rapidity of onset of anæsthesia is determined by the amount of ethyl chloride sprayed on the mask, and by the respiratory volume and rate Variations in the respiratory rhythm make it impossible to give ethyl chloride by a rule-of-thumb method It is impossible to predict the quantity which will be needed both because patients vary so much in their requirements and because the amount wasted by evaporation cannot be estimated

The amount of ethyl chloride used by the Great Ormond Street method is still less predictable This technique introduced by Sington has however much to commend it It is a leisurely method in which the child himself is persuaded to hold the mask 8 to 10 inches away from his face while ethyl chloride is sprayed on it He is allowed

Fig 40 —Great Ormond Street method of giving ethyl chloride

to sit up or lie down just as he chooses The anæsthetist talks to him continuously and by various manœuvres the mask is gradually lowered on to the face This may take one or two minutes and up to 30 c c of ethyl chloride may be sprayed on the mask before un conscious ness is reached Such an induction is peaceful and well justifies the expenditure of extra time and material Without realising

what is happening, the child becomes more and more stuporose, fails to answer questions, and gradually allows the mask to be lowered on to his face

For general surgery, a satisfactory alternative[1] to the Great Ormond Street method in a child who comes to the operating theatre conscious is to encourage him to " roll over on your side as if you're going to sleep " Once the child is in this natural position, the mask is held a few inches away from his face and ethyl chloride sprayed on to it Resistance is rare , the onset of unconsciousness is smooth, and the experience is not resented at the time or subsequently.

Closed Ethyl Chloride

The chief advantage of the closed method is that it is economical One argument frequently put forward in its favour is that since only a fixed amount is put into the bag and this amount is small, it is difficult to give an overdose, except by a gross error of judgment in estimating the amount needed
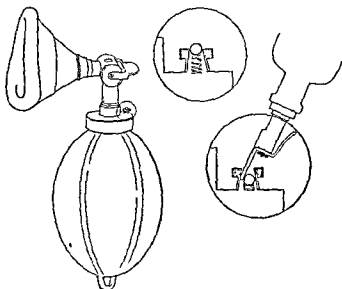
FIG 41 —Loosely s Inhaler

On the bag holder is a small aperture guarded by a ball which is kept in position by a spring This ball is easily depressed by the nozzle of the container from which ethyl chloride then can be sprayed into the bag At first the mask is applied intermittently so that the patient inspires from the air and expires into the bag, thus inflating it

After the bag is full, it is held firmly on the face to prevent any leakage
According to the size and resistance of the patient, from 2 to 6 c c
of ethyl chloride are then gradually sprayed into the bag   As soon as
anæsthesia is established it will not be deepened by retention of the
mask on the face, since practically all the ethyl chloride is already
absorbed from the bag, and in the early stages is distributed largely
to the brain, producing deep anæsthesia   If the mask is kept to the
face valuable operating time is lost, during which the anæsthetic is
merely being redistributed from the brain to the tissues, with consequent
lessening of the degree of unconsciousness

Ethyl Chloride as a Supplement to Nitrous-oxide Anæsthesia

Within recent years a small preliminary intravenous injection of
pentothal or evipan given to the robust adult patient before continuing
with nitrous oxide has in many cases replaced the supplementary ethyl
chloride, which might otherwise be indicated   for example, where
nitrous oxide is not strong enough to control the patient unless the
asphyxial element which must be introduced either makes operating
difficult or is enough to jeopardise the patient's safety

Ethyl chloride is still of value, however, as a supplementary agent
in cases where it is discovered, after nitrous-oxide anæsthesia has been
embarked upon, that a patient of powerful physique cannot be settled
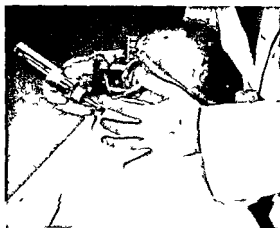
Fig   42

to a suitable level of anæsthesia   It may also prove useful when a
tooth breaks unexpectedly during extraction from such an individual

After some minutes, during which the operative stimulus may have to be increased, the patient is likely to become progressively difficult to control, and the addition of a little ethyl chloride is remarkably effective in establishing peaceful anæsthesia and facilitating its subsequent maintenance

The nose-piece is retained in position and the mouth covered by a hand towel or the upturned bib on to which ethyl chloride is sprayed If the patient is breathing mainly through his mouth, anæsthesia will be produced almost entirely by the ethyl chloride, but as it deepens he will resort to nose-breathing, and the anæsthetic is then continued with nitrous oxide and oxygen The question whether the patient can be exposed safely to an appreciable degree of oxygen-lack or not, depends on the amount of ethyl chloride given Cyanosis should not be allowed to occur after a moderate amount of ethyl chloride, but, if the amount given has been small, a slight reduction in the oxygen intake may be necessary in order to maintain tranquil anæsthesia with nitrous oxide

FIG 43.

In case of extreme violence, the nose piece also must be replaced by the bib, and induction completed with ethyl chloride alone A struggling man breathes deeply so that anæsthesia is induced quickly As soon as he becomes tranquil, anæsthesia is continued nasally with nitrous oxide

REFERENCE

(1) Bannister, F B , and Scott, R D 1942 *Personal communication*

11

CHAPTER XVII

VINESTHENE

VINESTHENE the use of which as an anæsthetic was first suggested by Leake [1] is the proprietary name for di vinyl ether $(C_2H_3)_2O$ to which stabilising agents have been added This drug was introduced into clinical anæsthesia in 1933 [2] It is an almost colourless volatile highly inflammable liquid with a specific gravity of 0 8 and it boils at 29° C The vapour density of the gas is 2 4 It has a characteristic petrol like smell and mixtures with air or oxygen are highly explosive

It is potent, and induces anæsthesia rapidly and not unpleasantly It is useful in general surgery either merely as an induction agent or as the sole anæsthetic for short operations It has a particular useful ness for short operations, and has become especially popular for dental surgery in children For more prolonged operations mixtures with ethyl ether in any proportions are satisfactory for the maintenance of anæsthesia and a mixture containing 25 per cent vinesthene and 75 per cent ethyl ether is much in favour both for induction and maintenance Vinesthene has been used with success in midwifery, both for analgesia and to obtain anæsthesia at the end of the second stage of labour

Vinesthene for Dental Surgery

Vinesthene is now often used where ethyl chloride would formerly have been given The indications for its use are very similar to those for ethyl chloride Either drug can be given by the open or by the closed method We consider that the open method is more humane, and comparing the two drugs given by the open method we find ethyl chloride to be more convenient more rapid and much more economical Although in these respects ethyl chloride is more satis factory vinesthene has two overriding advantages and we frequently administer it even by the closed method in preference to ethyl chloride by the open method These advantages are

1 A striking absence of undesirable after-effects such as post anæsthetic vomiting and collapse after short operations the patient is able to leave the surgery within a minute or two apparently none the worse for his experience

2 Less masseteric spasm, so that the mouth can be opened with comparative ease in cases where the prop has been spat out during induction

Signs of Anæsthesia

The crying and struggling common in the early induction period when this drug is used stop after a few breaths, and respiration then becomes regular Even if it is regular from the beginning, the automatic character indicating surgical anæsthesia is usually easily recognisable General muscular relaxation occurs at the same time, the eyeballs become fixed, usually eccentrically, and the conjunctival reflex disappears When given by the closed method, the depletion of the oxygen in the bag of the inhaler due to continued rebreathing, may cause slight cyanosis

Administration by the Closed Method
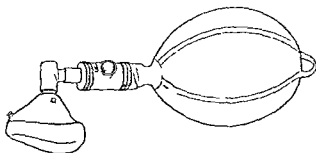
FIG 44

Goldman's Inhaler —The barrel contains a sponge on to which the content of a vinesthene ampoule (3-c c or 5-c c ampoules are available) is poured The dose generally recommended for children of all ages is 3 c c, *but for those above the age of 5 we prefer to use 5 c c* A prop is inserted, and the bag is distended either by the patient's expiration after the face mask has been applied at the end of an inspiration, or it is blown up by the anæsthetist

The mask is then held firmly to the face The disadvantage of this inhaler is that the strength of the vapour cannot be increased gradually This is to some extent offset by the fact that a few breaths suffice to produce anæsthesia, but before this is reached the sudden irritation from the concentrated vapour usually leads to crying and physical resistance during the induction Hence the breathing is at

first irregular, but in most cases if no vapour is lost by leakage the automatic respiration characteristic of surgical anæsthesia soon sets in Occasionally, however, the irritating vapour causes laryngeal spasm, and the anoxæmia from continuous rebreathing may result in jerky irregular breathing In either of these cases the mask should be removed, and the patient allowed one or two breaths of air to relieve the condition before extractions begin

It is essential to retain the mask firmly on the face to prevent any outward escape of vinesthene Usually anæsthesia is established in about one minute The mask should then be removed and extractions commenced at once As described in the chapter on ethyl chloride if the mask is kept too long applied, the anæsthesia becomes lighter The depth and duration of anæsthesia depend upon the dose introduced into the inhaler, on whether any is lost by leakage and upon the size and resistance of the patient Minor variations in the anæsthesia occur from patient to patient but on an average 45-60 seconds of tranquil anæsthesia is provided and after this recovery of consciousness is abrupt.
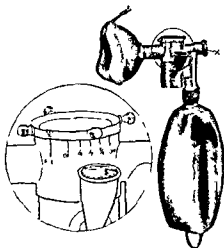
FIG 45

The Oxford Inhaler[2] —This apparatus modifies the Goldman inhaler in two respects which we consider are improvements (1) It contains a one-way inlet valve (X) for air which comes into action only if and when the bag is empty, when it allows the patient to draw in supple-

mentary air Expiration takes place entirely into the bag   (u) A by pass allows the concentration of anæsthetic vapour to be increased gradually

Open Method

FIG 46

FIG 47

Vinesthene may be dropped on to a mask or on to a strip of lint hanging down over the nose The difficulty of obtaining a uniform rate of dropping from the bottle, and the expense of the drug, have prevented a wider use of this method As with other anæsthetics, the rate of administration is increased as rapidly as the patient will tolerate it. If the supply is stopped at the onset of surgical anæsthesia, the operating time afforded is about 60 seconds, though it can safely be prolonged by delaying removal of the mask and continuing administration after automatic respiration is established

In comparison with the closed method, induction takes rather longer and frequently 20 c c are necessary to establish anæsthesia ; also salivation is more marked and may be troublesome. The duration of anæsthesia and of the period of recovery are dependent on the amount of vinesthene absorbed, but generally they are both longer than when the drug is given by the closed method

FIG. 48   FIG. 49.

If desired, anæsthesia by either method can be continued at a steady level by dropping vinesthene on to a folded strip of gauze held beneath the nostrils

REFERENCES

(1) Leake, C D and Chen, M.-Y   1930/31   *Proc Soc exp Biol.* **28,** 151.
(2) Gelfan, S , and Bell, I R   1930   *J Pharmacol* **47,** 1.
(3) Boston, F K and Salt R   1940   *Lancet* **2,** 623

CHAPTER XVIII

ETHER

ETHER [diethyl ether, diethyl oxide $(C_2H_8)_2O$], first used as an anæsthetic one hundred years ago, is still the safest and most popular anæsthetic for general use   It is noteworthy in general surgery that if an anæsthetist gets into difficulties with any other agent, he almost invariably resorts to ether for help

Ether is reliable and relatively non toxic   It enables muscular relaxation adequate for an abdominal operation to be maintained without signs of respiratory depression and, if an overdose is given, respiratory arrest occurs before the circulation is gravely impaired   Immediate removal of the mask and institution of artificial respiration will therefore in all probability, result in recovery

PHYSICAL PROPERTIES

Ether is a colourless, inflammable liquid with a specific gravity of 0 7 and a characteristic pungent odour   It may be mentioned here that an anæsthetist's first duty is to smell the content of the bottle of anæsthetic before he administers it to the patient   This precaution will eliminate the mistake, frequently a fatal one, of giving chloroform under the impression that it is ether   The boiling point of ether (34 6° C) is just below body temperature, and it volatilises readily at ordinary room temperature   Ether vapour has a density of 2 6, is very inflammable, and with air or oxygen forms highly explosive mixtures   It should, therefore, never be used in the presence of a naked flame, nor for an operation in which the cautery or diathermy is to be used   That ether vapour, two and a half times as heavy as air, will *sink*, must be borne in mind when positioning any apparatus from which a spark may be generated accidentally (e g an electrically operated suction pump)

INDUCTION

The patient should be premedicated with atropine to prevent the salivation and bronchial secretion which otherwise frequently results from the irritant action of ether vapour   If morphia is to be given, it should be injected 1–2 hours before anæsthesia is due to begin (p 95)

Although ether is probably the most frequently used drug for the maintenance of anæsthesia, it is seldom used from the beginning, for

induction is achieved more pleasantly and rapidly by such agents as ethyl chloride, vinesthene or pentothal. If ether alone is to be used, ample time must be allowed, since induction of anæsthesia is slow, particularly if the threshold of the respiratory centre to CO_2 has been raised by morphia (p 47)   Induction may take as long as 30 minutes, and the anæsthetist must exercise considerable patience to avoid interrupting the regular rhythm of respiration   Ideally the ether should be given *continuously*, and the concentration of vapour increased gradually yet as rapidly as the patient will tolerate it   An attempt to hasten induction by increasing too suddenly the concentration of vapour will defeat its own end, since the oppressive vapour will check the regularity and the depth of respiration, and the onset of anæsthesia will be correspondingly delayed   The signs that the ether concentration is being increased too quickly are similar to the signs of irritation from any other cause on the unanæsthetised pharynx or larynx   There will be

(a) **Swallowing**, a protective reaction safeguarding the air passages, or

(b) **Breath-holding**, which occurs coincidentally with swallowing or there may be breath holding without swallowing ; or

(c) **Coughing** ; or at a later stage

(d) **Laryngeal spasm**, causing inspiratory stridor and diminished pulmonary ventilation   Any of these reflex protective reactions retards the rate of absorption of ether, and should they occur the rate of administration must be reduced until a strength of vapour which can be tolerated is reached   When normal respiration recommences, the anæsthetist must renew the attempt to find the maximum rate at which the vapour concentration can be increased without upsetting the respiratory rhythm

When ether is to be used after an induction by ethyl chloride or pentothal, the optimum rate of administration is determined only by experience   If the ether is not given rapidly the patient will ' come round '' before enough has been absorbed to be effective, and if given too quickly laryngeal spasm may be precipitated   This troublesome complication of anæsthesia has many causes, and, during light ether anæsthesia, may occur from irritation of the larynx by the direct action of strong ether vapour, or by mucus secreted from the respiratory tract as a result of the strength of the vapour

Provided respiration remains regular, ether cannot be administered too rapidly   The beginner is advised to be cautious with all other anæsthetics but to be bold with ether, with which difficulties arise more frequently from under- than from over-dosage   Provided a

clear airway is maintained the patient will not collapse suddenly from
an overdose   Respiratory and other signs give ample warning of the
approach of deep anæsthesia which can then be avoided by reducing
the rate of administration   The troubles of light ether anæsthesia
are laryngeal spasm and vomiting   The former is overcome as de
scribed by first decreasing and then progressively increasing the
strength of vapour to which the larynx is exposed   The latter may
cause respiratory obstruction by the lodgment of a mass of food
or acid regurgitation from the stomach by irritating the larynx may
cause persistent laryngeal spasm which limits the intake of further
anæsthetic and makes the attainment of surgical anæsthesia difficult

Although ether may be given by rectum mixed with olive oil or
intravenously in saline it is rarely administered other than by
inhalation   It may be given

(a) By dropping it on an open mask where it is vaporised

(b) By delivering to the patient air oxygen or a mixture of nitrous
oxide and oxygen which has been passed over or through ether contained
in a bottle   This is often referred to as the   semi-closed   method

(c) In a closed circuit

(d) By the Oxford Vaporiser (p 313)

Open drop Method

FIG
50

FIG
51

Schimme busch
Mask.
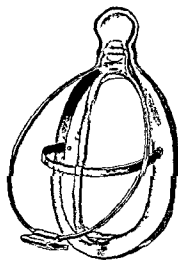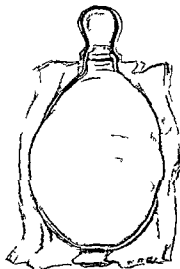
The mask is covered with about a dozen thicknesses of gauze
which are held in position by the spring band   The gauze must not
be thick enough to interfere with free respiration
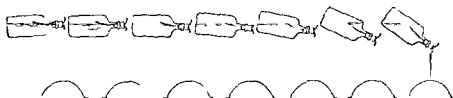
FIG 52   (*After Waters*)

Provided free regular respiration is not interrupted, the rate of
flow of ether on to the mask must be continuous and must be increased
uniformly
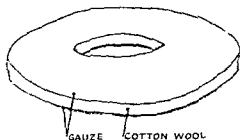
GAUZE   COTTON WOOL

FIG 53

A gamgee pad—i e cotton wool covered with gauze—is a help to
the efficient administration of ether by the open drop method
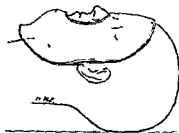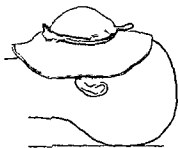
FIG 54   FIG 55

The concentration of ether vapour can be increased by inserting
a gamgee pad underneath the mask, thus preventing the patient from
breathing any air which does not pass through the ether laden mask

FIG 56

The concentration of anæsthetic vapour can be still further increased
by covering the mask with another gamgee pad

"Semi-closed" Method
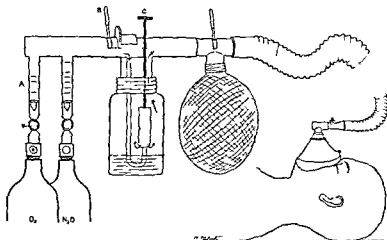
FIG 57

The rates of flow of the selected gases (usually nitrous oxide and
oxygen) are measured by flowmeters (A), and can be controlled by
opening or closing the valves (V)   The gases pass directly to the
patient unless they are by-passed by a stopcock (B) into the ether
bottle   In the latter case the tension of ether vapour delivered to the
patient will increase as the plunger (C) is lowered, since then the gases
are brought increasingly near the surface of the liquid ether or are made
to bubble through it

A rebreathing bag in the circuit acts as a reservoir to allow the lungs
to expand with ease during inspiration   For an adult, a flow of gases
of 5 litres a minute is necessary to replenish the breathing bag and

to ensure that a high percentage of the exhaled gases passes out through the expiratory valve near the face piece Such a flow limits the rebreathing into the corrugated tube and bag to a small volume and the accumulation of CO_2 is thus prevented

It is worth recording that where ether vapour is carried to the patient by nitrous oxide and oxygen the resulting anæsthesia is frequently due almost entirely to the ether The N_2O then can be considered merely as a vehicle and could be replaced by nitrogen without any noticeable difference in the anæsthesia

Closed circuit Method

Inhalation anæsthetics are excreted unchanged through the lungs If a patient breathes in and out of a bag to which ether or any other inhalation anæsthetic is added until the desired level of anæsthesia is reached theoretically this level could then be maintained indefinitely without further addition of anæsthetic For life to be supported provision would have to be made for the supply of essential oxygen and for the removal of CO_2 which if allowed to accumulate would soon reach a lethal concentration

The mask is applied to the face firmly enough to prevent leakage

Inlet fo fresh gases

F G 58

The lungs and rebreathing bag then form a continuous closed circuit to which oxygen measured by a flowmeter is added at the rate at which it is consumed by the body tissues In the average adult at rest this is about 250 c c per minute A canister of soda lime is introduced into the circuit to absorb the CO_2 expired Ether (or other inhalation anæsthetic) is added gradually into the circuit until the requisite degree of anæsthesia is reached Although in theory no more anæsthetic is now needed in practice it is found necessary to add small quantities from time to time in order to maintain a steady level
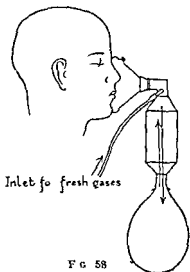
of anæsthesia The additional anæsthetic is required to maintain a constant concentration in the brain while tissue equilibrium is being established to compensate for small leakages and to replace small losses from the skin wound surfaces and possibly by renal excretion

If the soda lime canister is attached to the mask (fig 58) the use of valves to direct the flow of gases is unnecessary   In this   to and fro method the apparatus is simple   resistance to respiration is minimal but airtight retention of the mask on the face is difficult on account of the position of the canister

Inlet for fresh gases
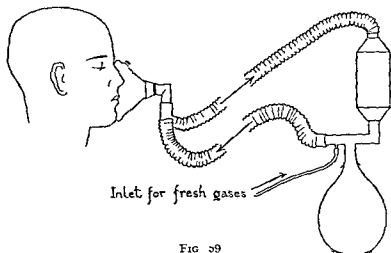
FIG 59

In the   circle   method the introduction of valves allows the canister to be placed remotely   This makes control of the face mask more easy   Compared with the   to and fro   circle   apparatus is more complicated and more resistance to respiration is offered by the valves and the greater length of breathing tubing necessary

The advantages claimed for the CO_2 absorption method of anæsthesia are   (i) Maintenance of body heat   The anæsthetic gases are soon raised to body temperature and saturated with water vapour and the patient continues to breathe this warm moist atmosphere   (ii) Diminished risk of explosion   Although elimination of this danger is not absolute the possibility of explosion is obviously reduced if inflammable gases are confined to a closed circuit   (iii) Vitiation of theatre atmosphere is prevented   With open-drop ether the anæsthetist and operating team often work in an atmosphere heavily charged with ether vapour   (iv) Economy of anæsthetic gases is effected and as a corollary the use of an expensive gas such as cyclopropane is made possible

Read also
Waters R M 1936 *Carbon Dioxide Absorption Technic in Aresthesia* *Ann Surg* **103,** 38

CHAPTER XIX

CHLOROFORM

CHLOROFORM (CHCl₃) is a colourless liquid with a sweet burning taste and an agreeable smell. It is sufficiently irritating to cause a mild burn if the lint on which it is dropped is kept in contact with the skin for some time. The specific gravity of the liquid is 1 5 and its boiling point 61° C. Chloroform vapour has a density of 4 and shares with nitrous oxide the great advantage of non inflammability

Chloroform is highly toxic anæsthesia being achieved by a poisoning of tissue cells appreciably greater than that produced by other anæs thetics. An even more serious deterrent to its use however is that during induction sudden death which is unpredictable and apparently unavoidable occasionally occurs. It has the advantage over ether that its vapour is quite pleasant to inhale and on this account it was formerly in common use to produce unconsciousness before continuing anæsthesia with ether. This justification for its use has been elimi minated since the introduction of basal anæsthetics. Moreover basal anæsthetics followed by N₂O and intravenous anæsthetics have replaced chloroform in most cases where anæsthesia has to be produced under conditions in which there is a danger of explosion. Its employment in general surgery is now rare and its use in dentistry is unwarranted. Its physical properties give chloroform a sphere of usefulness for emergency operations conducted away from hospital

Dangers of Chloroform Anæsthesia

There are four well recognised causes of death from chloroform

1 Writers during the last century describe the occurrence of sudden death from psychological causes during induction of anæsthesia or early in operation. Half the deaths from chloroform have occurred within fifteen minutes of the beginning of induction. Chloroform sensitises the organism to adrenaline a drug which can produce ventricular fibrillation in man and animals. The result is that under chloroform anæsthesia a smaller dose of adrenaline than would oth er wise produce fibrillation may now do so. There is a strong clinical impression that suppressed fear of anæsthesia or operation leads to liberation of the patient s own adrenaline into his blood stream in quantities sufficient if he is a susceptible subject to produce ventricular

fibrillation in a heart sensitised by chloroform   Deaths from this
cause will occur independently of the skill and experience of the
anæsthetist   These sudden deaths occur notoriously in the healthy,
nervous patient who is dreading operation   In this connection it
should be remembered that fear immediately before operation can now
be overcome by the use of basal anæsthetics of which avertin, nembutal,
and evipan are familiar examples   Basal anæsthesia, therefore, may
tend to protect the patient against this cause of sudden death from
chloroform

2   Death may occur from the direct action of strong chloroform
vapour on the cardiac musculature of susceptible patients   Chloroform
vapour in the inhaled mixture should not exceed 4 per cent

3   Death may result from paralysis of the respiratory centre from
overdosage   This is heralded by increasing depression of respiration,
and can be avoided by paying attention to respiratory signs   Should
respiratory arrest occur, artificial respiration must be instituted at
once, but the probability of recovery is not as high as when a less
toxic anæsthetic is used

4   Death may arise also from delayed chloroform poisoning, in
which condition liver function becomes grossly disorganised   This
grave complication, the signs of which do not occur for some thirty six
hours after administration, is more likely to occur in exhausted patients,
in those depleted of tissue fluids, and in those who have been deprived
of food   The risk of this complication increases in proportion to the
degree of debility of the patient and to the amount of chloroform given

Administration of Chloroform

Chloroform may be administered from a drop bottle on to a
Schimmelbusch's mask covered with eight layers of gauze or one layer
of flannel   A few drops are placed on the flannel and the mask
gradually lowered on to the face   The rate of administration is
increased as rapidly as the patient will tolerate   Swallowing, breath-
holding, or coughing are signs that the concentration of the vapour
is being increased too quickly   If they occur, the mask must be
withdrawn a few inches, and gradually lowered as normal respiration
is resumed   This precaution is necessary lest a period of breath holding
be followed by an abnormally deep inspiration which might be charged
with a dangerously high percentage of chloroform vapour   The use of
a gamgee pad over or under the Schimmelbusch's mask is never justified,
since this too may lead to a dangerous concentration of vapour   The
amount of chloroform used for induction and maintenance of anæsthesia
is strikingly less than in the case of ether   As a very rough guide,

about 1½–2 ozs will be needed for the first hour of anæsthesia for a surgical operation on an average patient
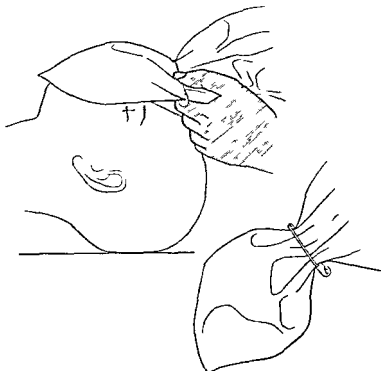
FIG 60

In order to avoid too strong a concentration of chloroform vapour, Lister[1] in 1882 recommended that the mask should consist of the corner of a thin hand towel drawn through a closed safety pin The towel should not touch the face, and although if necessary it may be kept moist with chloroform, the amount on it should never be sufficient to cause the chloroform to drop off the edges

REFERENCE

(1) Lister Joseph 1st Baron 1909 *Collected Papers* Oxford 1, 168

CHAPTER XX

CYCLOPROPANE

CYCLOPROPANE (C_3H_6) is a colourless gas with a not unpleasant naphtha like smell   It is one and a half times as heavy as air, and widely varied mixtures with oxygen or air are highly explosive   It liquefies at a pressure of 75 lb per square inch, and is supplied as a liquid in cylinders   Its price per gallon is approximately fifty times that of nitrous oxide, but since it is always administered in a closed-circuit apparatus (p 172), the cost of cyclopropane anæsthesia is approximately the same as that of other inhalation anæsthetics

With this potent agent, anæsthesia suitable for any surgical procedure can be obtained, but because of the difficulty, in operations on the head and neck of establishing a gastight connection between apparatus and patient without encroaching on the field of operation it is seldom used in dentistry

Cyclopropane is not suited for use by the occasional anæsthetist The signs of anæsthesia correspond closely to those of ether but the successive stages are passed through with much greater rapidity Muscular relaxation cannot be relied upon when the drug is used in low concentrations and an attempt to produce relaxation by increasing the cyclopropane content of the mixture may be accompanied by marked respiratory depression and cardiac irregularities   Nevertheless, in the hands of the experienced anæsthetist it furnishes eminently satisfactory results, and by many is considered to be the anæsthetic of choice for most surgical operations

Induction with cyclopropane is rapid and not unpleasant, and recovery after short anæsthesia is quick   Respiration throughout is shallow and quiet   The gas is not irritant to the mucous membranes of the air passages or to the pulmonary epithelium, and therefore is suitable for patients with pulmonary disease

Administration of Cyclopropane

Before the mask is applied, the rebreathing bag should be filled with sufficient oxygen to allow comfortable respiration   The flow of oxygen is then adjusted to satisfy the patient s metabolic requirements (i e about 250 c c per minute for an adult), and the cyclopropane is introduced into the circuit at a rate of 500–1,000 c c per minute

This flow is kept up until the desired anæsthesia is achieved the level of which is then maintained by supplying extra cyclopropane at intervals or as a continuous trickle at the rate of about 50 c c per minute   The reason why this additional anæsthetic is required is explained on p 172

The average percentages of cyclopropane in the inhaled mixture which would produce unconsciousness light anæsthesia moderately deep surgical anæsthesia and respiratory arrest respectively are 5 10 20 and 40 but such figures must be taken merely as helpful indications of what may be expected in the average patient for as with all narcotics the administrator must be guided by the reactions of the individual patient and not by rule of thumb

Read also

Robbins B H   1940   *Cyclopropane Anesthesia*   Baltimore
Waters R M   1936   *Brit med J*   **2,** 1013
Waters R M   and Schmidt E R   1934   *J Amer med Ass*   **103** 975

CHAPTER XXI

PRELIMINARY APPROACH TO DENTAL ANÆSTHESIA

THE preparations preliminary to dental anæsthesia considered here should be observed in every case whatever anæsthetic is to be given The importance of elimination of apprehension in the attainment of smooth anæsthesia with nitrous oxide has already been dealt with By the time the patient arrives at the dental surgery premedication if any has already been given For an ambulatory patient this will be only mild and attention to details calculated to put the patient at his ease constitutes psychological treatment which is of great additional value

The punctuality of all concerned in the operation is important The patient should be told to arrive in plenty of time If he leaves his business late and rushes to have his tooth out he is always flustered, if delayed in a traffic block he develops exaggerated irritability It is preferable for him to plan to arrive ten minutes before the extraction is due, so that he will have an opportunity to sit down, to relax, and to read his out of date *Punch* The dentist and anæsthetist also should make a point of punctuality A nervous subject may work himself into a panic if he is kept waiting after the time appointed for the operation, and delay may easily give the patient the impression that his operation is not considered important

Before the patient is shown into the dental surgery he should be given an opportunity to empty his bladder During times of mental tension, urine is secreted freely, and the discomfort of a full bladder may add to a patient's anxiety This precaution is also of practical importance, since during anæsthesia the bladder, if full, may be emptied involuntarily

The dental work to be done should have been determined, if possible, at a sitting before the day of operation, so that time is not spent in making an examination, and planning the extent of the extractions on the spur of the moment

Everything should be ready for the operation before the patient enters the dental surgery The forceps necessary for the extraction should have been sterilised already, and be set ready, covered with a sterile towel out of the patient's sight.

The anæsthetist's apparatus also should be ready It is often inspected by the patient from sheer curiosity and should be immaculate always Before it is brought into the dental surgery empty cylinders should have been replaced by full ones, and it should never be necessary to change cylinders in the presence of the patient Cylinder valves should work smoothly and noiselessly, and the administrator should be certain that he has a sufficient supply of nitrous oxide and oxygen The anæsthetist's instruments should have been sterilised after his previous case, and although they need not necessarily remain sterile they should be clean and ready for immediate use When he enters the dental surgery the anæsthetist's only necessary preparations should be to open his bag and to wash his hands

Impressions made by one person on another in ordinary civil life are apt to be accentuated at such a time as this After the introductions have been made, the anæsthetist should use any device he thinks legitimate to remove a patient's apprehension, although if he is inexperienced in dental anæsthesia he may be far from feeling the confidence which it is necessary for him to instil into the patient He should make every effort to show the patient that he has control of the situation Although the anæsthetist should be gentle and kind, it is a wise policy to be firm Anticipated difficulties should not be discussed, the magnitude of the surgical undertaking can be dilated upon after its achievement, not before the anæsthetic is commenced †

With the object of ensuring that all impressions made on a patient shall be pleasing, some anæsthetists apply scent to the nose-piece Certain patients, particularly children or nervous women, find that the smell of the scent is welcome and helps to divert attention to happier thoughts On the other hand a few strongly object to scent some, indeed, dislike it even more than any other feature of the anæsthetic Once scent has been applied to a nose- or face-piece, it is almost impossible to dispel all traces of it, and for this reason we have abandoned its use for the sake of patients who find scent repulsive

The anæsthetist must be prepared to find some feature about which his patient is sensitive and must take special care not to draw attention to it For instance, a surprising number of people wear wigs, and as a rule the wearer of a wig is extremely conscious of it and fears that it will be disturbed, or obviously noticed The dental anæsthetist therefore should take particular care when applying the nose-piece that neither he nor any part of the apparatus should touch the wig A

patient's awareness of his wig is often revealed during recovery from anæsthesia, when almost invariably his first action, often before full consciousness is attained, is to raise his hand to adjust it

As soon as the patient is settled in the dental chair he is told to blow his nose so that it will be clear of any obstruction   Dentures should then be taken out, and any tight clothing loosened   A man is usually more at his ease without his collar on these occasions, and its removal may at least prevent the embarrassment of his leaving the surgery with a blood spattered collar

Examination of the Patient

For reasons given (p 322) we do not approve of a routine examination before anæsthesia in the dental surgery   Various tests have been devised to assess the functional condition of the heart, but the only ones which we find reliable are those which give an indication of the vital capacity of the lungs   Cardiac decompensation is accompanied by diminution of the vital capacity which, when reduced to 40–70 per cent of the normal, is shown clinically by dyspnœa on moderate exercise   The vital capacity can be measured by a spirometer, but a satisfactory evaluation of it and therefore of cardiac efficiency can be formed more simply by carrying out Henderson s breath holding test [1] [2]   After a moderately deep inspiration a healthy subject is able to hold his breath for 45 seconds   Inability to hold the breath for longer than 15 seconds should be taken as evidence of cardiac insufficiency of a degree which makes it undesirable that the O_2 percentage in the inhaled mixture should be reduced below 20

POSITION OF THE PATIENT IN THE DENTAL CHAIR

The patient should be allowed to sit in the attitude he finds most comfortable   Provided this is reasonably good, it need not be altered, since he is more likely to go off to sleep peacefully in a comfortable position than in any other   Generally, however, it is necessary, in order to have his hips well back, to ask him to " make himself tall " in the chair   The neck-rest should then be adjusted to fit the nape of the neck, and the patient s head, neck, and trunk should be approximately in a straight line   The head rest should be firmly fixed, since, if it slips down, the head becomes over-extended   Any such sudden change in position during the course of operation may lead to operative difficulties and to dangers

When the patient is in this position respiration is free and the head easy to control   Notice :

Fig 61

1 Hips well back in the chair

2 Head, neck, and chest in a straight line

3 Head rest fitting the nape of the neck

4 The legs and feet in the position usually adopted when sitting

5 The patient is relaxed

6 The fingers are interlocked   As an alternative one hand can be held inside the other

7 A strap is around the pelvis

The position of the legs is not of great importance, provided the patient does not obtain a purchase with them against the foot rest   If he sits down with his legs crossed, and finds this attitude most comfortable, there is no real reason for asking him to uncross them   Occasionally, after this position when consciousness returns the patient finds his leg has " gone to sleep "   this effect is only transient, and full recovery of power is attained within a minute or two

A patient sometimes seems at a loss as to what to do with his hands and can be advised to hold one hand inside the other   Some anæsthetists think it best with a patient likely to be obstructive, to ask him to intertwine his fingers   This is suggested with the idea that if after anæsthesia is begun he is disposed to struggle, he may have difficulty in disentangling his own fingers   A very nervous patient often wishes to hold someone's hand   This may give him comfort, and should be allowed but the hand should not be the anæsthetist's because, when losing consciousness, the patient may grip so tightly that instant disengagement of the hand may be impossible The nurse or dentist whose hand is held should know that the patient's

grip may become tight enough to be very painful, and that a female patient with sharp fingernails may dig them into the hand she holds

Use of a Strap

The use of a strap is not a confession of weakness, but a sign of experience   There are two conditions in which it should be regarded as essential

(1) For the difficult patient, the so-called " anæsthetic resistant " type who is apt to struggle during light anæsthesia and may then slip into a position inconvenient for the operator (fig 62), or develop opisthotonos (fig 26, p 116) if a strap is not used , and (2) for a dental operation which it is expected will be difficult or prolonged to whatever type the patient may belong
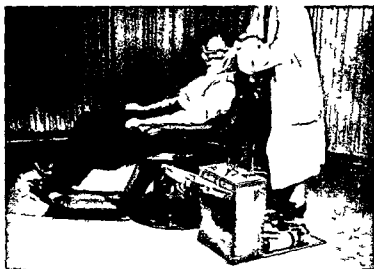
Fig 62

If a strap is not used the patient may slip down in the chair Valuable time and energy will be spent in hoisting him into position again and in holding the jaw forward and up to prevent respiratory obstruction (p 261) and to allow the dentist access to the mouth The anæsthetist's hands soon become exceedingly tired, and neither hand is free to mop the site of operation, nor to make any adjustments to apparatus   When the patient's pelvis is fixed by the strap, he is so steadied that his head can easily be kept in position on the head rest, and although he may struggle or relax, he will not slip down in the chair   In the great majority of cases the strap is entirely

unnecessary, but should be used always when it might prove of value
Often the difficulties which will be encountered either in anæsthesia
or in the operation are under-estimated and anæsthesia has unex-
pectedly to be prolonged   In such cases if a strap has been applied
as a routine measure, the help it gives will be found invaluable

The patient's permission to apply a strap should not be asked
but the reason for its use should be explained to him   As soon as he
is in a good position the anæsthetist tells him that he is to be given
a peaceful anæsthetic during which he will relax and therefore will
tend to slip, to prevent this he will be supported by a strap round
the hips

FIG 63 —Strap loosely applied before
induction   The strap is placed round the
pelvis so that when it is tightened it does
not restrict respiration

FIG 64 —Strap tightened after anæs
thesia is established

The strap should not be tight while the patient is conscious but as
soon as consciousness is lost and before the dentist begins to operate,
it should be tightened firmly

If the application of the strap is managed properly, the patient
rarely protests against it   If there is any objection it is much better
to let the patient have his own way and to dispense with it since
otherwise he may feel that he is being forcibly restrained   This idea
may rouse antagonism and make him liable to struggle during induction
The application of a strap here can be deferred until the patient is
unconscious but it must be remembered that some patients become

turbulent early and slip down before there is an opportunity to put on the strap

As soon as the patient is properly settled the teeth to be extracted are pointed out and then the mouth inspected for crowns or other delicate structures so that these will not be injured if a Mason's gag is used   The prop is then put into position   care being taken not to open the mouth too widely since this makes the patient uncomfortable and nasal respiration difficult (p 262)   Adjustment of the chair should be made either before the anæsthetic is begun or after the patient is anæsthetised   Movement of the chair during induction is liable to initiate mental disturbance which may result in violence

Beyond telling the patient to   blow the gas away through your nose   it is a mistake to give him specific instructions as to how he should breathe   If he asks for instructions however these should be given and they should be simple and definite   He is told to breathe perfectly naturally and that the anæsthetist will adjust the anæsthetic to the respirations   No impression of hurry should be given at any time during the procedure but time should not be lost unnecessarily before beginning anæsthesia

REFERENCES

(1) Clement F W   1939   Nitrous Oxide Oxygen Anæsthesia   London   45
(2) Macleod J J R   1935   Physiology in Modern Medicine   London 331

CHAPTER XXII

NITROUS OXIDE

PHYSICAL PROPERTIES

NITROUS oxide (N_2O, " laughing gas ") is a colourless gas with a faint, not unpleasant, smell and a slightly sweet taste   The gas has a density of 1 5, 1 e it is one and a half times as heavy as air   It is prepared by heating ammonium nitrate to 250° C

$$NH_4NO_3 \rightarrow N_2O + 2H_2O$$
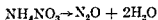
After removal of impurities, the gas is dried with great care, compressed, and filled into cylinders   Nitrous oxide condenses to form a colourless liquid at 0°C at a pressure of 30 atmospheres   The pressure in the cylinders at normal room temperature is 650 lb per square inch (= 40 atmospheres)   A pressure gauge attached to a cylinder of N_2O to show the pressure of the gas within is no guide to the amount which remains in the cylinder, because the pressure will

remain constant until all the liquid is vaporised, when, if the valve of the cylinder is left open, the pressure suddenly falls to zero   An accurate estimation of the quantity of N_2O remaining in a cylinder can be made only by weighing the cylinder and contents   Fifty gallons of N_2O weigh 15 ozs   Since its weight when empty and full is stamped on every cylinder, it is simple to calculate the N_2O content   The stamp on the cylinder illustrated shows that when empty (E) it weighs 15 lb 13 ozs , and when full (F) 19 lb 9 ozs   If a balance is not available, a very rough estimate

FIG 65

of the cylinder contents may be obtained by tapping the cylinder with a metal spanner An empty cylinder gives out a high pitched note , one containing liquid N₂O a dull note

In contrast, it should be noted that oxygen in cylinders is in a gaseous state In this country oxygen cylinders are filled to a pressure of about 120 atmospheres or 1,800 lb per square inch A pressure gauge indicates accurately the amount still remaining in an oxygen cylinder, since, as the oxygen flows away, the gaseous pressure falls The oxygen content of a cylinder therefore can be estimated if its capacity when full and the pressure of oxygen within it are known Thus, if the pressure of a cylinder which contains when full 30 gallons of oxygen registers 40 atmospheres pressure, the contents of the cylinder will be $\frac{40}{120} \times 30 = 10$, gallons

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Nitrous oxide, the first anæsthetic to be discovered, has retained its popularity because of its safety, the quick recovery, and lack of after-effects which follow its use, and because it is the only inhalation anæsthetic in common use which is non explosive The safeness of N₂O is dependent upon its lack of potency It is the only anæsthetic which is administered with a lower percentage of oxygen than exists in the atmosphere Nitrous oxide given with 20 per cent of oxygen will not only not cause death, but will scarcely produce unconsciousness In contrast, evipan can cause death even when a patient is breathing 100 per cent oxygen , so can ether vapour or cyclopropane administered with over 50 per cent oxygen To anæsthetise an average patient with N₂O alone a certain amount of asphyxia must be deliberately induced , and, indeed, overdosage is nothing more nor less than an undesirable degree of asphyxia The sight of a cyanosed and possibly jactitating patient is so alarming that it prevents even the inexperienced anæsthetist from being too venturesome with this anæsthetic Quick recovery after N₂O anæsthesia and freedom from after-effects are due to the rapidity with which the oxygen lack element of the anæsthetic is alleviated as soon as the mask is removed from the face

Useful as N₂O is, it has its limitations and these are imposed also by the factor responsible for its safeness, i e its lack of potency This gas alone cannot provide good muscular relaxation, nor is it potent enough to subdue a markedly anæsthetic-resistant patient unless he has been strongly premedicated or unless the oxygen intake is reduced

so much that asphyxial movements make operating difficult   Nevertheless N₂O is quite suitable for almost all minor operations, and is the anæsthetic of choice for dental surgery in the ambulatory procedure

Successful administration of N₂O depends largely on the experience and technical skill of the anæsthetist, but proper premedication is also important, and sometimes supplementary anæsthesia with pentothal, evipan, or ethyl chloride is necessary   Success certainly does not depend upon the use of any particular machine   Perusal of commercial advertising literature suggests that the most important factor is to purchase a certain machine, after which all that remains to be done is to apply the nose piece, adjust the oxygen percentage as directed, turn on the flow of gases and allow the dentist to proceed   Some makers state that a required depth of anæsthesia can be obtained by giving a specified mixture of N₂O and O₂ for a prescribed length of time   It is disappointing that the apparatus does not include an automatic forceps which would deal equally well with loose incisors and impacted wisdom teeth !   Reliance should not be placed on a machine merely because it is accurate, elaborate, and expensive   Even the best machines are only a mechanical convenience to the anæsthetist   In the dental surgery good anæsthesia can be obtained by the use of an apparatus consisting of a cylinder of gas, a rebreathing bag, rubber tubing and a nose piece   If the anæsthetist cannot obtain satisfactory results using such apparatus it is very unlikely that he will obtain better by means of the more complicated machines on the market

This book refers to the use of N₂O only in minor surgery, and the particular emphasis laid upon the weakness of the anæsthetic properties of this agent may be thought to imply that it can never be used successfully for major surgery   Such use is indeed possible, but to obtain good results the effect of N₂O must be reinforced by powerful premedication, by basal anæsthesia or by some other method of reducing the patient to a   C3   condition, e g by the   secondary saturation " technique of McKesson [1,2]   The use of N₂O for major surgery is fraught with disappointment if the technique is not carried out boldly, and, if the anæsthetist is inexperienced, with danger if it is

The essentials of the use of N₂O for minor surgery will be dealt with here by describing its application in the dental surgery

APPARATUS FOR USE IN THE DENTAL SURGERY

The apparatus described in this chapter is that which we have used for some years both in private and hospital practice

The handle of Macintosh's bag is placed out of centre so that the

Fig 66

Fig 67

bag will balance when lifted   When the two side catches are released
and the lid raised the front face to which the cylinders are attached
falls down

Fig 68

Fig 69

The case is equipped with three N₂O cylinders each holding
50 gallons and one O₂ cylinder of 15 gallons capacity   When the tray

is lifted the apparatus is withdrawn from behind the leather partition

After the tray is replaced the apparatus is ready for use   These preparations can be completed within ten seconds of the side catches being released

Fig 70

The contents of the tray are

    1 set of 6 Trewby props
    2 de Pass props
    1 central swivel prop
    2 Ferguson gags
    6 average size bleached, coarse-meshed, marine sponges with tapes attached
    6 mouth packs
    1 tongue forceps
    2 bottles of ethyl chloride

The oxygen bag is contained within the bag for N_2O Unless the O_2 bag is over-distended, the pressures within the two bags will be approximately the same

When the handle of the Macintosh's mixing chamber[3]

is in the position illustrated, the O_2 bag is cut off and the N_2O port is fully open   As the handle is moved upwards, an increasing percentage of O_2 is admitted   When the handle is in the half way position 20 per cent oxygen is admitted and in its uppermost position (dotted line) the O_2 port is fully open and that of N_2O closed   This arrangement permits fine graduation of the O_2 scale up to 20 per cent

Fig 71 —Macintosh's mixing chamber

Trewby s nose piece is made of metal   A rubber rim may be attached   but we do not use this since some patients find the smell of it objectionable   Care must be taken not to press the nose piece

FIG 2.

FIG 73

down heavily on the bridge of the nose   because this may cause pain after recovery   The mouth piece should be of rubber so that a gas tight junction can be ensured even in patients with hollow cheeks   The nose piece is in permanent communication with the mixing chamber, but the inlet to the mouth piece is automatically closed or opened as the latter is rotated away from the mouth or forwards to cover it   The mouth should be covered only if the patient is mouth breathing   Once nasal respiration is established (p 200) the mouth piece is rotated away leaving the mouth free for the operator

The cylinders — The cylinder valve may have either a coarse or a fine thread   When a cylinder the valve of which has a coarse thread is turned on the gas may rush out with an explosive noise disconcerting to the patient operator and anæsthetist   Valves with fine threads (p 309) are essential if a smooth flow of gas is to be obtained   With these the foot can easily control the rate of issue of the gas from the cylinder   Nitrous oxide and oxygen do not deteriorate with keeping but cylinders of these gases should be stored in a place remote from

hot pipes or furnaces because any rise of temperature may increase
the internal pressure so much that they may burst Although the valve
will not leak if it has been properly turned off a N_2O cylinder which
has been stored for some time should be weighed before use to verify
that it has not become empty as a result of a slow leakage

   Advice on the use of the apparatus—Before anæsthesia is
begun the anæsthetist should make it part of his routine practice to
observe the following points

   1 The apparatus should be inspected to be sure that it is spotlessly
clean that the bag and cylinders are properly connected and that the
equipment in the tray is complete

   2 Anæsthesia should never be begun when a cylinder in the
apparatus is known to be empty The anæsthetist should be satisfied
he has sufficient gas to conclude the anæsthetic Fear that the gas
may run short disturbs the anæsthetist's self assurance and an
attempt to economise gas may ruin an anæsthetic

   3 At the end of an operation any cylinder which has been emptied
should immediately be replaced by a full one The apparatus is then
always ready for use on another case

   4 Full cylinders when delivered have a complete paper band
gummed round the middle When an empty cylinder is replaced by a
full one the band is at once scraped off the one in use

   5 The anæsthetic should always be begun from the cylinder partly
used—i e from the one with the torn band—and this cylinder used
until it is empty In the apparatus illustrated (fig 69) the anæsthetist
then always has over 100 gallons of gas available at the beginning of
every operation

   6 The fibre washers between the cylinder and the gas union become
compressed and lose their resiliency through constant use They
should be changed from time to time to prevent leakage of gas when
the cylinder is turned on

   7 The footkeys of the cylinders should be turned slowly to verify
that the valves are working sweetly A gentle flow of gas should
emerge from the nose piece before this is put over the patient's nose
It is embarrassing to adjust the nose piece then to turn on the footkey
and find that gas does not escape until as one continues to turn the
key a large flow of gas suddenly commences with much noise

   8 The position of the indicating handle on the mixing chamber
should be verified If it has been left after the previous case in a
position to deliver 100 per cent oxygen and its position is not changed
before the N_2O supply is turned on the bag may become very distended
with N_2O which cannot escape before the error is noticed

9 The cylinders should be arranged so that they are within easy reach of the left foot It is difficult to control a footkey from an awkward angle, and an attempt to do so may result in delivery of an uneven flow of gas In addition, the difficulty of turning off or increasing the flow of gas may divert the anæsthetist's attention from the patient to the cylinders

COMMON ERRORS IN THE ADMINISTRATION OF NITROUS OXIDE AND THEIR AVOIDANCE

The specialist with considerable experience in anæsthetics encounters various difficulties so often that he learns how they arise and how they may be avoided or overcome The general practitioner who gives nitrous oxide only occasionally may not recognise the reasons for failure in a particular case, and therefore cannot learn much from it This chapter includes information found to be in our experience of practical value in providing smooth anæsthesia and good working conditions for the dentist

Failure to maintain an unobstructed airway throughout anæsthesia is the most frequent cause of difficulties with N_2O as with other agents Every respiration should be seen or heard , if more than one breath is missed the cause should be investigated and the operation interrupted until normal breathing is resumed Observance of this rule would prevent the development of most of the alarming situations in N_2O anæsthesia in the dental surgery

A beginner often provides " swinging " anæsthesia, i e instead of maintaining a steady level of anæsthesia, he first so deprives the patient of O_2 that deep cyanosis and jactitation occur, and then, becoming alarmed by this picture, administers too much O_2 thereby making a quick change from deep to very light anæsthesia Alternation between deep and light anæsthesia continues throughout the operation Such anæsthesia leads the dentist into difficulties , jactitating movements hinder his work, but if he is in a hurry or is inexperienced he may try to extract because at this stage the patient is obviously unconscious However, when the anæsthetist " swings " to light anæsthesia the surgical stimuli usually initiate mouth-breathing which leads rapidly to still lighter anæsthesia The beginner then abruptly deprives the patient entirely of O_2 once more until signs of asphyxia reappear

This error occurs because the anæsthetist does not make changes in the anæsthetic mixture early enough It can be avoided if it is

13

remembered that the patient s response to an anæsthetic mixture is not instantaneous The latent period must be allowed for In nitrous-oxide anæsthesia it is about 10 seconds Even if oxygen or air is given instead of N_2O at a time when the patient is already cyanosed he will continue to show signs of oxygen-lack for about 10 seconds, i e until the oxygen has diffused into the capillaries of the lungs and has circulated peripherally There is a similar lag in the other direction Hence, if oxygen is continued until signs of light anæsthesia appear, even though the supply of O_2 is then cut off, anæsthesia will lighten further, sometimes embarrassingly, because of the O_2 still in the lungs The anæsthetist therefore has to learn to forecast at any time what the patient s condition will be in a further 10 seconds and to make suitable adjustments to meet an oncoming change For instance, during induction of anæsthesia he must not wait to introduce O_2 until asphyxial signs appear, but must add a suitable quantity at a time he considers to be about 10 seconds before asphyxial signs would develop if the unchanged mixture were continued The same principle is applied when signs of lightening anæsthesia appear

This of course does not apply when the anæsthetist gives oxygen because he is alarmed about the patient s condition Its administration should then be continued until there is evidence of its having entered the circulation

PREVENTION OF DISCOMFORT DURING INDUCTION OF ANÆSTHESIA

One of the commonest complaints after an anæsthetic has been given badly is that there was a feeling of suffocation during induction This exceedingly unpleasant sensation can easily be prevented There is a common misapprehension that it is due to lack of oxygen in the inspired air That this is not so is shown by these facts a degree of oxygen-lack which leads in a normal individual to cyanosis can be produced without discomfort by careful administration of N_2O alone, and yet a feeling of suffocation can be produced by administering pure O_2 under pressure The reader can easily verify for himself the principal causes of a feeling of suffocation These are as follows

1 Interference with the Mechanics of Respiration

(a) Occlusion of the mouth by the anæsthetist's hand or by a Paterson s mouth-cover [4] when the patient attempts to mouth breathe This practice is indefensible An apprehensive patient tends naturally

to breathe through his mouth during induction of anæsthesia, and if he is prevented from doing so and a feeling of suffocation thereby produced struggling becomes instinctive and a smooth induction impossible This cause of a feeling of suffocation can be verified by breathing through the mouth and then placing the hand firmly over the open mouth so making attempts at inspiration ineffective It is well appreciated when testing the efficiency of the outlet valve of a service respirator by occluding the inlet valve and then attempting to inspire if the valve is efficient the effort is ineffective and provokes an oppressive feeling of suffocation

FIG 74 —A mouth-cover similar to Paterson's in use The one way valve allows of expiration and prevents inspiration

FIG 75 —The mouth covered by the anæsthetist's hand

Neither of these methods should ever be used to make a patient breathe through his nose

A nose piece is of course, used throughout, and for a patient who is mouth breathing a mouth piece should be used which delivers N_2O so that there is no resistance to his attempts to inspire Trewby's apparatus (p 191) is the best available If the administrator has a nose piece but no mouth piece, he can induce with an ordinary full face piece until surgical anæsthesia is reached and nasal respiration (p 200) established The face-piece then can be

replaced by the nose piece and the anæsthetic continued with N₂O given nasally

(*b*) Delivery of gas under considerable positive pressure with the nose piece or face piece closely applied and with the expiratory valve closed   This produces a feeling of distension and suffocation, independent of the nature of the gas given   Discomfort is especially marked during expiration   The discomfort of expiration against pressure is appreciated when testing the inlet valve of a service respirator   The outlet valve is then occluded and an attempt made to expire   If the inlet valve is functioning satisfactorily, air cannot pass out and expiration is impeded   The suffocating sensation is as marked as from efforts to inspire from a bag already empty
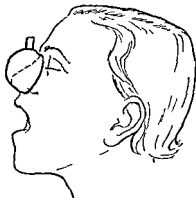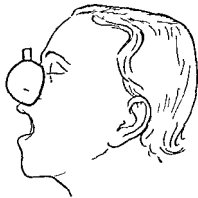
FIG 76   FIG 77

(*c*) Occlusion of the nares by the lower border of the nose piece (fig 76)   This can occur if the nose-piece is allowed to rise a little instead of being kept down on the upper lip   Good advice to beginners is " Keep the chin up and the nose piece down   (fig 77)

2 Inhalation of Pungent Vapours

A suffocating sensation from this cause is most marked from strong ether vapour given early during the induction of anæsthesia This factor, which has no application in the administration of N₂O in the dental surgery, need not be further considered here

3. Psychological Disturbances

Many people feel suffocated if even a detached face-piece, which permits free inspiration and expiration, is placed *tightly* over the nose and mouth For these patients an explanation that there will be no resistance to respiration may not suffice, and if anæsthesia is to be induced with N₂O, the nose-piece should be held off the nose until con sciousness is lost   The best method, however, is to induce anæsthesia with pentothal so that nothing need be put over the face until consciousness is lost

Fig 78

INDUCTION OF ANÆSTHESIA WITH NITROUS OXIDE GIVEN NASALLY

" As goes induction, so goes the anæsthetic " This saying em-phasises the importance of aiming at smooth induction   It is well known that if a person inadvertently finds himself in an atmosphere devoid of O₂ for instance at the bottom of a well or in a coal-mine or at the bottom of a ship, he suddenly loses consciousness without any preceding unpleasant sensations   If the air in a room could be replaced either suddenly or gradually by N₂O, the occupants would become unconscious without realising that anything untoward was happen-ing   The perfect induction of anæsthesia, as far as possible, should be equally smooth   Usually the patient closes his eyes as soon as he is settled, and if the nose-piece is then held about ½ inch away from his nose, and not lowered until consciousness is lost, he may not even realise that he is inhaling the anæsthetic   He then re-covers consciousness to express surprise that the operation has completed " because," he asserts, " nothing has yet been put over my face "

However unemotional and self-confident a patient may be, when

he submits to anæsthesia he feels that he is giving himself into the anæsthetist's care and is grateful for sympathetic reassurance

Fig 79

As induction is begun, the anæsthetist, both by touch and speech, makes contact with the patient and maintains it until consciousness is lost During induction, the anæsthetist rests his left hand lightly on the patient's left shoulder and says " Now I want you to relax these muscles and then you will go to sleep more comfortably ' When this remark is made, the shoulder girdle will often drop and the patient relax This change is commonly seen in the nervous patient who sits down in the dental chair with his muscles taut

During induction the patient is particularly suggestible The anæsthetist can encourage the idea of relaxation which should be instilled from the beginning, and should repeatedly assure the patient that he is doing well Anæsthesia usually can be induced smoothly in a calm patient who sits naturally in a relaxed position in the chair, similarly, it is found that if a patient can be made to relax, he becomes more peaceful and induction is correspondingly facilitated The anæsthetist should keep up, in a matter-of-fact voice, an almost continuous monologue calculated to be encouraging The anæsthetist may feel that his talk is monotonous since he repeats it every time he gives an anæsthetic It is not, however, monotonous for the patient, who is made to realise that he is having undivided attention Frequent use of such words as ' relax," " sleep," and ' armchair " is an aid in *accomplishing peaceful induction* *It must be remembered that the patient is undergoing an unfamiliar, and sometimes an unpleasant, experience,* which, at the back of his mind, may well be associated with thoughts of the possibility of death The anæsthetist should continue the monologue until the patient is sound asleep, for if the latter is aware of its cessation he may be disturbed, thinking that this indicates that the operation is about to commence There is a

critical moment in induction of anæsthesia, particularly with N_2O, when a little encouragement, a kind word, and a pat on the shoulder will make all the difference between struggling and violence, and quiet induction This period may extend only for the time taken by one or two breaths

If the patient begins to struggle during induction, he should be opposed only as much as may be necessary The nurse should not take the initiative and forcibly hold the patient down before there is need for restraint, since struggling then appears as a natural response In any case restraint need be concentrated only on keeping the patient's hands still, so that he cannot reach up and pull the apparatus off his face

The last sense to be lost during induction of anæsthesia is that of hearing , it is also the first to return during recovery, so that unguarded remarks should not be made during induction or as the patient returns to consciousness Before surgical anæsthesia is established a patient passes through a period during which he may respond to auditory stimuli of which he has afterwards no recollection For instance, if the anæsthetist informs the dentist that he can begin, the patient, previously motionless, may raise his hand as if to indicate that he is not yet unconscious, though on recovery he does not remember the remark or his response to it The existence of this state can be demonstrated experimentally

> Gas is given nasally and an onlooker counts the seconds aloud The anæsthetist asks at irregular intervals, ' Can you hear me now ? ' and the subject responds by raising his hand Considerable discrepancy will be found between the last number the subject remembers hearing and that at which he last responded

During induction the anæsthetist and dentist should not converse, nor should there be any rattling of instruments or obvious preparations for the operation In particular the dentist must not stand ready over the patient, forceps in hand, anxious to start at the earliest possible moment, and for nervous patients who often keep their eyes open during induction, the dentist should make a special point of standing with his back to the patient so that the latter does not feel the dentist is hurried or waiting the earliest opportunity to begin extractions

Just before induction is begun, nitrous oxide is turned on gradually and the pressure in the breathing bag increased until a gentle flow of gas emerges from the nose-piece which is lowered to

within $\frac{1}{2}$ inch of the patient's nose. Positive pressure of N_2O is essential since otherwise the concentration of gas over the nose would not be high enough to produce unconsciousness. Ideally the nose piece should not touch the face until consciousness is lost because many patients dislike having something put over the face. The slight gap between nose piece and nose is also of importance since it allows any excess pressure in the bag to be dissipated and thus prevents the feeling of suffocation which otherwise would arise if the expiratory valve were not adequately open.

Except for a very frail or an anæmic patient it is not desirable to give oxygen until anæsthesia is attained. Nitrous oxide alone is no less pleasant to inhale than a mixture of N_2O and O_2 and the latter means an unnecessary prolongation of the induction period which may be unpleasant for the patient. It is advisable to hasten the robust individual through the period of induction and potential delirium as rapidly as possible and even after reaching the desired stage of anæsthesia it is wise to continue O_2 deprivation for a few seconds before lightening anæsthesia to the desired level by addition of O to the inhaled mixture.

ESTABLISHMENT OF NASAL RESPIRATION

Maintenance of surgical anæsthesia by means of nitrous oxide given nasally allows the dental surgeon free access to the mouth. This method sometimes referred to as continuous gas is now almost universally employed for dental work even when only short anæsthesia is required. If this type of anæsthesia is to be successful the patient's respirations must be entirely nasal. Those unfamiliar with this method frequently express surprise or even disbelief that it is possible to induce and maintain anæsthesia by nasal administration of N_2O when the patient's mouth is propped open. Induction with a nose-piece is in fact just as simple for the anæsthetist as with a face piece and is far more pleasant for the patient. If mouth breathing occurs and the anæsthetist does not know how to abolish it the administration will be a failure. He must learn therefore the causes of mouth breathing and how to ensure a reversion to nose breathing should it occur.

Mouth breathing a nervous phenomenon is a response to fear or excitement and is part of the fight or flight mechanism fundamentally its purpose is to improve the ventilation of the lungs. Removal of apprehension is therefore an essential measure conducive to nasal respiration. Three facts should be appreciated (i) at rest the average

person breathes through his nose   (ii) in anæsthesia mouth breathing, if it occurs at all, is seen only during induction or in anæsthesia too light for the operation being performed , (iii) when the stage of surgical anæsthesia is reached, respiration is entirely nasal   If properly dealt with, nine out of ten patients can be persuaded to nose breathe continuously from the beginning   It is not possible to be sure whether the patient is breathing through his nose or not until the nose piece is lowered on to the face

A clinical observation made by one of us (R R M) is that expiration through the nose indicates that the patient is also inspiring through the nose   We have found this to be a valuable sign   By using a nose piece fitted with a suitable expiratory valve expirations through it can be heard and the anæsthetist can then tell when the patient is breathing in through the nose   Normally a person breathes in and out through his nose   Under emotional stress he may breathe in and out of his mouth, or in through his nose and out through his mouth, but he never breathes in through his mouth and out through his nose _The sound of the expiratory valve on the nose-piece in action is therefore an indication that the patient is also inspiring through his nose_

If at the beginning of induction a patient is told ' Breathe through your nose,' he will as often as not take a deep inspiration through the mouth !   If, however, he is told " Blow the gas away through your nose," he readily complies with this instruction and the nasal expiration is automatically followed by nasal inspiration so that " to and fro' nasal respiration is quickly established without the patient realising it

A curious psychological fact is that a patient often fails to co operate in following instructions if told that his own comfort thereby will be increased, whereas he is very likely to carry them out if told that they facilitate the anæsthetist's work   Thus, ' Now, I want you to help me by blowing the gas away through your nose   It makes my work so very much easier if you will do this for me   is more likely to be successful than " I want you to blow this gas away through the nose , it will make things more comfortable for you "

If the expiratory valve is not heard when the nose-piece is lowered, it generally indicates that the patient is breathing in and out of his mouth   Mouth-breathing during induction may occur at the beginning, when it is often possible to establish nose-breathing by giving a few simple instructions, or it may occur in an apprehensive patient just as consciousness is lost, and he is then unable to respond to instructions   When it occurs early the patient should be told to breathe out through his nose , if he obeys, nasal respiration will be

established without the use of the mouth piece As soon as the patient
is carrying out the instructions properly, he should be encouraged by
being told, " That is magnificent , you have made my work so much
easier Now give six blows through the nose " The expirations are
counted, "One, two, three," etc , during which time anæsthesia
becomes established

If the patient is so unco-operative that he does not follow instruc-
tions, or if he first follows them but later reverts to mouth-breathing
just as consciousness is about to be lost, the attempt to induce
anæsthesia by nasal administration alone should be abandoned The
mouth-piece should be applied at once, and not removed until surgical
anæsthesia is established, *when it will be found that respiration is nasal*
Gas should be led to the mouth by means of the mouth piece as described
As a rule, the patient is breathing deeply, so that anæsthesia is rapidly
induced When gas is delivered through the nose and mouth in this
way, positive pressure should be increased during inspiration to prevent
any leakage of air inwards due to the nose- or mouth-piece not fitting
well This can be assured by pressing with the knee on the rebreathing
bag during inspiration Any excess of gas is dissipated through the
expiratory valve, so that the pressure does not become uncomfortably
high

Another method of producing surgical anæsthesia in face of
persistent mouth-breathing, and one specially useful in highly resistant
subjects, is to leave the nose-piece *in situ* and turn up the napkin on
the patient's chest so that part of it covers the mouth, and on it to
spray ethyl chloride until anæsthesia is established , the patient by
then will have reverted to nose breathing, whereupon the anæsthetic
is continued with the nose-piece only

When the mouth-piece of the Trewby apparatus is applied, the
expiratory valve on the nose-piece is at once heard to be functioning.
This noise is then not a sign of nose-breathing, since the valve serves
both nose-piece and mouth-piece As soon as the anæsthetist thinks
that nasal respiration is re-established the mouth-piece is withdrawn ,
if the sound of the expiratory valve still continues his opinion is
confirmed If the patient is found still to be breathing through the
mouth, however, the mouth piece is at once reapplied and anæsthesia
deepened until, on withdrawing the mouth-piece and rotating it out of
the way, nasal respiration is found to be completely established Not
until then should the operator be allowed to begin

Although it is seldom necessary to use the mouth-piece, the anæs-
thetist should lose no time in applying it when its use does become
necessary Mouth-breathing can occur at any stage of induction if

anything is done which alarms the patient (e g if the position of the chair is altered), or it can occur spontaneously in a nervous patient Once surgical anæsthesia is established, however, whether respiration remains nasal or becomes oral depends on the relation of the depth of unconsciousness to the severity of the surgical stimulus   Nitrous-oxide anæsthesia lightens rapidly if too much O_2 is given, and the anæsthetist must be on the watch for any reversion to mouth breathing   Such a change is appreciated only during the administration of an anæsthetic nasally, and it is then of particular importance   If, during the course of a dental operation under nasal N_2O, anæsthesia is inadvertently allowed to lighten and the patient begins to breathe through his mouth, he will rapidly regain consciousness as a result of inspiring air   To prevent this the operation must be suspended at once while the mouth is covered with the mouth piece until nasal respiration is re-established   after which, provided anæsthesia is kept deep enough, the operation can be continued indefinitely

The imminence of mouth breathing during an operation may be indicated by an expiratory wail, by movements of the head or limbs during extraction or by other signs of light anæsthesia   If mouth-breathing has not actually begun it is sometimes possible at this stage, by delivering the N_2O under increased pressure, to deepen anæsthesia again without having to stop the operation and cover the mouth   If, however, the dentist continues to apply strong surgical stimuli it may be impossible to prevent the onset of mouth breathing   If he should then have ' just one more try " at the extraction, anæsthesia may lighten sufficiently for the patient to become almost unmanageable or conscious   At the first suggestion of mouth breathing a pause of a few seconds by the operator will allow the patient to be settled to a steady level of anæsthesia again and will make all the difference between a successful anæsthetic and a fiasco   Team work is essential, and the dentist must always defer to the anæsthetist's request to suspend the operation until nasal respiration is re established

The anæsthetist should always be prepared to deal with mouth-breathing either during induction or light anæsthesia, and he should learn to recognise the types of patient who may give trouble in this respect   These are

1 The patient who keeps his eyes open when the nose-piece is applied

2 The patient who breathes deeply and rapidly at the beginning of induction, often hunching up his shoulders in the process

3 The patient who begins nose breathing regularly but then hesitates and takes one or two rapid breaths

4 The patient, generally a woman, who makes an expiratory wail
during induction

When any of the above four signs are noticed the anæsthetist must
be ready instantly to cover the mouth

The anæsthetist must be prepared to meet occasionally various
rarer difficulties which disturb induction even more than does mouth-
breathing These are usually due to extreme apprehension and are
often avoidable by premedication When they arise, the action taken
has to be suited to the individual case for the conduct of which no
set rules can be laid down In some instances it is advisable to postpone
the operation and to arrange for ample premedication to be given
before the patient comes to the surgery on a later occasion

The patient, for instance, may move his head away or become
hysterical when the nose-piece is applied The nose piece should not
then be forced on him or a violent struggle may be precipitated, or,
in a nervous woman or excitable child, even screaming At this early
stage it is much better not to attempt to adjust the nose-piece against
the patient's will but to reason with him, showing him how he can
assist in making the operation successful

The patient at first may be co operative but may attempt to pull
the apparatus off after a few breaths have been taken He may
be unconscious already and beyond the stage where he can understand
and obey instructions, the anæsthetist must then decide whether to
stop and reason with him or to force the anæsthetic on him the
decision being determined by the degree of unconsciousness which
the anæsthetist considers the patient has reached

Sometimes during induction if respiration has been deep and rapid
for a sufficient length of time so much carbon dioxide is washed out of
the lungs that a period of apnœa follows which may give rise to anxiety
if the anæsthetist does not realise its cause, and that normal breathing
will be resumed as soon as the CO_2 concentration in the alveolar air
rises again to such a level as to stimulate the respiratory centre
Apnœa therefore occurs in patients who breathe quickly and deeply
during induction, thinking that this assists the anæsthetist They
should be told there is no hurry and that breathing should be perfectly
natural Unduly rapid respiration occurs also in the very apprehensive
patient, generally a woman, who begins, early in induction, to breathe
at the rate of about sixty per minute Such manifestation of extreme
nervousness usually cannot be controlled by reasoning with the
patient As respiration here is entirely oral the mouth must be
covered from the beginning, both nose- and mouth-piece must be
applied firmly, and the pressure in the bag increased (to prevent air

leaking into the circuit) until the patient is deeply unconscious by which time the rate of respiration will have returned to normal This rapid respiration is as a rule, very superficial and does not then lead to apnœa although it will do so if it is at all deep and continues for any length of time

A small problem but one of practical importance is presented by the patient with a moustache since this may give rise to difficulties because of air leaks during both induction and maintenance of nasal anæsthesia It is notoriously difficult to get the nose piece to fit closely on such a patient and the consequent leaking of air alongside it tends to prolong induction and to disturb the maintenance of anæsthesia Difficulties can be overcome by delivering the gas under positive pressure so that air leaks cannot occur In fact adequate positive pressure in such a case is the equivalent of an airtight nose-piece

MAINTENANCE OF ANÆSTHESIA WITH NITROUS OXIDE GIVEN NASALLY

The signs which indicate when the patient is ready to be operated on are described in Chapter VII Strange as it may seem it appears necessary to add that crying screaming and struggling proclaim unmistakably that surgical anæsthesia has not yet been reached !

Oxygen should not be added to the anæsthetic mixture unless the patient is anæmic until surgical anæsthesia is established Oxygen is then admitted to a sufficient extent to maintain a steady level of anæsthesia The operation should not be begun immediately surgical anæsthesia is reached, since the anæsthetist should first discover by trial roughly what is the correct mixture necessary to maintain anæsthesia at the desired level To prevent waste of time while this trial is being made the strap can be tightened round the patient s pelvis and the mouth packed off with a sponge or pack

There is no rule-of-thumb guide to the mixture of gas and oxygen which a patient should be given The only guide is his response to the mixture he is already being given Nitrous oxide with, say 12 per cent oxygen may cause respiratory depression in an anæmic person yet may scarcely produce unconsciousness in a plethoric individual The degree of anoxæmia by which N_2O must be reinforced to produce unconsciousness no more follows a set rule than does the amount of whisky necessary to produce drunkenness In both cases the result produced depends on the individual reactions of the patient Whether nitrous oxide and oxygen or nitrous oxide and air is given is immaterial

Nitrous Oxide and Air

We find it convenient during the course of anæsthesia to admit air by pushing the nose piece forward at the same time reducing the gas pressure in the bag   The amount of air given by this method cannot be measured accurately but with experience in combining these two actions the anæsthetist finds it easy to maintain long and even anæsthesia
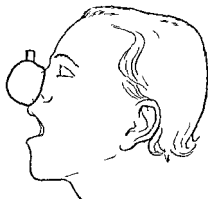
FIG 80   FIG 81

Throughout anæsthesia the nose piece is kept in position by steady ing the tube between thumb and forefinger (fig 80)   The jaw is held forward with the remaining fingers and the head steadied between the palms of the hands   Fig 81 shows the effect of pushing the thumb and forefinger forwards thus raising the nose piece to admit air   An advantage of this method is that the amount of O_2 admitted can be varied as desired by a small movement of the fingers without relaxing the firm hold on the patient's jaw

Nitrous Oxide and Oxygen

These two gases can be mixed in any desired proportion by adjusting the lever on the mixing chamber (p 190)   The nose piece is kept down in position   The disadvantage of this method is that the adjustment of the anæsthetic mixture occupies one of the anæsthetist's hands at a time when he may want both hands for steadying the head or for assisting the dentist in other ways

The above two methods may be combined with advantage   About

6 per cent of O_2 is given continuously with the N_2O, the nose-piece being kept down in position unless more O, is required, when it can be pushed forward and the pressure of gases reduced so that air is admitted, as described above

Keeping the Airway Clear

This extremely important duty of the anæsthetist is accentuated in every text book on anæsthesia, but the subject is often dismissed without any advice being given to show how it should be accomplished The necessity for a clear airway in order to ensure an adequate O_2 supply is obvious   Apart from this, inhalation anæsthesia relies on the continuance of normal respiratory movements to carry the anæsthetic drug into the lungs, whence, by the process of diffusion, it passes into the blood stream   Maintenance of smooth anæsthesia therefore depends on maintenance of a clear airway   In dental anæsthesia the cause *par excellence* of respiratory obstruction is the pushing of the lower jaw backwards or downwards by the dentist so that the tongue is pushed against the posterior pharyngeal wall   This happens most commonly during extraction of lower teeth, particularly molars, and is only rarely the cause of obstruction during operations on the upper jaw   The common causes of respiratory obstruction in the dental chair, their prevention, and treatment are discussed in the first few pages of Chapter XXVI

It is a counsel of perfection that respiration should not be obstructed even for a single breath, but in practice we are in agreement with those who consider that, provided the anæsthetist is experienced and can at will correct the obstruction, this rule need not always be strictly adhered to   Although we do not recommend the practice, we have on occasions deliberately exploited, for a few seconds, respiratory obstruction caused by the dentist as a means of *decreasing the O_2* intake, in order to deepen anæsthesia in a robust individual in whom anæsthesia showed signs of lightening   We have also permitted obstruction to persist for one or two breaths in order not to interrupt the dentist when he is having particular difficulty in applying his forceps to a lower molar   In the latter case, when the obstruction is relieved, care must be taken that the patient's first breath is one rich in air or oxygen

Interference with free respiration can occur from mucus or blood gravitating backwards into the pharynx   This is particularly liable to happen if the head is too far extended   If anæsthesia is deep, the mucus or blood may be inhaled, during light anæsthesia the irritation they produce on the laryngeal and pharyngeal mucous

membranes will prevent smooth anæsthesia, some degree of laryngo-spasm may develop or the patient may become restless or retch

Fig 82

An accumulation of saliva or blood in the pharynx is best dealt with by leaning the patient forward as far as possible for a few seconds to allow any collection in the mouth to run out   The lower jaw is held forward so that respiration is not interrupted   The posterior pharyngeal wall should not be swabbed, since this may initiate reflex vomiting, and in any case will irritate the mucous membrane and lead to renewed secretion of mucus

If a patient vomits during the course of an operation he should be put into the same position to ensure free drainage from the mouth It is always a disappointment for him to wake up to find the extractions have not been completed, and if the situation is handled correctly the operation need not be abandoned on account of vomiting   The nose-piece is removed to allow anæsthesia to lighten sufficiently for the patient to regain his cough reflex and so clear out his mouth Before consciousness is regained the nose-piece is lowered again and very light anæsthesia maintained   As soon as vomiting has finished, the patient is placed upright again, and the mouth is examined to make sure it is clear of debris, a fresh sponge is inserted, anæsthesia

deepened, and the operation recommenced Sometimes a second bout of vomiting follows after a short interval After this has been dealt with in the same way, the patient usually settles down peacefully, and when he recovers consciousness may be quite unaware that he has vomited

Advantage should be taken of any pause in the operation to make sure that the mouth is as dry as possible and free from any foreign bodies The sponge should be replaced by a fresh one if during the course of an operation it becomes soaked in blood and mucus, and no longer serves as an efficient protection

Co-operation between Dentist and Anæsthetist

Just as smoothness in induction is achieved by co-operation between patient and anæsthetist, maintenance of smooth anæsthesia and attainment of good operating conditions depend on good team work between dentist and anæsthetist Unless both the dentist and anæsthetist have confidence in each other and work in harmony they are not likely to achieve much success Any decision based on the depth of anæsthesia, as to when the operation should be started, interrupted or terminated is one solely for the anæsthetist In this he should never be questioned and his decision should be acted on at once Many an anæsthesia has been ruined because the dentist has begun to extract before the anæsthetist wanted him to and even more because the dentist has failed to stop *immediately* in the course of an operation on request The chief reasons for such a request are (i) That anæsthesia is too light and respiration shows signs of becoming oral If the mouth is not covered up *at once* until nasal respiration is re-established, the patient, particularly if resistant, will soon get out of control (ii) That anæsthesia is too deep (iii) That respiration is obstructed The anæsthetist must not on these occasions be diffident about interrupting the operation even at a time inconvenient to the surgeon The interests of the patient must come first and no other consideration can be allowed to outweigh this obvious fact

The anæsthetist, besides providing smooth anæsthesia, should keep the patient's head in the best position for the dentist and should steady it throughout He should keep the airway clear, steady the jaw, retract the tongue, and keep the field of operation as clear as possible by mopping away blood with a sponge, and so allow the identification of a root before forceps are applied Lastly, the anæsthetist should stand in such a position that he is out of the dentist's way and yet throughout can keep an eye on the patient's face or on the operation The anæsthetist should relieve the dentist of as much responsibility and anxiety as possible With a well given dental anæsthetic there

need be no hurry at all and the dentist should always feel that he has ample time He should be steadied down or encouraged as occasion arises Advice such as ' Take it easy for a moment or two " or ' Have a minute's rest," if given at the right moment, may be valuable Experience shows that where a dentist takes a few minutes in loosening a tooth his arm becomes tired, his actions less expert and in putting a little extra force on the tooth at this stage he may easily break it If the anæsthetist thinks that the dentist is reaching this state it is best to suggest a thirty second rest , the dentist returns refreshed and frequently accomplishes the extraction successfully The anæsthetist should make it his duty to see that the patient's clothing is not soiled by blood and saliva dripping out of the mouth during a long operation These sometimes drain along the tape attached to the sponge or mouthpack, and care should be taken to see that this does not project below the towel on the patient's chest The anæsthetist often can prevent soiling of the clothing by folding the towel into such a position that it will mop up any blood or saliva which trickles down, or he may even find it necessary temporarily to suspend the operation, mop the mouth, particularly the sulcus between tongue and jaw and change the sponge

POSITIONING THE HEAD TO ALLOW ACCESS TO SPECIAL TEETH

The difficulty of extraction is increased in the case of certain teeth by their situation The anæsthetist, by appropriately manœuvring the mandible can make the lower molar teeth and the upper third molar tooth more accessible to the dentist

If the lower jaw is not supported the airway becomes obstructed Apart from this it will be found difficult with the jaw in this position to apply forceps to the molar teeth, particularly the lower right ones

Fig 83

Extraction of Lower Teeth

For the extractions of all lower teeth the mandible must be steadied and pushed forward by pressure behind the angle The farther back the tooth the more will this slight dislocation forward of the mandible assist the application of forceps

The nose piece is steadied by the thumb and thenar eminence whilst the ring finger feels the pulsations in the external carotid artery

Fig 84

Extraction of Lower Molars

When molar teeth are to be extracted additional help is afforded if the anæsthetist slightly lowers the side of the jaw being operated on turns the chin in the opposite direction and r a i s e s i t slightly

When a left lower molar is to be extracted the mandible is pushed well forward the head is allowed to fall slightly to the left the chin turned to the right and slightly raised

Fig 85

For extractions of left lower molars the dentist usually stands in front of the patient but when extracting right lower molars he generally stands behind

FIG 86

When a right lower molar is to be extracted the anæsthetist remains on the left side of the patient but moves forward slightly His right arm still encircles the patient s neck and the jaw is steadied and pushed forward by both hands In this position the anæsthetist still has a clear view of the patient s face The head is allowed to fall to the right the chin turned to the left and slightly raised

Extraction of Upper Teeth

The head must be steadied between the palms of the hands and counter pressure may be applied by the anæsthetist s chest pressed on the top of the head
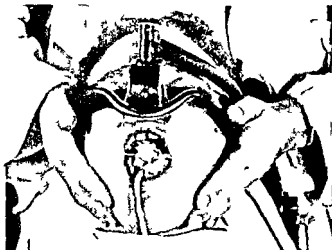
FIG 87

Extraction of Upper Third Molar Teeth
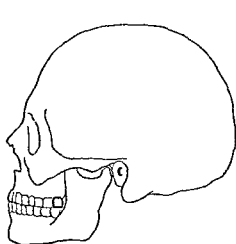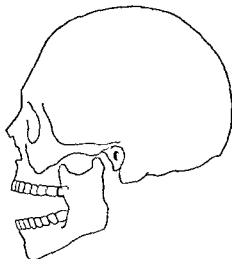
FIG 88   FIG 89

When the mouth is opened the head of the mandible slips forward on the eminentia articularis and the coronoid process of the ascending ramus of the mandible is brought into close proximity to the upper third molar tooth   The proximity of the coronoid process makes it difficult for the dentist to apply his forceps to the upper third molar tooth

FIG 90   FIG 91   FIG 92

Access is much improved if the anæsthetist pushes the mandible towards the side of the extractions thus displacing the coronoid process

If the upper third molar on the left side has to be extracted the anæsthetist with his right hand pushes the mandible to the left, thus

carrying the left ascending ramus away from the maxilla sufficiently to allow forceps to be applied to the tooth

In extracting upper incisor teeth, the dentist sometimes finds the nose piece is in his way if he wishes to get his fingers on the alveolar process under the nose   If the nose piece is pushed upwards by the dentist's manipulations gas must be delivered from it under marked positive pressure to prevent the leakage in of air which would otherwise occur

Fig 93   Fig 94

During the extraction of teeth from the upper jaw the lower lip can be pinched easily between the lower teeth and the forceps   We have seen the forceps pressing so heavily that a lower tooth has cut completely through the lip   If by any chance the lower lip is bruised or perforated in this way since the tissues in this region are very lax, a big hæmatoma can result   If pressure is applied quickly the production of a hæmatoma is prevented and because of the vascularity of the part, healing in this region is extremely rapid   The anæsthetist can prevent this accident by hooking his finger inside the lower lip and pulling it away as shown in fig 94

RECOVERY FROM NITROUS-OXIDE ANÆSTHESIA

When extractions are completed the patient should not be disturbed, but should be allowed to recover consciousness in his own good time He may pass into natural sleep and then should not be roused for a few minutes During the waking period patients are frequently capable of appreciating what is going on around them and realise that by exerting themselves a little they would become fully awake, but they are reluctant to make the effort and continue to sit quite still enjoying a comfortable lethargy Hearing, the last sense to disappear during induction, is the first to return Caution should therefore be exercised in any conversation which takes place while the patient is recovering consciousness and any observations should be encouraging, e g " That was very successful,' or ' He was a very good patient '

The prop should not be removed from the mouth until the patient is fully conscious It is alleged that if this is done the stimulus may be interpreted as that of extraction of a tooth We do not believe this confusion ever exists, but the advantage of leaving the prop in the mouth is that it prevents swallowing The sponge also should be left in the mouth till the patient is conscious enough to spit it out himself By absorbing blood and saliva, it prevents these from being swallowed or from running down the side of the mouth The patient should not be encouraged to spit out until he is fully conscious, or he may do so over the floor Similarly there is a danger of his reflexly drinking the mouth wash if this is held to his lips before he is fully conscious

Subjective Sensations on Recovery

Patients sensations on recovery show much variation After nitrous-oxide anæsthesia lasting say, 3 minutes, a patient by his remarks may reveal for how long he feels that he has been unconscious His idea of the duration of the anæsthesia enables a fairly accurate estimate to be made of his nervous or mental stability at the time of the operation The very healthy patient passes off the experience as though nothing had happened , for example, he will make no comment at all or, if interrogated, will say he has been asleep for only a few seconds , but the unstable individual is a long time before regaining a sense of normality, and may say he feels that he has been away for an hour or two, or longer, or even that he has been away for years and has " just come back to earth again ' In extreme cases patients suffer in varying degrees from a sense of unreality for some hours

Since for some people the state of anæsthesia has a mental association with death, remarks to the recovering patient such as " Now you are coming back to earth " or " It is all over " are unwise   Especially after long N₂O anæsthesia an introspective patient may for some time find it difficult to orientate himself, and remarks such as these do not help him   A gentle pat on the back and a cheerful ' Well done ' encourage quick recovery   In general, the patient should not be told of it if he has been a difficult subject for anæsthesia, because the knowledge may make him apprehensive on a future occasion   If, however, he has struggled so violently as to be a danger to himself, then in his own interests he should be told, so that another time he can warn the anæsthetist of his previous behaviour

Dreams

Recovery from general anæsthesia is usually a slow process unaccompanied by vivid dreams   In the case of N₂O in the dental surgery, however, recovery is abrupt, and the patient frequently experiences a vivid dream, the outline of which is remembered but of which the details rapidly fade as the attempt to relate it is made   The dream may contain matter of vital importance such as the key to the solution of the riddle of the universe, may cause dejection and terror, or it may provoke no discernible emotional reaction   Dreams which are definitely funny are as rare as they are among dreams occurring during waking from natural sleep   Distressing dreams and unpleasantly vivid nightmares sometimes upset a patient sufficiently to make him dread inhalation anæsthesia from a well justified fear of a repetition of the experience   This dread is often the greater because the patient cannot remember quite what frightened him, however real the dream seemed at the time of awakening   An adult who has had such a dream is as difficult to reassure as a child after a night terror, and usually finds himself equally unable to describe his experience

The dream may be associated with something in the patient's mind before the anæsthetic is commenced   For example, it is common for a few days preceding the Derby for the patient to wake up witnessing with the greatest clearness the *finish* of the race   Within a few seconds, however the previously easily recognisable racing colours become drab, and the more fully the patient recovers the more, to his bewilderment and disappointment   do the details of the dream disappear into the background

A dream or nightmare resulting from inadequate anæsthesia is not uncommon   During very light anæsthesia a stimulus may not be felt

as pain, but may give rise to a nightmare Two cases on the same morning in the out patient department illustrate this point

A robust man was lightly anæsthetised for an extraction of a lower molar On recovery in answer to a question he said that his dream was that he had been boxing Jack Dempsey Questioning brought out the fact that in his dream he had been knocked out by a blow on his jaw and further that the blow had been delivered at the point from which the tooth had been extracted

A lightly anæsthetised woman had several upper teeth extracted She answered on recovery that she dreamt that she was being pulled through a tunnel by her hair

As in dreams on awakening from natural sleep the action in dreams on recovery from N_2O may seem to the patient to have covered several hours, though the whole period of anæsthesia may have occupied only a minute Indeed, dreams on emergence from sleep or anæsthesia often take place in a fraction of a second That this is so is shown by the common experience that some stimulus which rouses the sleeper appears as the final event in the dream for example, a knock on the door initiates a dream in which the dreamer takes a long journey with many adventures and finally reaches a house where he knocks for admittance He wakes to find himself in bed, and realises that he has been roused by the knocking on the door A drop of rain on the face of a person asleep in the open, although it appeared to wake him instantly, was accompanied by a dream the action of which lasted for some minutes In this an outbreak of fire was witnessed, the summoning and journey of the fire brigade and the connecting of the fire hoses to the hydrants all took time, and finally the spray of the hose which was to have been directed on the burning house hit the dreamer who awoke to feel the drop of rain

As far as possible, external stimuli therefore should be eliminated during the time when the patient is recovering consciousness, since they may initiate dreaming During the course of dental anæsthesia it is easy for a woman's skirt to become disarranged by her slipping down in the chair or moving her legs If this is not noticed until the patient is recovering, it is advisable to let the patient recover and adjust her skirt herself It is possible, in the rare cases where a patient alleges that misconduct occurred while she was unconscious, that such a readjustment of the skirt was the stimulus leading to an erotic dream, retrospective and ending with the pulling down of the skirt This last part of the dream really took place, but the part preceding it might seem

equally real and credible to an excitable patient Even without a
definite stimulus, erotic dreams are known to occur during recovery
from N₂O anæsthesia, and we repeat here that to safeguard himself
against charges of misconduct, a doctor or dentist should never ad-
minister an anæsthetic unless a third person is present

Post-operative Nausea and Vomiting

Vomiting after the recovery of consciousness is disappointing
and distressing for the patient, and in the dental surgery it is an annoy-
ance to the dentist, because it lengthens the period for which a patient
must be kept in the surgery

Various factors which increase the incidence of vomiting include

Personal idiosyncrasy of the patient ' Good sailors " and patients
who tolerate a fair amount of alcohol come into the category of those
undisturbed by anæsthesia The patient who is a " poor traveller,"
and who readily becomes nauseated in trains or on a ship, is likely to
suffer from post-anæsthetic malaise That temperament is a more
important factor in the causation of vomiting than is the presence of
food in the stomach is illustrated by the behaviour of the placid
individual who has a normal meal within an hour of the time fixed
for dental extraction The fact that he has so little apprehension
that he can enjoy a good meal in these circumstances is almost an
assurance that he will not suffer from nausea after a short anæsthetic
with nitrous oxide

Type of anæsthetic used Nitrous oxide and vinesthene seldom
cause vomiting in ordinary dental extractions, but ethyl chloride is
not infrequently an offender Pentothal and other barbiturates seldom
cause vomiting, but in rare cases their use has been followed by nausea
and vomiting lasting up to twenty four hours during which time the
patient may be prostrate and suffer from giddiness

Depth and length of anæsthesia

Prolonged anoxia

' Swinging   anæsthesia ' e maintenance of an uneven level of
anæsthesia

Administration of gases under pressure The distension of the
lungs by gases under pressure is followed by sweating, collapse, and
nausea, as is distension of any other hollow viscus

Fasting Prolonged abstinence from food in order to avoid vomit-
ing generally defeats its own end Even short anæsthesia and slight
deprivation of oxygen in a starved patient, particularly one not robust,
is followed by a fall in blood-pressure, nausea, and possibly retching

Vomiting is often wrongly attributed to the swallowing of blood. If a patient vomits after an operation on the throat or mouth, blood will inevitably be brought up, and may then be held responsible for the vomiting. It is, however, only necessary to consider the high percentage of cases in which the swallowing of blood is not followed by vomiting to realise the unimportance of this factor. Further, when vomiting occurs after operations on any other parts of the body blood is not vomited because none has been swallowed. If the operation had been on the nose or mouth the swallowed blood might have been given as the cause of the vomiting, whereas the presence of blood in the vomitus was only coincidental.

The treatment of post opera tive nausea by means other than postural are disappointing

The patient's head should be pushed well down between his knees, and he should be told to cough gently once or twice. These procedures raise the blood pressure, and are usually followed by flushing of the face and by considerable though often only a temporary general improvement, and if the patient sits upright again he relapses. Stimulation by smelling-salts may be effective. The small capsules of aromatic ammonia are the most convenient and reliable, when compressed, ammonia vapour is liberated. Whether brandy or

Fig 95

anything else should be given by mouth at this stage is an open question. Such treatment usually augments a feeling of nausea and actually precipitates vomiting, but the act of vomiting then often relieves the nausea

If these restorative measures are not effective, the patient should be allowed to rest in a recumbent position. Fifteen minutes rest immediately after the operation is of more value than an hour's rest later on, and the dentist who operates in his surgery on cases requiring prolonged anaesthesia should have a small recovery room. The patient's head should be kept low, and he should be covered with a blanket to keep him warm and comfortable. It is advisable to have a bowl and

a towel at hand in case of vomiting   If a patient is to be driven home
before he feels that he has recovered completely, it is a thoughtful
precaution to give him a bowl of water, since a feeling of nausea
in the surgery is not infrequently intensified once the patient is in a
moving car, and may be followed by vomiting

A patient should be strongly persuaded not to drive his car himself
soon after recovering from an anæsthetic   Patients often stubbornly
insist on driving home, but so many subsequently confess that they
drove " as if in a dream " that it is strange that accidents in such
circumstances appear to be so extremely rare

REFERENCES

(1) Clement F W   1939   *Nitrous Oxide Oxygen Anesthesia* London 136
(2) Macintosh, R R , and Pratt, Freda B   1938   Contribution (Chapter 3)
       to *Modern Anæsthetic Practice*   London   71
(3) Macintosh R R   1931   *Brit dent J*   52 (1) 89
(4) Paterson H J   1899   *W Lond med J*   4, 202

CHAPTER XXIII

ENDOTRACHEAL ANÆSTHESIA

IF a general anæsthetic is to be given for any prolonged operation on the head or neck, it is desirable that it should be administered through an endotracheal tube so that the anæsthetist can keep away from the operative field. In addition for operations in which blood, teeth, or other foreign bodies may be free in the mouth, the technique allows the laryngeal entrance to be packed off so giving complete protection against their entry into the air passages. For abdominal surgery, too, endotracheal anæsthesia is valuable. The use of a wide-bore tube ensures a free airway and thus eliminates the main cause of difficulties and disasters during anæsthesia. Also the depth of anæs-thesia can be readily controlled and the easy expansion of the lungs with every breath minimises the chances of the occurrence of post-operative atelectasis and the serious conditions which may follow. The complications attributed to passing an endotracheal tube have been greatly magnified, and are almost invariably accounted for by faulty technique.

The tube may be passed through the nose or through the mouth. When the oral route is chosen, the method almost invariably adopted is to expose the larynx with a laryngoscope and to pass the tube under direct vision. When the tube is passed through the nose a similar procedure may be followed or the tube may be made to enter the larynx " blindly "

" BLIND " NASAL INTUBATION

In passing the tube through the nose into the trachea, the anæs-thetist is guided by touch and sound. " Blind " intubation is generally performed with ease on men, but is frequently more difficult in narrow faced women and children. The main advantage of this procedure is that it can be carried out under light anæsthesia whereas if the tube has to be passed under direct vision, the anæsthesia may have to be deeper than is required for the surgical operation itself. Five to ten minutes before passing the tube the vascularity of the mucous mem-brane of the nose should be diminished by spraying it with cocaine. For this purpose a 10 per cent. or 20 per cent. solution is recommended, and it is often suggested, though in our opinion unconvincingly, that

owing to the intense vasoconstriction produced by solutions so strong
less cocaine is absorbed than with a weaker solution   The spraying
can be done when the patient is conscious but since the intensely
bitter taste of cocaine is disagreeable it is considerate to induce
anæsthesia first

The larynx also can be cocainised if desired by inserting the nozzle
of the spray into the nostril and spraying during inspiration   If the
larynx and trachea are not cocainised lower second plane anæsthesia
is necessary to depress the reflexes sufficiently for the tube to be
tolerated   If however cocaine is used the tube will be tolerated even
during upper first plane anæsthesia for example under nitrous oxide
alone

Before introducing the tube the patient should be so placed that
his neck is slightly flexed on his trunk and his head slightly extended
at the occipito atlantal joint a sniffing the air position   The tube
is passed directly backwards into the nostril but gently and if any
obstruction is encountered it should be withdrawn and passed through
the other   Force must never in passing the tube since the
soft tissues are easily damaged   After the tube has been passed
2 to 3 inches some resistance may be encountered from the sphincter
like action of the upper end of the superior constrictor muscle of the
pharynx   After this has been overcome the patient will be heard
breathing through the tube   The anæsthetist now keeps his ear to
the tube and gently pushes it farther until it either enters the trachea
(fig 96) or enters the œsophagus (fig 97) or is held up at the laryngeal
entrance (fig 99) or passes anterior to the epiglottis and lodges against
the base of the tongue (fig 101)

The signs that the tube has entered the trachea (fig 96) are so
obvious that when there is any doubt about it it may be assumed
that it has not done so   Unless the protective reflexes of larynx and
trachea are much depressed either by cocainisation or deep general
anæsthesia its introduction into the trachea will lead to a paroxysm
of coughing while if anæsthesia of these parts is complete the
regular and easy respiration characteristic of surgical anæsthesia
will be heard through the tube as soon as this has entered the
trachea

With the tube in the position shown in fig 97 the signs though
negative are obvious   The tube has been inserted to its full length
and though respiration continues unimpeded breath sounds are not
transmitted through it
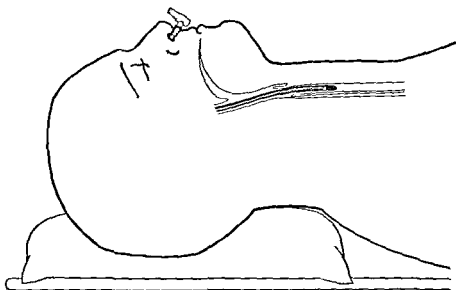
Fig 96
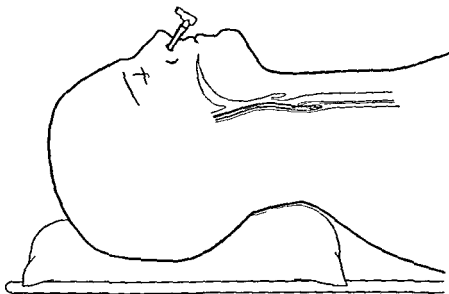
Fig 97
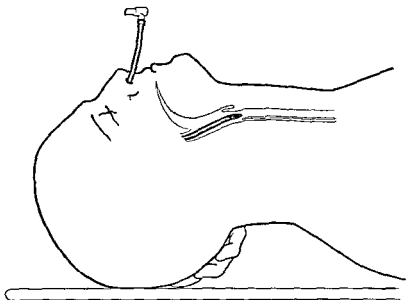
Fig 98

To correct this the tube is withdrawn slightly and its tip directed towards the larynx by extending the neck and head
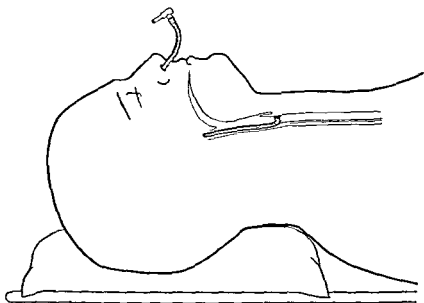
Fig 99

The tube may be arrested by the cords if these are fully or partially

adducted, a condition often found if the larynx is stimulated when the respiratory centre is depressed (e g by morphia) The breath may be held for some seconds or respiratory movement may be much diminished, so that only faint yet characteristic croaking sounds are transmitted through the tube The distal end of the tube runs almost parallel to the cords and impinges on the posterior aspect of the epiglottis Pressure exerted on the tube in the hope that it will pass through the adducted cords kinks it, while still further pressure may displace it laterally
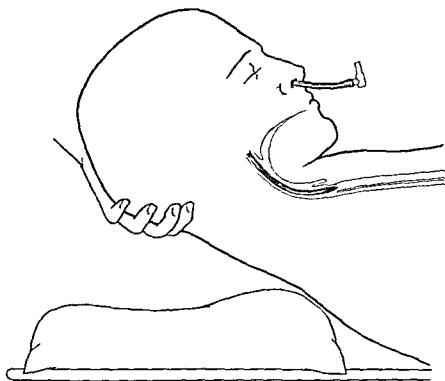
FIG 100

A tube which is held up at the cords usually can be made to pass into the glottis The head is flexed acutely and the distal end of the tube thereby brought almost at right-angles to the glottic opening, a position which greatly facilitates its entrance By maintaining gentle pressure on the tube, an attempt is made to insinuate its bevelled end between the cords If this fails the tube is moved slightly to irritate the laryngeal mucosa and stimulate coughing, when the cords will separate widely

FIG 101
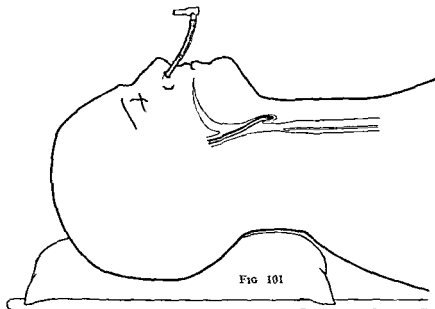
This is the fourth position in which the tube may be arrested

FIG 102
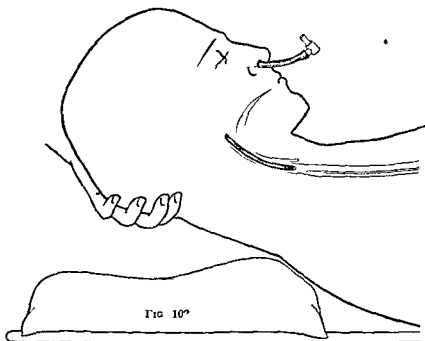
To correct the above malposition of the tube it must be withdrawn

slightly and the head well flexed so that the tip of the tube is directed backwards behind the epiglottis

If for any reason difficulty is experienced in passing the tube blindly, any of the following manœuvres may be of assistance the tube is withdrawn and passed through the other nostril, or a tube with a different curve is chosen, or respiration may be stimulated by giving CO_2 to facilitate entrance into the larynx

DIRECT-VISION INTUBATION

Proficiency in laryngoscopy should first be attained in the post-mortem room Later the anæsthetist should practise passing the laryngoscope on patients during the deep surgical anæsthesia immediately following an operation at a time when he has no need to hurry, and can familiarise himself with the appearance of the larynx in the living A good exposure can be obtained only if anæsthesia is deep or if the larynx has previously been co cainised Some anæsthetists advise that the upper front teeth should be covered with a thin sheet of malleable lead or with sticking plaster to prevent them from being chipped by the blade of the laryngoscope This accident should not occur, however, if the laryngoscope is properly used For an easy exposure the patient's neck is flexed on the trunk and the head extended at the occipito-atlantal joint This position is obtained by placing the occiput on the head rest as illustrated in fig 104, and then elevating the chin

The laryngoscope is held in the left hand throughout, leaving the right hand free While the blade is being introduced the lips are drawn
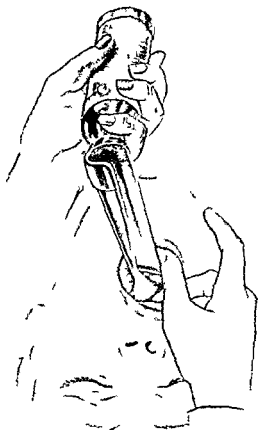
FIG 103

back to prevent them from being nipped between the teeth and
the blade It is passed backwards on the right side of the mouth,
along the right side of the dorsum of the tongue which is thereby
pushed towards the left If it were advanced along the middle of
the tongue, the subsequent manœuvre of lifting the head by the
laryngoscope would make the tongue bulge over the blade and obscure
the view

TONGUE
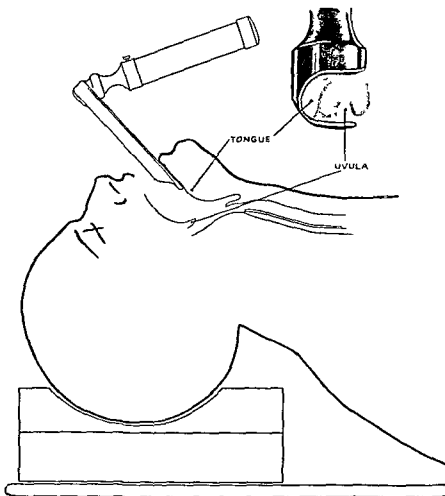
UVULA

FIG 104   *(After Thomas¹)*

When the laryngoscope has advanced about half the distance it
must eventually travel, the uvula comes into view
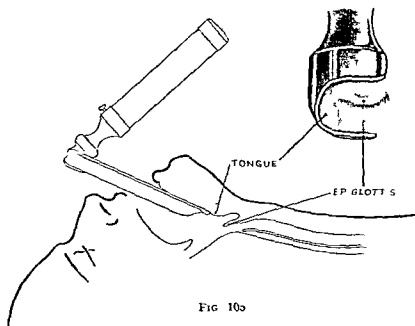
Fig 105

When it has reached to two thirds of the full distance, the tip of the laryngoscope is directed towards the midline and raised until the epiglottis is seen
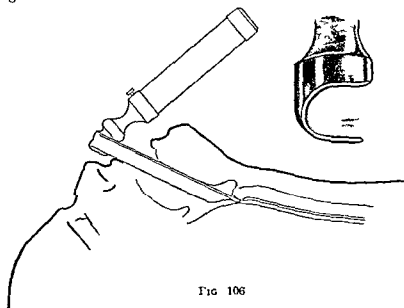
Fig 106

Still advancing the tip of the laryngoscope is directed towards the posterior pharyngeal wall and passed to about half an inch beyond the epiglottis
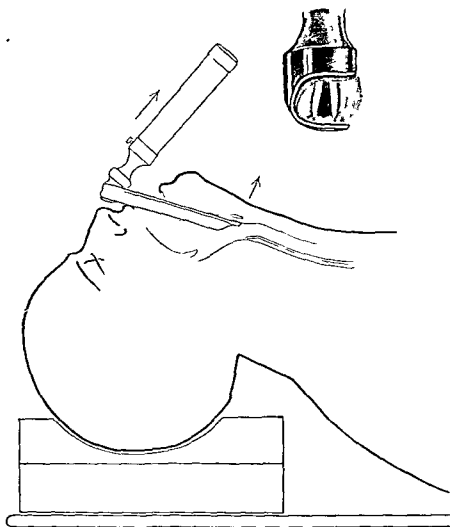
Fig 107

The handle of the laryngoscope is now lifted so that the blade exerts a steady pressure, equally throughout its whole length, on the tissues with which it is in contact The whole head is now lifted on the blade until the vocal cords come into view

Fig 108

The object of this diagram is to warn against using the blade as a lever with the upper teeth as the fulcrum, with probable chipping or dislodgment of these teeth.

Fig 109

the end which projects from the nose.
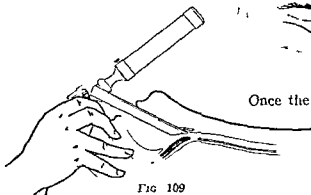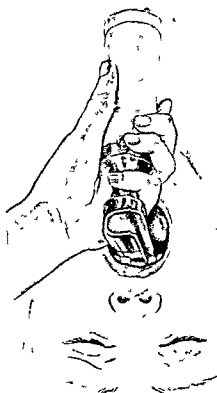
Once the larynx is exposed the tip of the tube can generally be guided with ease through the glottis simply by manipulating

Should manipulation of the proximal end of the tube be unsuccessful the distal end is picked up with a pair of Magill's forceps and guided into the larynx.

Fig 110

Fig 111

If the anæsthetist wishes to pass the tube through the mouth but finds it too flexible for easy control, he can pass a knitting needle through it
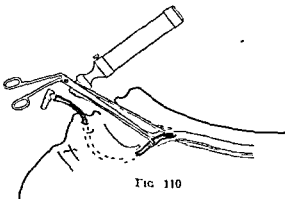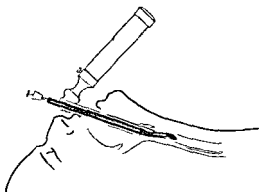
As soon as the tube is in position and the knitting needle has been withdrawn, a Rowbotham metal connection is attached to the proximal end

If for any reason it seems advisable to have an airtight junction between the

Fig 112

anæsthetic circuit and the patient's lungs one way of accomplishing this is to use a tube surrounded with an inflatable cuff When the tube is in position the cuff is inflated through its pilot tube with air from a syringe The pilot tube is clamped by a paper clip when the degree of distension of the small balloon at the proximal end indicates that the tension in the cuff is adequate

Fig 113

CAUSES OF DIFFICULTY IN EXPOSING THE CORDS

The main cause of difficulty is lack of experience together with failure to recognise landmarks particularly when the laryngeal muscles are not relaxed Contributory causes of difficulty are inadequate anæsthesia, failure to flex the neck when the head is extended, prominent front teeth, and an underhanging lower jaw

FIG 114

ARYTENOID

GLOTTIC OPENING

EPIGLOTTIS

ŒSOPHAGUS
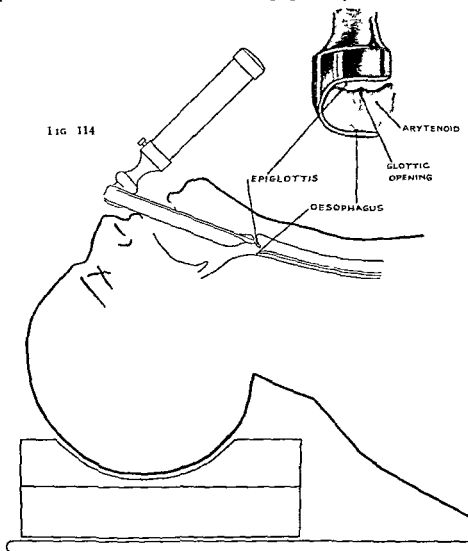
There may be difficulty in hooking the epiglottis when this is folded backwards against the arytenoids To move it so that the tip of the blade of the laryngoscope can be passed behind it the anæsthetist should push the thyroid cartilage upwards with the fingers of his right hand [1]

OESOPHAGUS
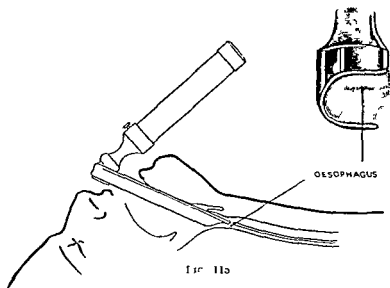
FIG 115

If the blade of the laryngoscope is introduced too far the œsophageal opening comes into view

The following additional difficulties are all caused by attempts to expose the larynx before anæsthesia is deep enough adequately to relax the muscles of the jaw and larynx
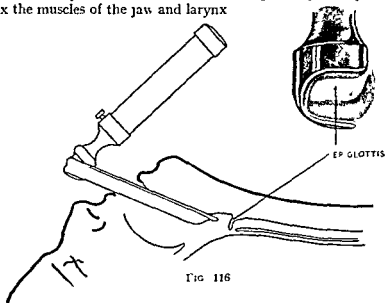
EPIGLOTTIS

FIG 116

During very light anæsthesia it is impossible to push the laryngoscope behind the epiglottis because this is folded backwards as the larynx is raised in the act of swallowing

OESOPHAGUS
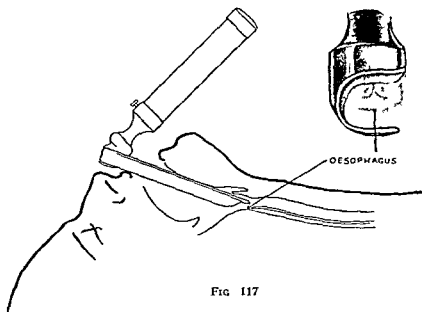
Fig 117

At a deeper level of anæsthesia the laryngoscope can be passed
behind the epiglottis, but since the muscles of the jaw are not relaxed
they resist the lifting action of the laryngoscope   Complete exposure
of the larynx is then impossible, and since its muscles are in spasm,
only the approximated arytenoid cartilages come into view   Posteriorly
the œsophageal opening is seen
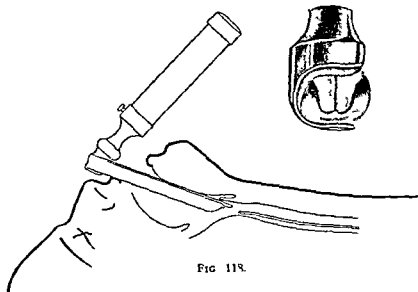
Fig 118

At slightly deeper levels of anæsthesia the jaw can be lifted enough to
expose increasing amounts of the still approximated aryepiglottic folds
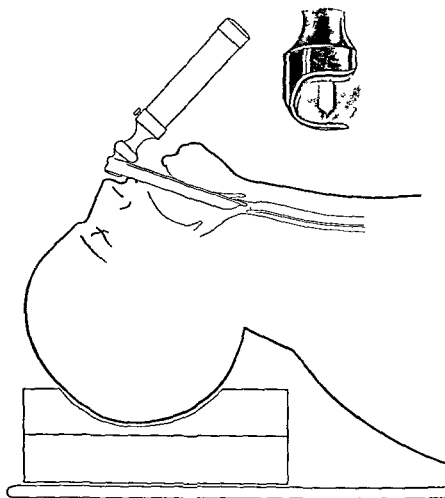
Fig 119

At a still deeper level of anæsthesia, the muscles of the jaw relax and allow the laryngoscope to lift the lower jaw and expose the larynx more fully The muscles of the aryepiglottic folds have also relaxed though the cords are still in spasm

REFERENCES

(1) Thomas G J   1938   *Anesth and Analges* **17** 301
(2) Rovenstine E A   1939   Personal communication
(3) Pask I A   1940   Personal communication

<div style="text-align:center">

CHAPTER XXIV

MOUTH-GAGS, PROPS, PACKS, AND TONGUE-FORCEPS

MOUTH-GAGS

</div>

A " GAG " is an instrument used for opening the mouth and for keeping it open There are many different types of gags, and in some hospitals all are called by the name of " Mason," the surgeon who introduced the basic model about 1870 [1]

An anæsthetist's equipment should include two, or preferably three, good gags They last a lifetime, and the question of economy should not enter into their purchase The mechanism by which an open gag is locked and released varies with different models, and an anæsthetist usually tries many before making his final choice. It is essential that the construction of the gag should be such that it can be opened and closed easily and smoothly by simple movements of one hand

The skill of a dental anæsthetist can often be judged by the way he handles a gag and allows the dentist easy access to any part of the mouth Insertion and manipulation of the gag should be unhurried and gentle except in the rare case in which the mouth has to be opened because a patient is *in extremis*

<div style="text-align:center">
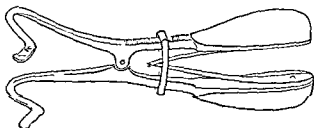
FIG 120

</div>

The ratchet control of this gag, frequently referred to as Fergusson's, makes it steadier and more controllable than any other. The ratchet-lock is easily adjusted by the thumb and forefinger of the hand which holds the gag, and once in position will not slip unless the handles are approximated

Any gag can be supplied either with ordinary or with Ackland's

blades The former are curved and lie one on top of the other, and although difficult to insert unless the jaw is relaxed they will, when
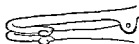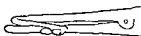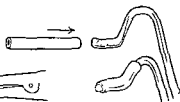
FIG 121   FIG 122   FIG 123

once in position both open and keep the mouth open without slipping

Ackland's blades (fig 122) are straight and since when the gag is closed, they lie in the same plane they can be more easily inserted in cases in which the jaw is clenched Once they are in position, however, there is a tendency for them to slip off the teeth

The blades should be covered with rubber tubing to minimise the risk of chipping the teeth or injuring the soft tissues If the tubing has cracked or become loose it must be replaced by fresh tubing to obviate the danger of its slipping off the blades and becoming a foreign body

The anæsthetist should be on the watch to see that a gag is not handed to him straight out of the steriliser—otherwise he may burn his fingers or still worse, the patient's cheek and mouth When the gag is being inserted the lips must be well separated to avoid their being pinched between the gag and the teeth (fig 127) When this precaution is omitted the lip may be bruised, or even perforated The gag should be placed as far back in the mouth as possible to avoid bearing on single rooted teeth Bridges crowns and loose or fragile teeth must be most carefully avoided, and with children it must be remembered that a deciduous tooth can be dislodged easily

Use of the Gag to open a Clenched Jaw in an Unconscious Patient

During induction of anæsthesia the prop may slip or be spat out, the latter especially in children, or it may slip during extractions In children under ethyl chloride the gag may be introduced by the method illustrated below, or, if the spasm is particularly resistant, the mask must be removed until the anæsthesia has become so light that the child opens his mouth to cry, as he always does before he recovers consciousness, whereupon the anæsthetist inserts the gag The gag, with the blades still closed is then held in place until the administration

of more ethyl chloride has produced the desired depth of anæsthesia, and then is opened

If the jaws become clenched during N₂O anæsthesia, it is generally impossible to relax them by deepening the anæsthesia since the increasing asphyxia will in fact intensify the spasm   In these cases, it is actually necessary to give oxygen to reduce the asphyxia before an attempt is made to insert the gag

We disapprove of the use of a boxwood wedge (p 242) for an unconscious patient because it is liable to break teeth when it is forced between the jaws

The anæsthetist steadies the forehead with one hand and by *continuous* pressure on the chin depresses the mandible with the other (fig 124)   At the same time the dentist retains the nose-piece in position and inserts the gag as soon as this can be done

When the gag has been introduced, the anæsthetist releases his hold on the forehead and chin and steadies the gag   *A second gag is then inserted on the other side of the mouth and by exerting steady and*

Fig 124

Fig 125

Fig 126

continuous pressure with both gags the masseteric spasm is overcome. If uneven or unnecessary force is applied periostitis may result even

when the teeth are sound   also if the blades of the gags rest directly on alveolar mucous membranes these may be badly bruised   Any such damage may cause much more after-pain than arises from the extraction sockets

Once the mouth has been opened sufficiently, it can be kept open easily by one gag only, or a prop can be inserted and both gags withdrawn

Use of a Gag to make either Side of the Mouth Accessible

After extractions on one side have been completed, the gag is inserted on this side and opened just sufficiently to release the prop from the opposite side

FIG 127   FIG 128

Extractions on the right side have been finished and the left side is to be made accessible

When the prop is released the gag can be used to keep the mouth open, or the prop can be reinserted just in front of the gag and the gag taken away   Usually it makes little difference which procedure is followed, but many dentists prefer to have the prop reinserted because the gag keeps the lips tightly stretched, and access to the back teeth of the opposite side is limited

A sudden forceful separation of the jaws by a gag often lightens the anæsthesia sufficiently to cause a reversion from nose- to mouth-breathing, a fact which may be demonstrated when making a " change "   Lack of appreciation of the severity of this stimulus accounts indeed for many of the failures to maintain smooth anæs-

thesia after the change' is made Hence though anæsthesia has
been adequate for extractions on the one side if the anæsthetist then
inserts the gag on this side and roughly forces the mouth open to allow
the prop to be removed anæsthesia may lighten sufficiently to cause
mouth breathing even though the mixture of gases administered
remains unaltered Mouth breathing will not however be initiated
if the gag is used gently

Use of a Gag in a more or less Edentulous Patient

Such a patient usually finds a prop uncomfortable and liable to
slip about on the ridge of the gum Since a gag is easily introduced
between jaws lacking in teeth many anæsthetists often induce
anæsthesia in such a patient without having inserted the usual prop
opening the mouth with a gag after unconsciousness is attained

Holding a Gag in Position

FIG 129   FIG 130

These photographs show the right and wrong ways of retaining
a gag in position The gag is self locking so that the anæsthetist,
by placing the palm of the hand over it and holding the jaw forward,
can steady the head as easily as if the gag were not there The shank
of the gag is pressed firmly against the cheek to prevent the blade
slipping off tooth or gum into the sulcus between the gum and cheek.
It is wrong to keep the gag open by holding the handles for then the
anæsthetist loses control of the situation, the head cannot be steadied,
and any movement of the head may dislodge the teeth on which the
blades rest

16

Trismus

In a case of trismus where it is necessary to extract the tooth causing this condition a gag should be inserted before anæsthesia is commenced since if the spasm is severe it will be found almost impossible to do this later under light anæsthesia such as commonly is administered in the dental surgery

Separation of the teeth sufficiently to allow the insertion of the gag often is accomplished only after exercising much patience and usually causing some discomfort The forehead should be steadied and the chin depressed gently but firmly and continuously for sudden or jerky attempts to separate the jaws cause pain and increase the spasm At the same time the patient may be given a boxwood wedge mouth opener so that he may help to get his teeth sufficiently far apart for introduction of the gag With four or five minutes persistence even the most unpromising case yields to this treatment
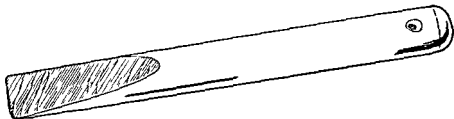
Fig 131

A boxwood mouth-opener should be used only by the patient so ensuring that sufficient force will not be used to break his teeth

Once the gag is in position anæsthesia is induced a second gag is then inserted on the opposite side and the masseteric spasm overcome by steady continuous pressure on both gags

Unless the teeth can be separated enough for the blades of a gag to be inserted while the patient is conscious an anæsthetic should not be given in the dental surgery We have never met such a case but should one be encountered we advise postponing the operation until deep anæsthesia can be attained in surroundings where tracheotomy could be performed if the patient vomited

MOUTH-PROPS

It is well recognised that there may be spasm of the masseter muscles even after surgical anæsthesia has been established and other muscles are well relaxed The intensity of the spasm varies and during the light anæsthesia common in the dental surgery it is not infrequently

violent, particularly in a nervous patient Hence it is generally advisable to insert a prop between the teeth before commencing to give an anaesthetic for dental extractions, whatever anaesthetic is to be used If this is not done time will be lost, and damage may be done in forcing the mouth open afterwards

The ideal prop should be neat, comfortable to bite on, and not liable to slip It should be easy to clean and sterilise, and not liable to collect debris The following diagrams illustrate the props in common use

Hewitt's prop,[2] (fig 132) introduced in 1891 was an improvement on its predecessors inasmuch as it is so shaped as to adjust itself to the angle between the upper and lower jaws when the mouth is open Its disadvantages

FIG 132

are that it is tedious to clean and that blood is liable to collect under the rubber cap where it is easily overlooked

Trewby's lead-covered prop (fig 133) is popular in hospital practice, where it is usual to find a set with each prop connected by a chain to a common ring The prop is easily cleaned and sterilised and is everlasting
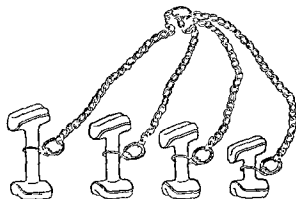
FIG 133

The Trewby prop with rubber insets (fig 134) on the biting surfaces is more satisfactory but more expensive Six different sizes are made The prop is neat and comfortable, and is easily cleaned and sterilised Also the rubber insets, which are easily renewable, fit tightly, so that blood cannot collect under them
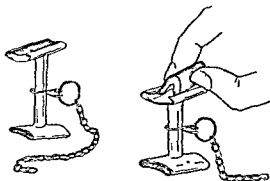
FIG 134
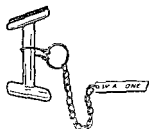
Mushin's prop is similar to Trewby's except that the two biting plates are set at equal angles to the connecting bar It is claimed that this arrangement makes the prop less liable to slip, and is hence particularly advantageous for an edentulous patient

The de Pass prop, made of solid rubber, is bent double on the thin flexible centre portion before being inserted into the mouth The ridges on the biting surfaces of the prop are gripped by the teeth, and the "tramlines" formed by the raised
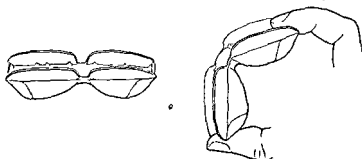
FIG 135

FIG 136

borders of its biting surfaces prevent it from slipping laterally, in a toothless patient, however, it is not easily retained

Its resilience makes it particularly useful, for if the patient yawns, for example, during induction with pentothal, or if, during the operation, the lower jaw is depressed, the prop opens and accommodates itself to the temporarily increased opening of the mouth, and does not
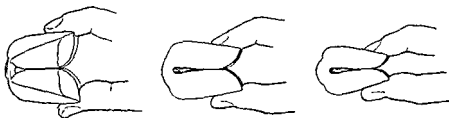
FIG 137

fall out. It is, accordingly, especially useful in major dental operations where anæsthesia is often deep enough to relax the masseter muscles

The prop is made in three sizes Except that for a conscious patient the largest is rather a "mouthful" we find this size extremely

satisfactory but each of the two smaller sizes in our experience is dislodged easily for when bent into position its two halves are not in contact throughout their whole length and any biting pressure is liable to twist the prop

FIG 138

FIG 139

Manipulation of two de Pass props joined by a tape allows both sides of the mouth to be made accessible without the use of a gag After extractions on the right side are completed the second de Pass

FIG 140

FIG 141

prop is inserted on that side to provide access to the teeth on the left This singularly easy way of effecting a change has the great advantage that it obviates the possibility of damage by a gag

Brunton's swivel prop is inserted between the incisor teeth and it swivels as illustrated After extractions on one side of the mouth are completed the other side is made accessible very easily by swinging the vertical bar through half a circle It is especially useful when
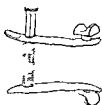
Fig 142　　　　　　　Fig 143　　　　　　　Fig 144

extractions on both sides have to be undertaken for children for with children one may anticipate anæsthetic difficulties which will reduce the operating time available Some dentists condemn this prop for fear that it will damage the incisor teeth but we have not seen or heard of any injury so caused

Further Points concerning Props in General

The chances of a prop slipping when the patient is largely edentulous are lessened by previously directing him to free his mouth from mucus by thorough rinsing If the prop does slip it is usually easy with such a patient to open the mouth with a gag

The mouth should never be propped open more widely than necessary, since this makes the patient uncomfortable and makes it difficult for him to breathe through his nose (p 262) For a nervous patient a very small prop is sometimes inserted and the mouth opened more widely after he has become unconscious With a little care it is possible to select a prop which will allow adequate access and at the same time be comfortable

A child may attempt to spit the prop out, or it may fall out if he cries or struggles To keep it in position upward pressure must be applied to the chin immediately it is inserted

A nervous patient may refuse a prop or may begin to retch as soon as it is inserted in which case the prop should be removed at once or he will be restive throughout the whole of induction Nitrous oxide is given nasally, and the patient is told that a few breaths of gas will make his throat less sensitive After about six breaths of N_2O the

patient will be sufficiently amenable to suggestion will open his mouth when requested and will have no difficulty in retaining the prop

MOUTH-PACKS

Sponges

During any dental extraction no matter how trivial the oral cavity must be packed off as efficiently as possible to prevent any foreign body being inhaled or swallowed The ideal packing material is still a matter for discussion but we ourselves find that a bleached coarse-meshed sponge about as large as a small orange is the most satisfactory Bleaching improves the appearance and the extra light reflected from the bleached sponge helps to illuminate the field of operation The coarseness of the mesh is essential for without it the sponge would be less capable of absorbing blood and saliva or of entangling any stray fragments of teeth

A sponge is difficult to sterilise and it is most satisfactory to use each only once If however for economy the same sponges are to be used repeatedly the most efficient method of sterilising them is to wash them in sodium bicarbonate solution and then soak them in a weak solution of lysol for forty eight hours and finally wash them thoroughly with water Sponges should never be boiled other wise they will shrink and become inelastic

The necessity for a mouth pack is discussed on p 317 A sponge becomes an elastic and efficient pack only when moist and it should therefore be squeezed out in cold water before being introduced If during a prolonged operation the sponge be comes coated with blood and saliva it is a potential danger unless it has a tape attached (p 263) When sodden it should be removed and replaced by a fresh sponge after the mouth has been mopped dry

Fig 145
The sponge with tape attached ready to be in
troduced into the mouth

After anæsthesia has been established, the sponge is gently pushed towards the back of the mouth until it just touches the front of the soft palate Incidentally, we may mention that in this position, where it partly occludes the mouth but does not occlude the pharynx the sponge ensures nasal breathing in the unusual patient who has a short soft palate and uvula, and who would otherwise continue to breathe partially through the mouth, even during surgical anæsthesia If the sponge is pushed too far back it may cause retching and restlessness and even obstruct respiration (fig 175, p 263) Though the sponge may seem to fill the mouth it is not a nuisance to the dentist, since he can easily push to one side any part of it encroaching on the tooth to be extracted

In a case of advanced pyorrhœa special care must be taken not to dislodge a tooth while inserting the sponge Cases are known where teeth have thereby been pushed down into the trachea

With an anæsthetic resistant patient the sponge is sometimes soaked in ether before it is inserted (p 117) If with such a patient ethyl chloride is sprayed over the mouth to supplement N_2O, the sponge may become frozen and lose its absorptive

properties, and a fresh sponge must then be substituted before extractions are begun
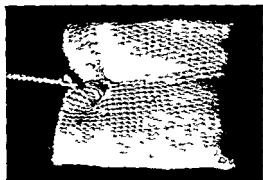
Cotton - wool Mouth-packs

A cotton wool mouth-pack is convenient but lacks the elasticity of a sponge Although effective in absorbing moisture its volume is much more

Fig 146

reduced by compression, and it then affords but little protection

TONGUE-FORCEPS

Tongue-forceps (fig 147 and fig 148) are sharply pointed so that while they hold the tongue firmly they cause minimal damage They should be inserted into the dorsum of the tongue at about the junction of the anterior one third and posterior two-thirds, as illustrated in fig 149, and in fig 167 p 258 The bite of the forceps should be sufficient to prevent them tearing out of the tongue To avoid damaging the
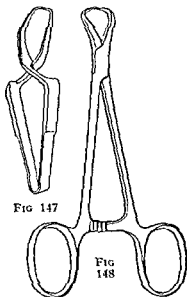
Fig 147

Fig 148

Fig 149

vessels on the ventral aspect of the tongue they should not be inserted too deeply.

These forceps (figs 150, 151) are illustrated only to condemn them
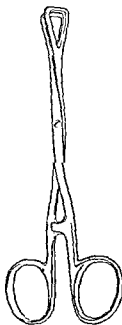
Fig 150

Fig. 151

absolutely on the ground that they crush the tongue and interfere with its circulation   If in emergency tongue-forceps are not available the tongue may be wiped dry and withdrawn by the fingers covered with gauze or a cloth or it can be transfixed with a safety pin and drawn forward

REFERENCES

(1) Mason F   1876   *Brit med J*   **1** 117
(2) Hewitt F W   1891   *Brit J dent Sci*   **34** 37

CHAPTER XXV

CARE OF THE UNCONSCIOUS PATIENT

FROM the moment an anæsthetic is given until the patient becomes rational again, his safety is in the hands of his attendants since his protective reflexes are abolished or depressed For this reason a basal anæsthetic should not be given unless the patient can be supervised in the pre- as well as in the post-operative period Ideally during recovery the patient should not be left unattended until he has regained consciousness During the time the laryngeal reflexes and the respiratory centre remain depressed the airway must be maintained clear and the patient kept in a position in which any foreign body in the pharynx will drain out of the mouth and not be inspired

Before anæsthesia is induced dentures should be taken out and the mouth examined for loose or fragile teeth Jewellery should be removed to prevent it being damaged, and from cutting into the flesh If for sentimental reasons the patient does not wish rings to be removed, they can be left until unconsciousness has developed

Position on the Operating Table

Before the operation is begun the patient s arms must be placed in a safe position conveniently out of the surgeon s way If the arm hangs over the edge of the operating table, the musculospiral nerve may be subjected to pressure and cause temporary paralysis of the muscles it supplies

FIG 152

FIG 153

A suitable position for the arm is achieved by slightly raising the buttock, placing the fully extended arm palm downwards on the table, and securing it by allowing the buttock to roll back on the hand

FIG 154   FIG 155   FIG 156

An alternative method of securing the arms is to place a towel or folded sheet under the patient then over and round the arms tucking it in beneath the mattress

Except in so far as the position for operation necessitates care must be taken that no joints are kept in an abnormal position or the ligaments will be stretched and the patient will complain of pain for some time after the operation

When administration of the anæsthetic is stopped the anæsthetist retains responsibility for the unconscious patient until he has passed this on to some other competent person   The transfer of responsibility should be quite definite not just a casual understanding for instance the anæsthetist handing the patient over to a nurse should say

Nurse can you be responsible for the patient now ? and should not be satisfied until she answers with a definite Yes

Before beginning the journey back to the ward with an unconscious patient the person in charge should be satisfied that the airway is perfectly clear and that the patient is properly protected against cold A gag tongue-forceps airway swabs and swab holder a towel and a bowl should be to hand on the trolley, and should be kept by the bedside until the patient has recovered

FIG 157

Lifting the Unconscious Patient

The head of the trolley should be directed towards the foot of the bed or the foot of the trolley to the head of the

bed When the patient is to be transferred the lifters preferably three should all stand on the same side of the trolley in the angle formed by it with the bed The main weight will be borne by the middle one of the three lifters and by the one at the head while the one supporting the legs needs merely to control them The lifters arms are placed well under the patient

Fig 158

As soon as he has been raised off the bed the patient should be rolled on to his side facing the lifters In this position the leverage on the arms is small and the patient can be carried in comfort
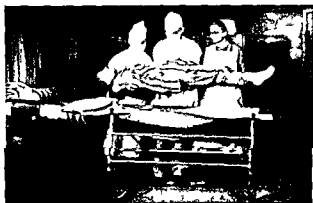
Fig 159

The *wrong* method of carrying a patient As the patient has not been rolled on to his side he must be supported at arms length This is an extremely fatiguing task and if the patient is heavy it may be an impossible one

The Patient's Position in Bed

After being lowered on to his bed, the patient is placed in the semi prone position facing the light. To prevent him from rolling

Fig 160

backwards his lower arm is drawn behind him A firm pillow tucked into the angle between his chest and the bed prevents him from rolling on to his face Flexion of the upper leg assists in fixing the patient in a position in which the tongue falls away from the pharynx so that the airway remains clear and vomitus, blood, or mucus drain freely out of the mouth (fig 207, p 296) The presence of blood in the mouth makes this position particularly desirable after operations on the mouth or throat

Fig 161

Once the patient has recovered sufficiently he can be allowed to assume any position in which he feels comfortable, though he should not be left unattended until he is responsible for his actions

Fig 162

This photograph is included to show the position in which the

unconscious patient should *not* be placed particularly if he cannot be kept under constant supervision   The tongue may fall back or vomitus be aspirated so that death from respiratory obstruction may result within a very short period (fig 211 p 298)

Protection from Hot Bottles

A hot water bottle in contact with an unconscious patient may produce a serious burn   Hot water bottles should be supplied with flannel covers and before being put near the patient they should as an extra precaution be wrapped in a blanket

Vomiting

The danger of vomiting during the unconscious period is that of inhalation of vomitus causing immediate respiratory obstruction or, more remotely pulmonary complications

During both induction of and recovery from anæsthesia the patient passes through a stage at which vomiting may occur   The incidence of vomiting during induction depends considerably on the skill of the anæsthetist and can be eliminated by making induction smooth and rapid thus keeping the patient for as short a time as possible at the vomiting level   Normally the patient properly prepared for operation has an empty stomach by the time anæsthesia is begun   nevertheless regurgitation of acid gastric juice may occur and its local irritant action on the larynx cause troublesome laryngospasm   The patient on whom an emergency operation is being performed may

Fig 163

Post operative Restlessness

Restlessness during recovery from anæsthesia may be due to oxygen want a condition which is usually readily recognisable and is especially apt to occur in an exsanguinated patient   Much more frequently it is a response to pain from the site of operation at a time when the patient has not yet recovered consciousness   This is frequently seen after the use of some basal anæsthetics the properties of which are more hypnotic than analgesic   When these have been used the patient remains for a long time in the stage of potential delirium and whether he is restless or not depends on whether he is exposed to pain or not   The degree of restlessness varies with the patient s nervous make up and with the severity of the pain and ranges from the mere occasional changing of his position in bed to maniac excitement   The treatment is to give morphia since this drug acts selectively on perception of pain   It should be noticed that post operative restlessness does not occur unless the morphia given as a premedicant has been excreted before painful stimuli from the operation have ceased

A simple rule for the administration of morphia to the unconscious patient recovering from an operation is that it should be given if he is restless but not otherwise   Since restlessness is almost invariably a response to painful stimuli it is a sign that the patient has recovered sufficiently to make the administration of morphia safe   In the early post-operative period even $\frac{1}{8}$ gr has a marked sedative effect and is usually sufficient to quieten an adult   The length of time for which a given dose of morphia will be effective depends on the metabolic rate of the patient and on the intensity of the pain   The influence of a raised metabolic rate is seen during the recovery from any operation of a patient suffering from exophthalmic goitre a second injection of morphia may be needed half an hour after a dose which would have been adequate for several hours had the metabolic rate been normal

CHAPTER XXVI

RESPIRATORY OBSTRUCTION

INTERFERENCE with the passage of gases between the anæsthetic mask and the lungs is the commonest cause of anæsthetic difficulties and disasters The penalties of obstruction vary with its degree of completeness and with the patient's condition They range from mere disturbance of the smoothness of the anæsthesia to the death of the patient

The most common site of obstruction is the small space between the base of the tongue and the rima glottidis The more usual causes can be classified into four groups

1. Backward displacement of the tongue.
2. A foreign body, e g. sponge, vomitus, tooth.
3. Adduction of the vocal cords caused by anoxial spasm of the laryngeal muscles.
4 Œdema of the aryepiglottic folds, due to spread of infection from neighbouring structures.

Obstruction in the first three groups occurs as an accident associated with unconsciousness The fourth group exists pre-operatively and, as will be seen later, this condition is a contra-indication to the administration of a general anæsthetic.

BACKWARD DISPLACEMENT OF THE TONGUE

Backward displacement of the tongue is the commonest cause of respiratory obstruction in an unconscious patient The problem is one of simple mechanics It occurs only when the tongue falls or is pushed backwards The former is likely to happen when the patient is lying on his back, the latter during operations on the lower jaw, no matter what the position of the patient may be When the patient is lying on his back it is particularly easy for the tongue and the lower jaw to which it is attached, to fall backwards The tongue, as Chevalier Jackson[1] points out, acts as a "check valve" at the laryngeal opening ; obstruction to expiration being negligible The tongue is forced forwards by each expiration, after which it immediately falls back into its gravity position again, and attempts at inspiration draw it over the laryngeal entrance and obstruct ingress

of air   The patient will die quickly if this condition is not relieved
and this relief usually can be attained simply by holding the angle of
the jaw forward (fig 170 p 260) thus carrying the tongue away from
the laryngeal opening   If this is not sufficient to clear the airway,
a mechanical airway can be inserted or the tongue pulled forwards
by tongue forceps

FIG 164 —Tongue in normal
position
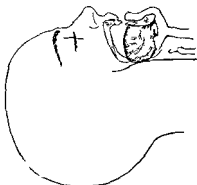
FIG 165 —The airway is com
pletely obstructed by the tongue
which has fallen back by gravity
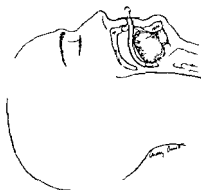
FIG 166 —An airway restorer (usually
called an airway) keeps the tongue
forward and an uninterrupted path for
respiration is restored
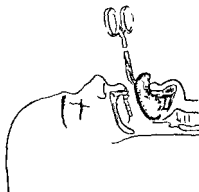
FIG 167 —In an emergency if an
airway is not available the tongue can
be pulled forward by sharp pointed
forceps   If such tongue forceps have
by oversight been omitted from the
anæsthetist's equipment a towel clip
or a large safety pin may be used or the
tongue can be wiped dry and covered
by a cloth pulled forward by the fingers

Attempts at artificial respiration when the tongue is occluding the larynx are worse than no attempt at all since the check valve (p 257) allows air to pass in one direction only—from within outwards

When the patient is sitting upright in the position usual for dental extraction, the tongue is not an obstruction to respiration—it becomes one only if it is pushed backwards by the dentist During the extraction of lower back teeth it is particularly easy for the dentist to make the mistake of steadying the mandible by pressing it backwards and downwards in such a manner as to obstruct respiration by forcing the base of the tongue against the posterior pharyngeal wall

Fig 168

Radiograph—The dorsum of the tongue has been painted with barium paste The epiglottis is readily distinguishable

Freedom of the airway is ensured by the dentist pulling the mandible forwards and upwards with his left hand The anæsthetist helps by forward pressure on the angle of the jaw Compare the plane of the incisor teeth with that seen in fig 169

Fig 169

Pressure backwards and downwards on the mandible results in varying degrees of respiratory obstruction This radiograph (fig 169) shows how the mandible can be pushed backwards by the dentist's left hand The tongue is carried backwards and forced against the posterior pharyngeal wall causing complete obstruction

Respiration may be impeded simply by the tongue being made to bulge backwards Obstruction so caused can occur to some extent even if the lower jaw is held forwards but will obviously be more complete if it is pushed backwards

The anæsthetist can help the maintenance of a free airway by pressing forward the angle of the patient's jaw If at the same time he steadies the mandible the dentist is given a firm purchase for his extraction and the tendency for the jaw to be pushed backwards is greatly diminished Prolonged pressure on the angle of the jaw by the anæsthetist's fingers may cause post operative pain at the site of pressure The ring finger can feel the pulsation of the carotid artery

Fig 170

Respiratory obstruction may occur also from faulty posture in the dental chair. Either flexion or extension of the head can cause the tongue to occlude the airway.

If the patient sits with the head flexed or if he slips into this position, free respiration is impeded. To obviate this the head rest should be adjusted to the nape of the neck and the unconscious patient can be prevented from slipping by the support of a strap round the pelvis.

Fig. 171

Fig. 172.

This radiograph shows obstruction of the airway by the tongue when the head is flexed as in fig. 171. The obstruction is aggravated if the mandible is pressed backwards or downwards.

17

If the head rest slips and the head becomes extended the tongue can act as a   check valve   as it does with a patient in the supine position (fig 160 p 258)

Fig 173

This position has other disadvantages   Blood and mucus gravitate backwards and irritate the posterior pharyngeal wall causing restlessness and retching in the lightly anæsthetised patient   Also the patient is particularly exposed to the danger of entry of a foreign body into the lungs (p 321)

A not infrequent cause of minor respiratory obstruction in dental anæsthesia is the insertion of too large a prop   The mouth can be opened only by depressing the mandible   and the illustration below shows how opening of the mouth to its utmost limits carries the base of the tongue on to the posterior pharyngeal wall

If the tongue is relaxed the wider the mouth is opened the more difficult does nasal respiration become   Hence a widely opened mouth favours oral breathing

An incorrectly adjusted nose piece may partially occlude the nares and so impede free respiration (fig 76 p 196)

Fig 174

FOREIGN BODIES

(A) The sponge or mouth pack, which should invariably be used to *protect the larynx when extractions are being performed*, may cause respiratory obstruction

If the sponge is pushed too far back, the soft palate is forced against the posterior pharyngeal wall and blocks the airway partially or completely (fig 175)   Nose breathing is prevented by the palatal obstruction and oral breathing by the sponge itself

A sponge sodden with blood and saliva if compressed suffers a marked decrease in volume , and if the small sodden sponge slips behind the base
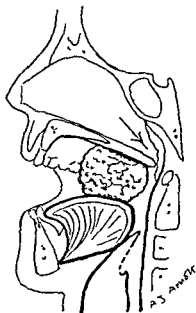
Fig 175   (*After Archer*[2])

of the tongue it will completely occlude the laryngeal opening (fig 176)   This is a rare accident but when it happens respiratory arrest is dramatic in its completeness and suddenness   A case of respiratory obstruction from this cause is described on p 280

Fig 176

(B) Vomitus, if inhaled, may occlude the larynx

(C) During every extraction both dentist and anaesthetist must be constantly alert to the possibility of a tooth tooth fragment, or other foreign body slipping past the sponge into the laryngeal opening Despite the undoubted value of a sponge, constant vigilance on
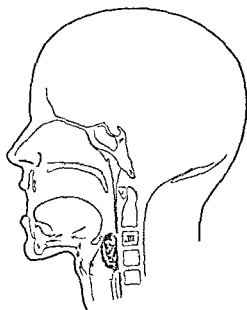
the part of the dentist is essential for protection against this accident

Although the foreign bodies described under (B) and (C) may cau e acute respiratory obstruction by lodging at the laryngeal entrance it is more common on account of their small size for them to pass through the rima glottidis and cause grave post operative pulmonary complications

LARYNGEAL SPASM

Anoxæmic spasm of the laryngeal muscles leading to spastic adduction of the vocal cords is most likely to happen in the unpre medicated thick set muscular individual who often is described as unsuitable for nitrous-oxide anæsthesia and who in fact is resistant to every form of anæsthesia In the frail or heavily premedicated patient muscular spasm is not a feature of oxygen want Nitrous oxide is the weakest of all the anæsthetics in common use, and if for any reason it is chosen for a resistant patient the range of anæsthesia is necessarily narrow If the patient is unpremedicated and supple mentary anæsthesia is not used its feeble action must be reinforced by a marked reduction of the oxygen intake to prevent the patient responding to stimuli by struggling and mouth breathing At this low level of oxygen tension anoxæmic spasm of some of the muscle groups is inevitable The muscles which adduct and abduct the cords like all other muscles of the body work smoothly only when the oxygen supply is adequate Unco-ordinated action of the laryngeal muscles resulting from anoxæmia is evidenced by stertorous and jerky breathing With deepening anoxæmia spasm of the laryngeal muscles increases in intensity and since the muscles of adduction are more powerful than those of abduction the cords eventually become tightly approximated Throughout the development of this condition expiration is impaired but slightly but inspiration becomes less and less effective until with what appears to be dramatic suddenness respiration ceases with the chest in the position of expiration The mechanisms concerned in the deflation of the thorax will be appreciated by an examination of the following diagrams

The cords during deep ether anæsthesia : on the left, as seen through a laryngoscope ; on the right, the corresponding coronal section of the

Fig 177
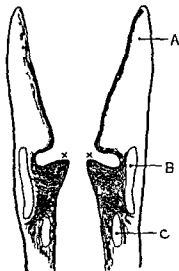
Fig 178   (*After Jackson*[3])

A = Aryepiglottic fold.
B = Thyroid cartilage
C = Cricoid cartilage
λλ = Vocal cords

larynx.   The cords are in the mean position of normal quiet respiration. Although they become widely abducted in forced respiration, the range of movement in normal respiration is slight.

Fig 179
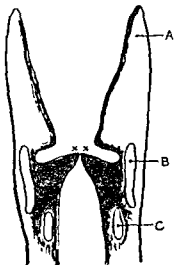
Fig. 180.

Adduction of the vocal cords in laryngeal spasm.

These figures show a more advanced degree of laryngeal spasm during light ether anæsthesia   The arytenoid cartilages are in close

FIG 181.
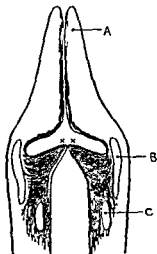
FIG 182

A = Aryepiglottic fold
B = Thyroid cartilage
C = Cricoid cartilage
XX = Vocal cords

apposition   The adducted vocal cords are covered by the tightly approximated folds of mucous membrane known as the false cords   These in turn are obscured by the aryepiglottic folds which close the larynx with a sphincter like action   The vertical slit lies over the laryngeal entrance   It will be noticed that the spasm has prevented the blade of the laryngoscope from being carried as far forwards as in fig 179, and hence more of the pharynx is seen   When the muscles of the larynx are in spasm from anoxæmia, the appearance is similar except that the pink colour associated with ether anæsthesia is replaced by a slate blue

Inspiration
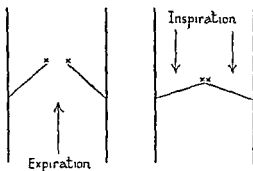
Expiration

FIG 183   (After Jackson)

The ineffectiveness of attempts at artificial respiration in this stage can be understood from an examination of the adjoining two figures, which illustrate diagrammatically the position of the cords during laryngeal spasm

The bases of the cords are distal to their free ends   The action of the adducted

cords is similar to that of a pair of swinging doors which swing one
way only. Air can be expelled from the chest because they swing
open to allow its egress, ingress of air is, however, prevented because
the cords swing back like two one-way doors. The more powerful
the inspiratory effort, the firmer the apposition of the cords. The
condition is comparable to check valve obstruction by the tongue.
When respiratory effort ceases as a result of this valve like action, the
chest will be in the position of expiration. At this stage attempts
to inflate the lungs either by oxygen under pressure (positive pressure
proximal to the cords) or by attempts at artificial respiration (negative
pressure distal to the cords), must obviously be ineffective.

Illustrative cases are described and the treatment of this condition
dealt with on p 276

ŒDEMA OF THE GLOTTIS

The causes of obstruction so far discussed occur during the course
of anæsthesia. Respiratory obstruction of varying severity may occur,
too, in the conscious patient. The most common cause for this is
spread of infection from a wisdom tooth to the upper margins of
the larynx. The aryepiglottic folds become œdematous and encroach
on the airway.

FIG 184 —Normal
larynx as seen in a
laryngoscopic mirror

FIG 185 (After
Jackson) —Œdema of
right aryepiglottic fold
showing encroachment
on the laryngeal open
ing. There is slight
œdema of the epiglottis
and left aryepiglottic
fold also

A *conscious* patient overcomes the early stages of respiratory
obstruction by using his accessory muscles of inspiration. Normally
the thorax expands with but little muscular effort, since air can be
drawn in freely. If the glottic aperture is narrowed by inflammation
or by a foreign body, the resistance to the passage of air is increased

The extra power provided by the accessory muscles increases the negative pressure within the thorax and is capable of compensating for varying degrees of respiratory obstruction At first progress of the obstruction may be insidious and the effects of diminished oxygen intake not conspicuous Relief of the condition however is urgent as the time will come generally without warning when the alveolar oxygen tension is reduced below the critical level necessary to keep the patient alert and breathing vigorously A vicious circle is now established and the patient who previously was not recognised as being in immediate danger will die within a few minutes

F G 18C

This photograph illustrates the clinical picture typical of partial occlusion of the larynx from any cause Note the anxious expression the action of the accessory muscles of respiration and the in drawing of the supraclavicular and intercostal spaces Since air cannot be sucked in freely past the obstruction the negative pressure within the thorax results in indrawing of the soft parts of the thoracic wall
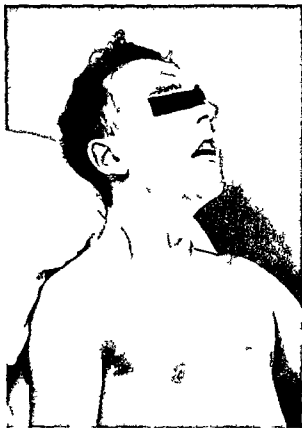
When an operation has to be performed for the relief of this condition (e g for removal of an impacted wisdom tooth infection round which is causing the spreading œdema) the anæsthetist must realise that anæsthesia will be especially dangerous for a patient who

even when at rest, is obliged to use his accessory muscles of inspiration, for production of unconsciousness in such a patient may cause death If the obstruction is severe such a patient cannot sleep because as soon as he dozes off, the accessory muscles, being under voluntary control, cease to act, and he wakes with a sense of suffocation Similarly, if unconsciousness is produced by any general anæsthetic the help of the accessory muscles is lost, and if the condition is not dealt with at once the patient will die rapidly of asphyxia Artificial respiration applied to a patient with such a degree of respiratory obstruction is ineffective, and death is inevitable without immediate tracheotomy and artificial respiration

Because of the patient's respiratory distress the anæsthetist may be tempted to employ a basal anæsthetic, the use of which, however, is contra-indicated absolutely The warning against the use of general anæsthetics, given in discussing cases of œdema of the larynx, applies with particular emphasis to the basal anæsthetics Respiratory arrest here occurs with the onset of unconsciousness (p 31), so that the patient is in an even graver condition than would be the normal patient to whom had been given an overdose of basal anæsthetic sufficient to produce respiratory arrest, since he has the added grave complication of a quite inadequate airway Apart altogether from production of unconsciousness, no drug should be given which will depress the respiratory centre It may even be dangerous to give small doses of morpha to relieve the patient's mental and physical distress

If the degree of obstruction does not necessitate the full action of the accessory respiratory muscles, the anæsthetist may feel that the usual respiratory muscles will be capable of achieving just sufficient respiratory exchange provided adequate oxygen is given, and therefore that he is justified in administering an anæsthetic without a preliminary tracheotomy ' He has only his clinical judgment to guide him here, and even if he feels satisfied that the patient can be anæsthetised safely, a tracheotomy outfit must be at hand in case of need If the obstruction necessitates the patient using his accessory muscles to their utmost, a tracheotomy must be performed under local anæsthesia before a general anæsthetic is given Any respiratory difficulty is thus overcome, and with it any contra indication to general anæsthesia

Many years ago one of us was present as an onlooker when an operation was to be performed for the extraction of a wisdom tooth infection round which was causing œdema of the glottis sufficient to make the patient use his accessory inspiratory muscles Induction of anæsthesia was peaceful, but immediately unconsciousness supervened inspiratory effort faded away, and despite

attempts at artificial respiration, the patient died The underlying pathology was not appreciated, and since the patient was thought to be dead from primary heart failure, no tracheotomy was performed, although if this had been done promptly it is probable that the patient's life could have been saved.

Deaths from this cause are frequently attributed to the particular anæsthetic used In turn every anæsthetic has thus been blamed Not until it is realised that death results from the production of unconsciousness, and not from the effect of any particular anæsthetic, will the mortality in this type of case be reduced.

REFERENCES

(1) Jackson C and Jackson C L 1937. *The Larynx and its Diseases*
      Philadelphia and London   181
(2) Archer, W H   1934   *Dent Cosmos*   **76,** 1233
(3) Jackson C , and Jackson C L   1937   *The Larynx and its Diseases*
      Philadelphia and London   31
(4) *Ibid* 270.
(5) *Ibid* 86

CHAPTER XXVII

EMERGENCIES

IN operations in the mouth there are special risks of obstruction to the airway (see previous chapter), and special precautions must be taken. The prevention of anæsthetic emergencies in general will be illustrated here by considering their avoidance in dental anæsthesia in particular, we shall then proceed to consider the different emergencies and their treatment

All accidents associated with dental anæsthesia should be avoidable, and observance of the following measures will minimise the risk of their occurrence

1 Before anæsthesia is begun the patient should be settled comfortably in the correct position in the dental chair (fig 61, p 182), and this position maintained by means of a strap round the pelvis

2 No extensive or prolonged operation should be attempted in the dental chair Long anæsthesia and extensive dental operations increase the risk of post-operative collapse, especially in the ambulatory patient, and in any case it is difficult without endotracheal anæsthesia to maintain a continuously clear airway

The preaching of this counsel of perfection is easier than its practice Hospital beds are rarely available for any except really major dental cases, with the result that numerous extensive operations are performed in the out-patients' department under general anæsthesia In private practice it is in such cases often difficult to make the patient realise that there are real advantages to be gained from entering a nursing home, and that the recommendation to do so despite the expense is not merely a fad of the dentist's This difficulty is common, and many young practitioners have not the courage to insist on nursing-home treatment Further, unfamiliarity with the strict technique practised in the operating theatre is responsible for the preference of some dental surgeons to operate in their own rooms

3 Only in exceptional circumstances should anæsthesia in the dental chair be prolonged if the difficulties of the operation are proving greater than were anticipated It is safer to discontinue the operation and arrange for its completion under local anæsthesia at another session, or if necessary in a nursing home or hospital Prolongation of nasal

nitrous-oxide anæsthesia merely in order to avoid confession of failure
to complete the operation is as risky as performing an extensive
operation in the dental chair

4 Nitrous-oxide anæsthesia should not be prolonged in patients
with physical disabilities which are aggravated by anoxæmia Patients
with toxic myocardial weakness of the post influenzal type, and those
suffering from exhaustion from overwork, poor feeding, or apprehension,
ideally should be dealt with in hospital or a nursing home and given
basal anæsthesia followed by nitrous oxide and ether Unfortunately,
for economic reasons they are often subjected to the risks of prolonged
anæsthesia in the dental chair

5 Every possible precaution must be taken to prevent the entrance
of foreign bodies into the air passages or alimentary tract (a) All
dentures should be removed (b) The mouth should be inspected for
crowns, fillings, and loose or weak teeth, so that these may be avoided
when a Mason's gag is used If this inspection is omitted, mere insertion
of the sponge may prove dangerous, as shown by a case where a loose
incisor tooth was dislodged in this way and pushed into the trachea
(c) The jaws of the Mason s gag should be covered with rubber to prevent
damage to the teeth   The gag should always be used gently, and the
mouth opened slowly (d) The pharynx should be properly packed
(e) The head should not be over extended   (f) The operation should
be proceeded with only when anæsthesia is tranquil

FOREIGN BODIES LOST IN THE MOUTH

If a loose body in the mouth slips backwards into the pharynx, it
may then enter either the œsophagus or the air passages Chevalier
Jackson [1] points out that functions of the larynx other than that of
speech are generally given little consideration He observes that,
phylogenetically phonation is late and articulate speech, as we know it,
very late indeed   He describes the fundamental purpose of the larynx
for the great majority of animals, including man, to be the protection
of the air passages against the entrance of food

Any loose object in the mouth is a potential danger Spicules of
bone, broken or whole teeth, fillings, rubber covers from Mason's
gags, and vomitus have all been found in the air passages The
number of potential foreign bodies should be reduced as far as possible
Small pledgets of wool should not be used for swabbing out tooth
sockets ; the throat sponge or pack should have attached to it a tape
which hangs out of the mouth The fact that accidents due to
foreign bodies are so rare, in spite of the great number of opera-

tions in the mouth is a great tribute to the skill and care of dental surgeons

Conditions which increase the danger of entrance of foreign bodies into the lungs such as continuing the operation after the operation field has become obscured by bleeding or when the patient is restless are considered on page 318 where also the importance of packing the throat and the advantages offered by endotracheal anæsthesia for major dental operations are pointed out Everything in the mouth may be slippery from saliva and unless the pharynx is well protected it is all too easy for a foreign body to enter the œsophagus or trachea It is significant that foreign bodies are lost most often when anæsthesia is turbulent Fortunately the patient is then so lightly anæsthetised that the swallowing reflex is present and a foreign body is therefore more likely to be swallowed than inspired If a foreign body is lost during deep anæsthesia the risk of its entrance into the larynx is increased because the swallowing reflex has been lost

In order of frequency the lost foreign body is likely either (a) to pass into the œsophagus (b) to pass through the glottis or (c) to be arrested by the vocal cords causing acute respiratory obstruction The correct procedure when a foreign body is missing is dealt with on page 319

If there is no definite indication whether the foreign body has been swallowed or inspired and if radiological examination is negative the patient should follow at first the simple routine appropriate for a swallowed foreign body but a particularly careful watch must be kept on the patient for symptoms indicating that it is in the lungs

Foreign bodies in the alimentary tract —It is rare for a swallowed foreign body if it passes through the œsophagus to lodge anywhere in the alimentary canal sufficiently long to do any harm A jagged foreign body such as a small denture held up in the œsophagus must be removed skilfully as soon as possible by œsophagoscopy under local or general anæsthesia for if there is ulceration of the œsophagus the infection spreads to the mediastinum and this condition has a very high mortality rate

If the foreign body is in the stomach or intestines bulky residue foods (e g porridge bran) should be given and if thought necessary the fæces may be sifted to discover when it is passed The temptation to give purgatives to hasten the exit of the foreign body must be sternly resisted since they increase the tendency to spastic contraction and the liability of the foreign body to become impacted an occurrence attended by the risk otherwise remote of perforation of the intestine

Although the prognosis for a foreign body which has been swallowed is good and surgical interference is rarely necessary that for a foreign body in the lungs is always grave unless the patient receives urgent and skilful treatment

Foreign Bodies in the Air Passages

Even when the patient is conscious a foreign body may disappear into the air passages without producing immediate symptoms and the chance of this occurring is of course much greater when the patient is anæsthetised   Although it is true that under light anæsthesia a foreign body is more likely to be swallowed than inspired there is no guarantee that the airway will not be invaded for the coughing which a foreign body at the larynx may incite is preceded commonly by a deep inspiration which increases the risk of its entering the larynx As soon as anæsthesia is deep enough to abolish the cough reflex any small foreign body which is lost backwards from the mouth is likely to fall directly through the open glottis into one or other bronchus usually the right where it may not give rise to respiratory signs or difficulty   *The fact that this accident may occur without any immediate signs must be emphasised*

The most common causes of the entrance of a foreign body into the larynx are

1   Allowing an unconscious patient who is vomiting to remain in a position where the vomitus does not drain away at once   If the patient is supine his head should be lowered and turned to one side (fig 163 p 235)   if he is in the dental chair his head should be pushed well forward (fig 82 p 208)

2   Pulling the tongue forward during the act of vomiting since this makes swallowing and closure of the larynx difficult or impossible

3   Extending the head too far in the dental chair as is liable to occur when the anæsthetist extends the head to help the dentist when he is extracting an upper wisdom tooth   The larynx cannot then be raised even voluntarily and swallowing is impossible so that the entrance to the larynx cannot be protected   The anæsthetist should impress upon himself the vulnerability of the larynx when the head is fully extended by attempting to swallow with his head in this position Further it is difficult to pack off effectively when the upper molar teeth   This position is illustrated in fig 173 p 262 and an instance is given on p 328 of a foreign body entering into the lungs in a case where the head was over extended

Subsequent events depend on the size of the foreign body and where it lodges on its infectivity and on the resistance of the tissues There is usually a symptomless interval and this may last a few days only or may extend to weeks or even months although then there are usually paroxysms of coughing If after an operation on the mouth a patient develops lung trouble which does not clear up quickly the possibility of a foreign body being in the lungs must always be considered A prolonged symptomless interval is often responsible for failure to make the correct diagnosis when symptoms do eventually appear If the advice given (p 327) has been followed and the possibility of a foreign body being in the lung has been communicated to the family doctor immediately after the operation he will be in a position to make an early diagnosis in an otherwise baffling case Early treatment can then be instituted and this is important since delay may prove fatal

A septic foreign body wherever situated eventually gives rise to suppuration and abscess formation The gravity of the condition depends to a considerable extent on the locality of the abscess and the ease with which it can be drained In the subcutaneous tissues an abscess is at once recognisable and can be incised and drained without delay In the lung the symptoms of an abscess vary greatly Usually an irritating cough develops first soon to be followed by expectoration the sputum may or may not be blood streaked and eventually becomes foul smelling Fever is a late sign and is usually irregular In other cases influenza or bronchitis is liable to be diagnosed and the gravity of the condition is not realised until instead of recovering within the expected time the patient becomes worse If the presence of a foreign body is not diagnosed until symptoms of a lung abscess have developed the patient's condition will deteriorate rapidly and death will be inevitable unless the foreign body is removed at once and adequate drainage established

Provided treatment is not delayed the prognosis when a foreign body is situated in the bronchus is excellent Removal by an expert is easy particularly if performed early Chevalier Jackson writes

The patient from whom a foreign body has been removed within a few days by peroral bronchoscopy has a hard time trying to show that he has suffered much or that he is any the worse physically On the other hand the patient with lung suppuration due to neglect of early diagnosis and removal has a good case with which to elicit the sympathy of the jury ³

ACUTE RESPIRATORY OBSTRUCTION

This may occur in the larynx from spastic adduction of the vocal cords or from impaction of a foreign body The treatment depends on which of these two conditions is responsible but without laryngoscopy it may be impossible to decide with certainty between these alternatives To provide for the possibility that the obstruction is caused by a foreign body the anæsthetist should ask for the tracheotomy instruments to be set out

Signs of Acute Respiratory Obstruction

Even in the anæsthetised patient respiratory movements may continue for some seconds after they have ceased to be effective During this time the indrawing of the suprasternal and supraclavicular notches constricts the veins at the root of the neck and is largely responsible for producing cyanosis and extreme congestion of the face The heart continues to beat for some minutes after respiration has ceased and venous engorgement increases since blood is forced into the vessels at a time when its return is not aided by the pumplike mechanism of the thorax

Laryngeal Spasm

This condition is described on pp 264–267 In clinical anæsthesia it may result (i) at a late stage of anoxæmic anoxia from an ill advised attempt to subdue an unpremedicated anæsthetic resistant patient with nitrous oxide (ii) from attempts to intubate the uncocainised larynx under *light* barbiturate or *light* cyclopropane anæsthesia in either of which laryngeal spasm is extremely probable

In all these cases the respiratory centre is depressed and the spasm may cause acute respiratory obstruction persisting until the patient is moribund The alarming appearance of the patient and the fact that artificial respiration is at first unsuccessful (p 278) are likely to tempt the anæsthetist to perform tracheotomy under the erroneous impression that respiration is obstructed by a foreign body With proper treatment the patient's condition undeniably serious is however not as grave as his appearance would suggest for the very persistence of muscular tone shown by the laryngeal spasm can be regarded as in it self reassuring Although after cessation of respiration the patient's condition steadily deteriorates if the cardiac musculature

is reasonably healthy, the heart will still continue to beat for some time
When usually about one minute after respiration has ceased (it seems
much longer to the anæsthetist!) the laryngeal spasm has passed off
because the patient is *in extremis*, the airway becomes free again, and
artificial respiration, or inflation of the lungs with oxygen will then be
effective

When nitrous oxide is given to a resistant patient, if he has not
been premedicated and if supplementary anæsthesia is not used, he
does not become anæsthetised unless at certain stages of anæsthesia
oxygen deprivation is so severe that there is a danger of laryngeal
spasm The following six cases in our own experience are typical
All six patients were plethoric and of the 'bull necked' type, and
five of them were men

At a demonstration by R R M of nitrous oxide anæsthesia for
dental cases a man aged 50 stout and short necked was brought
in with a history of previous difficulty with this anæsthetic
administered nasally It was stated that the man was unable to
breathe through his nose and also that it had been impossible to
anæsthetise him sufficiently to allow extractions to be performed
Several teeth had to be removed The patient was asked to blow
his nose and was found to be perfectly well able to breathe through
it, in fact unconsciousness was induced without even cover-
ing the patient's mouth The anæsthetist accordingly felt that
the previous administration had probably been unskilful and
proceeded in the usual way The patient was noisy and still
mumbling at a time when cyanosis was so marked that one would
have expected no such restlessness even in this type of individual
Administration of N₂O was continued, but despite marked
anoxæmia, the anæsthesia was not deep enough to prevent reflex
responses, and the patient reverted to mouth breathing as soon
as the extraction was attempted The operation was therefore
suspended and the depth of anæsthesia still further increased,
here unwisely by pushing N₂O The sequence of events was
then approximately as follows Respiration became stertorous
and snatchy, and during the following ten seconds inspiratory
efforts were ineffective, and respiration ceased Although from
the stertor and from the patient's appearance it was obvious that
there was marked anoxæmia, the cessation of respiration was, in
view of the muscular activity 30 seconds previously, unexpectedly
sudden The tongue at this stage had become small and spastic,
and almost wooden in consistency A few seconds later it relaxed
like the rest of the body musculature and became large and flabby
The pupil became widely dilated and the eye death like Since

artificial respiration in the chair was found to be ineffective, the patient was placed on the floor, where it was continued   Ventilation was impossible, since air could neither enter nor leave the lungs, entrance being prevented by laryngeal spasm and exit by the fact that the chest was already in the extreme expiratory position   Tongue traction and artificial respiration were continued, and about a minute later the laryngeal spasm ceased, and ventilation became effective   Normal respiration then began quickly and the patient was replaced in the chair   In spite of the extreme depression to which he had been reduced the patient promptly became restless again   The attempt to anæsthetise this patient with N_2O alone was obviously ill-advised, ethyl chloride was accordingly used to supplement the N_2O, the operation was successfully concluded and the patient walked away none the worse for his experience

Of the other five patients three were in the dental chair and the other two on the operating table   The three former were anæsthetised by students in the out patients department   Anoxæmia was marked and laryngeal spasm developed and made ventilation impossible   As artificial respiration in the chair was ineffective, the patients were in each case placed on the floor, and the attempt to carry it out continued   It was difficult to believe that a foreign body was not the cause of obstruction, so much so that in one case tracheotomy instruments were asked for but recovery took place before they were produced   After tongue traction and artificial respiration for about a minute, air entered the chest and normal respiration was promptly resumed

In the two cases on the operating table, the laryngeal spasm was verified with a laryngoscope and it was found impossible to pass a Magill's tube   When the cords were seen to have relaxed, the tube passed without difficulty and the lungs were easily inflated with oxygen   Subsequent anæsthesia and recovery in these two cases also were uneventful

The following case illustrates the production of severe laryngeal spasm which is especially liable to occur under light barbiturate narcosis

A colleague who tried for some time to pass an endotracheal tube under light evipan narcosis found that laryngeal spasm occurred and persisted even after the attempt had been abandoned   The patient became cyanosed; and the spasm passed off and artificial respiration became effective only after his condition had further deteriorated as shown by cardiac irregularity

Treatment—Laborde's method of intermittent traction on the tongue[4] will restore respiration only if the reflex mechanisms on which it depends are still effective The tongue is grasped by forceps or held through a towel and drawn well out of the mouth and then released If after this cycle has been repeated seven or eight times in half a minute the patient still makes no effort to breathe, artificial respiration must be instituted The chest will be in the position of expiration and while laryngeal spasm persists artificial respiration will be ineffective, since the cords will be further approximated in the inspiratory phase (fig 183, p 266) Attempts at artificial respiration by manual methods or by inflation with oxygen must therefore be gentle, and must be continued so that as soon as the glottis opens air will enter the chest The question whether tracheotomy should be done or not must be decided by the man on the spot Grave as the condition of the patient is, we have not heard of any case where laryngeal spasm has proved fatal because tracheotomy was not performed Nevertheless, if a laryngoscope is not available to confirm the diagnosis, early tracheotomy will probably be justifiable, particularly if there is any suspicion that the obstruction is due to a foreign body

If with the aid of a laryngoscope the anæsthetist finds there is no foreign body in the larynx, he may attempt to pass a Magill's tube into the trachea The attempt may be successful if the spasm is not extreme or is beginning to relax, but vigorous efforts should not be made nor a tube of firmer consistency used, on account of the possibility of injuring the vocal cords

Impaction of a Foreign Body

A tooth fragment, or even a whole tooth rarely causes acute respiratory obstruction, since they are usually small enough to pass through the glottis Obstruction may occur, however, from the impaction of a sponge or vomitus in the larynx, usually just beyond reach of an exploring finger, and in such a position that if it cannot be extracted by forceps, tracheotomy will relieve the condition

A sponge or mouth pack is potentially very dangerous When the fresh sponge is placed in the normal position before the operation is commenced, it is elastic and big enough to be an effective pack, and it is difficult to believe that it could enter the larynx It should, however, be borne in mind that during an operation it often becomes sodden with blood and mucus, and is then easily compressed into a small slippery mass Ceasing to be a protection, it now becomes a

menace since it can be easily pushed backwards behind the base of
the tongue and thence sucked into the larynx

Some years ago one of us was anæsthetising a patient in the
dental chair for the extraction of a lower 6 which proved more
difficult than was expected During the long operation the
patient salivated profusely was slightly restless and the noise
made by the expiratory valve suddenly stopped Respiratory
efforts continued but were ineffective Investigation showed
that the sponge had disappeared from sight although it could be
touched with the tip of the finger just behind the epiglottis It
was however too far back to be gripped except by the forceps with
which it was successfully removed Inspection showed that the
sponge originally the size of an orange had shrunk to the size of a
walnut

Since this alarming experience we have made it an invariable rule
that any sponge or mouth pack should have attached to it a tape
the end of which hangs out of the mouth

Very rarely the obstruction is subglottic Blood-clot has been
known to slip through the glottis and cause acute respiratory obstruc
tion by blocking the bifurcation of the trachea In such a case
tracheotomy will afford no relief unless forceps are passed through
the wound and the clot withdrawn

Treatment.—If a laryngoscope is available the foreign body
should be removed with forceps under direct vision care being taken
not to push it farther into the larynx If a laryngoscope is not to
hand an attempt should be made to remove the obstruction by the
fingers or by a pair of forceps

If these efforts are not successful and if anæsthesia is still light the
patient may be given one good thump on the back in the hope of making
him cough and expel the foreign body if a child the patient may at
the same time be held upside down

For cases under nitrous-oxide anæsthesia where a foreign body
obstructs the larynx and cannot be removed digitally or by forceps
McKesson recommended that a mask should be applied firmly to the face
and oxygen delivered under pressure The rationale of the method is
that if the laryngeal opening is not completely occluded oxygen will
be forced through any chink Since recovery from N_2O is quick the
patient will soon regain his cough reflex and may be able to expel the
foreign body We have no first hand information of any case where
oxygen has been thus employed and it is obvious that there is some

danger of pushing the foreign body through the glottis In any case the method is unsuitable if a more potent anæsthetic than N_2O is being used since then oxygen will not lighten anæsthesia sufficiently quickly

If these attempts are unsuccessful *the trachea* (or in exceptional circumstances the larynx) *must be opened at once*

The indication for making an artificial opening into the air passages is the occurrence of acute respiratory obstruction caused by a foreign body at the inlet of the larynx and by reason of which the patient is *in extremis* The opening can be made into the trachea (tracheotomy) or into the larynx (laryngotomy) The former is the more complicated, but it is the operation of choice The more simple horizontal incision of laryngotomy will save life and the operator should not hesitate to undertake this operation if he feels his knowledge is not enough to enable him to perform tracheotomy The disadvantage of laryngotomy is the liability to subsequent stenosis [6]

EMERGENCY TRACHEOTOMY

In theory tracheotomy is a simple operation, easily performed by the student in his surgical anatomy classes, but it presents great difficulties in actual practice because of the circumstances in which it has to be done The dramatic suddenness with which the condition develops makes a certain amount of flurry inevitable , by the time the operation is begun the patient is deeply congested, so that the field of operation is obscured by profuse venous hæmorrhage , and when emergency tracheotomy has to be performed in a dental surgery, the instruments of choice and skilled assistance are rarely available

If the standard instruments are not available, the operator can, using only a knife, make an adequate opening into the air passages The trachea can be opened within 60 seconds after locating the site of incision and the operation should not take more than two minutes if the operator is familiar with the salient features of the procedure

Instruments Required—A tracheotomy set containing the instruments listed and illustrated below is part of the equipment of every operating theatre and should be available in every well appointed dental surgery

Fɪɢ 187
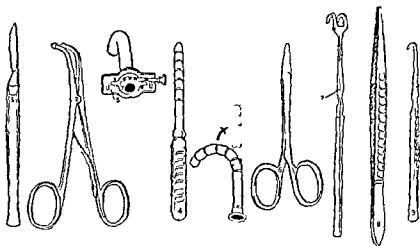
1 Scalpel
2 Tracheal dilator
3 Tracheotomy tube
4 Introducer
5 Inner tube
6 Several pairs of artery forceps
7 Retractors
8 Dissecting (conveying) forceps
9 Tracheal hook
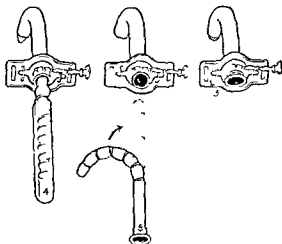
Fɪɢ 188.

The introducer (4) fits into the tracheotomy tube (3) and is used to guide it into position

When the tube is in position and the introducer has been withdrawn, the flexible inner tube (5) is inserted.

Anatomy
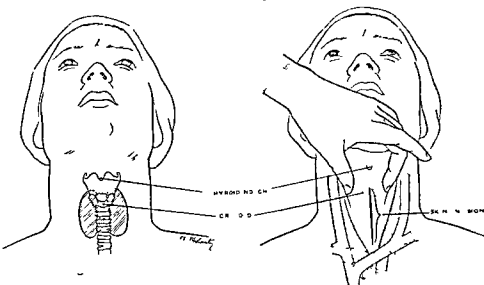
FIG 189

The trachea and its immediate relations are shown in relation to more superficial structures in the neck The great vessels lie deep to the sterno-mastoid muscles The œsophagus lies immediately behind the trachea

If the head is kept strictly in the midline, the danger of injuring the great vessels is very remote and exists only in the rare cases in which, in children, the left innominate vein crosses to the right side above the level of the manubrium sterni The landmarks employed and the site of the incision are shown The cricoid cartilage is more easily identified than is generally supposed The thumb and middle finger of the operator's left hand are placed on either side of this, in the depression between the sternomastoid muscles and the trachea, pushing the former laterally The trachea is steadied and rendered prominent by this manœuvre

The incision to be made in the trachea is vertical in the midline, upward, through the third and second rings Almost invariably this necessitates incising the isthmus of the thyroid gland Fig 190 shows also the site of a laryngotomy incision, a transverse slit through the cricothyroid membrane
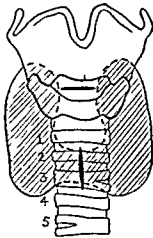
FIG 190

The Operation

The essential points of this operation are as follows the landmarks are the cricoid cartilage and the midline of the neck , the midline is strictly adhered to , bleeding is disregarded , the thumb and middle finger of the left hand, once they have identified and grasped the cricoid cartilage, retain this position throughout the operation the left index finger may be used to explore the upper part of the wound , the cricoid and first ring of the trachea must not be incised , the incision in the trachea is vertical and upwards through the third and second rings, care being taken not to incise too deeply for fear of injuring the posterior wall of the trachea and the œsophagus , once the tracheal incision is made it should be kept spread until an appropriate tracheotomy tube is inserted , bleeding is attended to only after respiration is restored

The steps in the operation are illustrated in the following diagrams For teaching purposes the structures encountered have been clearly shown, but it must be remembered that in actual fact, in emergency tracheotomy, very little is seen except blood, and that structures can be identified only by palpation Bleeding is a prominent feature of the operation and is due largely to engorgement of the tissues caused by resistance to the venous return to the thorax The best way to stop this bleeding is to restore the airway, when resumption of respiratory movements will reduce the greatly raised venous pressure to normal Not until respiration is restored are bleeding points dealt with by applying artery forceps and ligatures
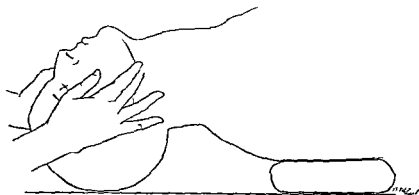
Fig 191

The patient is placed on his back with a cushion or folded coat under the shoulders to extend the head and stretch the neck, thus

bringing the trachea as near the surface as possible The object of
this position is to make the trachea accessible and, equally important,
to fix it   Even if there is only one assistant, his first duty is to main-
tain the head firmly in this position
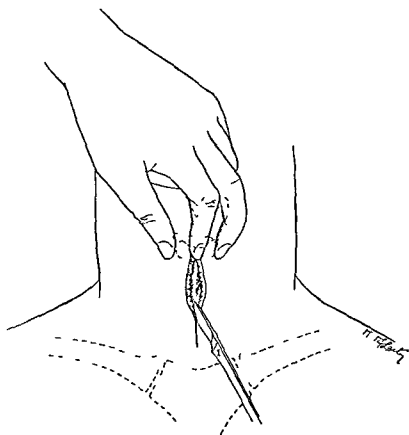
FIG 192

If time allows, the throat is painted with spirit or iodine The
cricoid is localised with the fingers of the left hand, thumb to the right
and middle finger to the left, the index finger resting on the midpoint
The index finger is lifted momentarily and the skin incision made in
the midline from the middle of the cricothyroid membrane to a
finger's breadth above the sternal notch
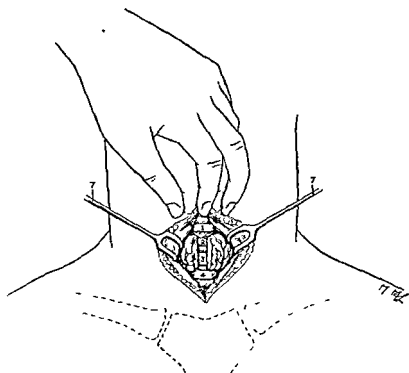
FIG 193

The tip of the index finger is now inserted into the upper part of
the wound defining the lower border of the cricoid cartilage   The
upper part of the incision is deepened down to the trachea   No
attempt is made to avoid the isthmus of the thyroid gland, which in
fact is usually divided   Bleeding is profuse and is disregarded until
the trachea is defined   If a second assistant is available, the wound
edges may be held apart by retractors
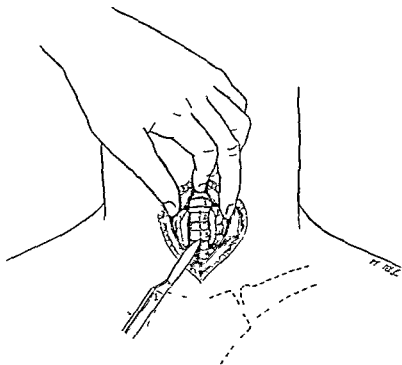
Fig 194

Under these conditions the trachea is not always easy to find, but the palpating finger should not fail to recognise the cartilaginous rings once they are encountered   The thumb and middle finger of the left hand clear the field by pushing sideways the cut thyroid gland and the sternohyoid and sternothyroid muscles   The knife is held with its back towards the sternal notch   Excess of blood is mopped from the operation field, and the scalpel, facing upwards, is inserted into the *trachea*   Since the cartilginous rings of the trachea are deficient in its posterior aspect, great care must be taken not to incise too deeply for fear of injuring the œsophagus   The incision is made vertically upwards through the third and second rings of the trachea   The first ring of the trachea and the cricoid cartilage are diligently avoided
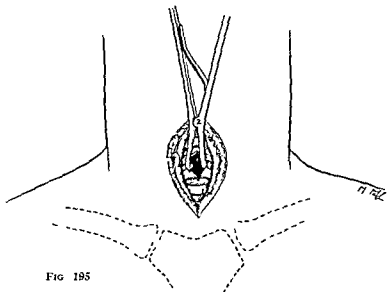
FIG 195

The wound is quickly mopped as free of blood as possible to prevent the blood being inhaled, and the tracheal incision spread with the tracheal dilator which is kept in position until the tracheotomy tube is inserted
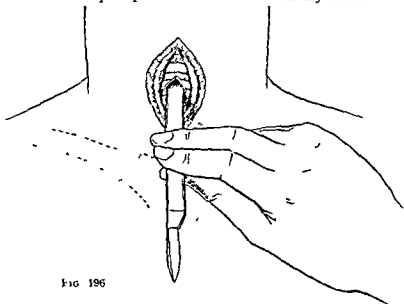
FIG 196

If a tracheal dilator is not available, the opening into the trachea can be made patent by inserting the handle of the scalpel and turning it through a right angle.
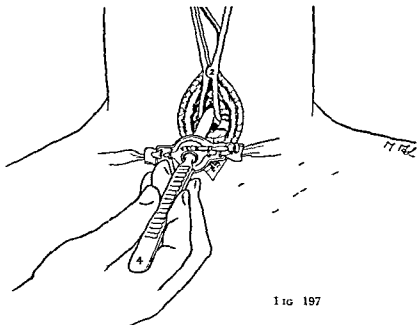
Fig 197

The introduction of the tube is often the most difficult part of the operation and must be done with deliberation   It is surprisingly easy to introduce it into the soft tissues beside or in front of the trachea
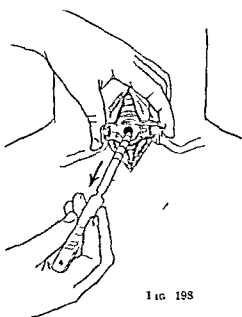
Fig 198
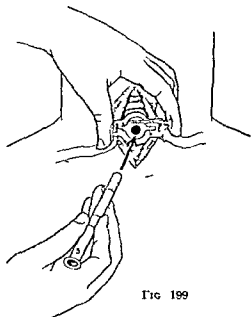
Fig 199

Once the tracheotomy tube is in position the introducer is immediately removed and the inner tube inserted   If respiratory effort has

ceased artificial respiration must be instituted   Not until respiration
is restored is hæmostasis effected   Artery forceps are omitted from
the diagram for the sake of clarity
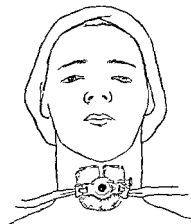
Gauze is packed between the
skin and the tracheotomy tube
which is then secured by tape round
the neck (fig 200)   A layer of gauze
can be placed in front of the opening
of the cannula to prevent any foreign
body from being inhaled   Breath
ing should now be effortless

These diagrams do not show the
use of the dissecting forceps and
the tracheal hook illustrated in the
tracheotomy set   The former are
of general use in any surgical opera
tion   The tracheal hook is classi
cally used for insertion under the
lower border of the cricoid cartilage to assist in fixing the trachea

Fig 200

Removal of the Foreign Body

The stimulus of opening the trachea often provokes a bout of
coughing which may expel the foreign body   In any case the trache
otomy tube should be inserted and left in position since any trauma
caused by the foreign body may be followed a few hours later by
œdema of the glottis

If the foreign body is not expelled no attempt need be made to
remove it   the immediate danger having been overcome   its extraction
by endoscopic methods can be deferred until later

Dangers of Tracheotomy

The great vessels of the neck may be incised unless the operator
keeps strictly to the midline   The œsophagus may be opened if the
incision is made too deeply   When this happens the subsequent
infection is extremely virulent and almost invariably fatal   The left
innominate vein may be injured in a child if the incision is carried too
low

The remote danger of tracheotomy is that of permanent laryngeal
or tracheal stenosis   The strongest factor in maintaining the laryngeal
lumen is the cricoid cartilage which is a complete ring   whereas the

thyroid cartilage which rests upon it is incomplete posteriorly The risk of stenosis is practically non existent if the incision is made below the first ring of the trachea as described If, however the first ring of the trachea, and more particularly the cricoid cartilage, the only *complete* ring of cartilage in the respiratory tract, is incised there is grave danger of subsequent cicatricial stenosis of the air passage sufficient to cause chronic respiratory obstruction If the emergency operation has involved the cricoid cartilage or first ring of the trachea, the expert under whose charge the patient is placed may see fit at once to perform a subsequent tracheotomy lower down, thus diminishing the risk of stenosis A second operation might also be performed for the same reason after an emergency laryngotomy

After-care

Care must be taken that the tube does not become blocked by secretions The inner tube should be changed as often as necessary, and in any case every 3–4 hours The outer tube should be changed daily, to prevent tracheal ulceration and secondary hæmorrhage A layer of gauze is kept over the opening of the tube to prevent inhalation of foreign bodies Cough sedatives and narcotics should not be employed, since the cough reflex is an important protective mechanism in preventing the accumulation of bronchial secretion

The tracheotomy tube can be removed when the condition for which it was inserted is completely relieved This is usually the case in two to three days when obstruction was due to impaction of a foreign body

ORDERLY TRACHEOTOMY

This is performed for relief of respiratory obstruction of a less acute nature than that necessitating emergency tracheotomy and is generally carried out under local anæsthesia The principles are the same as for emergency tracheotomy, the main difference being that hæmostasis is effected as the operation proceeds The isthmus of the thyroid is divided between clamps, the tracheal incision then made as described and the tracheotomy tube inserted

LARYNGOTOMY

The larynx extends to the lower border of the cricoid cartilage Laryngotomy consists in making a transverse opening through the

cricothyroid membrane i e at a level just below the vocal cords
This emergency operation is comparatively easy to perform but
healing of the wound may be followed by cicatrisation causing the
serious complication of laryngeal stenosis   If an operator in an
emergency doubts his ability to perform a tracheotomy he would be
justified in performing a laryngotomy   The patient should be
transferred as soon as possible to the care of a laryngologist who would
then if necessary perform a tracheotomy in order to allow the
laryngotomy wound to heal early so diminishing the risk of laryngeal
stenosis

   The landmarks for laryngotomy are easily recognisable
The patient is placed in the same position as for tracheotomy   A
transverse skin incision between the cricoid and thyroid cartilages
is deepened in the centre through the cricothyroid membrane
(fig 190 p 283)
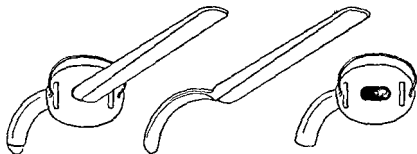
Fig 201 —Laryngotomy tube and introducer

   The opening is spread with a dilator or artery forceps and a laryng
otomy tube inserted   The introducer is withdrawn and the tube fixed
in position by tying round the neck the tapes which are attached to
the eyelets   The cross sections of a laryngotomy and a tracheotomy
tube differ characteristically   the former is flat the latter more
rounded   For a given patient the appropriate laryngotomy tube is
much shorter than the corresponding tracheotomy tube   An inner
tube is not necessary

   The after-care required by a patient with a laryngotomy is the same
as for one with a tracheotomy   It should be noted that it is unwise
to leave a laryngotomy tube in for a long period since this greatly
increases the danger of stenosis

OVERDOSE OF ANÆSTHETIC

Respiratory arrest occurs when an overdose of any anæsthetic is given Except occasionally with chloroform, it occurs before cardiac failure so that in the case of *inhalation* anæsthesia it is generally possible, by starting artificial respiration promptly, to keep the tissues oxygenated until the excess of anæsthetic has been excreted   Treatment of respiratory arrest produced by anæsthetics given by other routes is less liable to be effective (p 16)

The immediate treatment of overdose, whatever the anæsthetic or its route of administration, is the same   In this emergency the anæsthetist must rely on his hands and not on drugs   Artificial respiration is worth all the drugs in the pharmacopœia   If normal breathing cannot be restored in this way it is in our opinion highly improbable that any other method would have been successful   The beneficial effects of CO_2, and of analeptics are in some cases dramatic, but experimental evidence suggests that this happens only in cases which would have fared equally well or even better in the long run with oxygen alone , and that for a patient *in extremis* CO_2 or analeptics may actually turn the scale against him.

ARTIFICIAL RESPIRATION

In cases where an overdose of the anæsthetic has been given, or in cases of advanced oxygen-lack, the respiratory centre becomes depressed and respiration ceases before the heart stops beating   As long as circulation continues, life can be maintained by artificial respiration   Provided irreparable damage to the vital centres has not been caused the respiratory centre will recover after sufficient anæsthetic has been excreted

The essential feature of all methods of artificial respiration is alternating distension and deflation of the lungs   Besides supplying oxygen and removing CO_2 these movements may imitate the reflexes which function in normal respiration (p 50)   In all cases the airway must be kept clear and, if necessary, the back of the throat should be swabbed free of mucus and blood.

Inflation with Oxygen

Some means of inflating with oxygen should be available in every operating theatre   The McKesson anæsthetic apparatus is excellent for this purpose, and as an alternative the Oxford Inflator* will be found inexpensive, compact, and easy to work
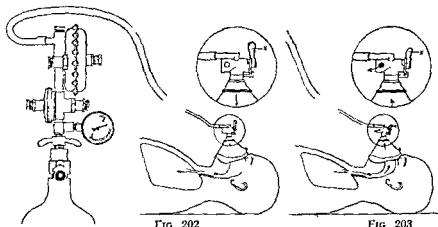
Fig 202

Fig 203

The Oxford Inflator is connected to the top of a cylinder of oxygen By means of reducing valves the pressure of the oxygen delivered is reduced to 40 mm Hg   The face piece is applied tightly and the jaw is kept forward so as to maintain a clear airway   When the lever X is turned into the position illustrated in fig 202 the lungs are inflated with oxygen

When the lever is turned to the   off   position (fig 203) it cuts off communication with the cylinder uncovers a hole in the mask and allows the lungs to deflate

If an apparatus of the inflator type is not available any apparatus
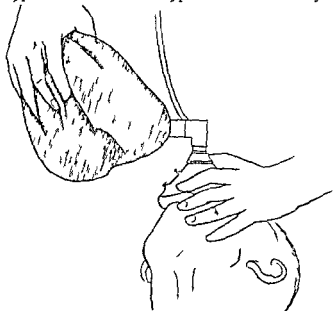
Fig 204

with a face piece and rebreathing bag can be used. The mask is applied firmly to the face, the expiratory valve is screwed down and the bag filled with oxygen. The anæsthetist by squeezing the bag (fig 204) can produce a pressure of 10 15 mm Hg easily sufficient to inflate the lungs provided the airway is clear. The lungs deflate when the mask is raised from the face.

Manual Methods of Artificial Respiration

Sometimes particularly in children respiration can be restarted when the patient is in the dental chair simply by compressing the chest once or twice and allowing it to recoil. If this is ineffective the more classical methods must be resorted to. In no case should the force applied be violent, numerous cases are on record where at post mortems ribs have been found broken. Intermittent steady yet gentle pressure on the chest wall will be found sufficient to effect a good exchange of air. *The temptation to try to hasten recovery by compressing and releasing the chest too frequently must be resisted.* The optimum rate is about 12 14 per minute. The ventilation is not being effective unless the entrance and exit of air can be heard.

Schaefer's method —This is an efficient method of artificial respiration and is not fatiguing to the operator. The air-exchange is

FIG 205

approximately normal. The patient lies face downwards a position which has the advantage of ensuring that the tongue falls away from the posterior pharyngeal wall and in cases of drowning that water will run out of the mouth. For these reasons it is the method of choice

for an operator working single handed It is however usually impracticable on the operating table and in any case is generally unnecessary since an assistant is available to keep the airway clear
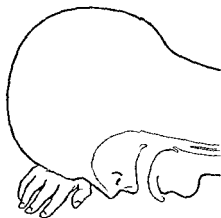
The patient is prone one arm is extended forwards and the other bent at the elbow so that the head may rest on it The head is turned to one side the tongue falls forwards and the nose and mouth are free The operator kneels astride the patient bearing his weight entirely upon his knees (fig 205) The ball of the thumb rests on the small of the back and the two thumbs are almost parallel and about 3 inches apart The fingers are outstretched and the palms of the hands spread comfortably over the lowermost ribs The arms are straight but relaxed

Fig 206   (After Drinker ?)
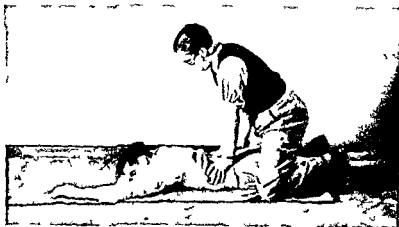
Fig 207

Fig 208

Expiration is produced by compressing the thorax The operator begins by leaning forward gradually with arms kept straight until

his weight is equally distributed between his hands and knees (fig 208) In this position his arms will be vertical This part of the procedure occupies about two seconds The operator then swings back again taking all his weight on to his knees and remains in this position for about 2 seconds to allow elastic recoil of the chest wall and abdomen to produce inspiration

Silvester's method—Inspiration is produced by extending the patient's arms above his head thereby expanding the thorax
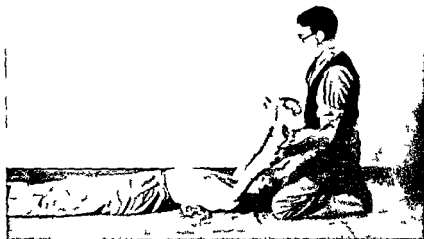
FIG 209

Expiration results from bringing the patient's arms forwards and pressing them gently but firmly against his thorax

FIG 210

Mechanically this is a poor method since the ventilation is only about one half to two-thirds of the normal

It has the further disadvantages that since the patient is on his back the tongue if not held forward by an assistant will gravitate backwards and occlude the airway (fig 211) and there is no drainage
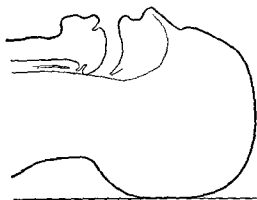
Fig 211

CARDIAC FAILURE

In anæsthetic emergencies except occasionally in the case of chloroform poisoning the heart will continue to beat for some time after respiration has ceased a time which will vary with the causation of the respiratory arrest and with the state of the patient's heart If the heart stops the question whether it can be made to beat again depends on the same two factors   Animal experiments suggest that after a cessation of beating there is increased irritability and contractility of the heart lasting for about 1½ minutes   During this time appropriate stimulation is often effective though it becomes less and less so as the condition of the heart deteriorates   Cases are however, on record of the heart beat being resumed even after 15 minutes

If the circulation has been in abeyance for longer than 5 minutes the chances of the patient surviving for more than a few hours are negligible owing to the damage done to the central nervous system particularly to the respiratory centre by the long anoxia   If however beating of the heart is restored within one or two minutes complete recovery is probable

Treatment—(1) To ensure that the vital centres shall get a maximal benefit from any feeble circulation which may be present the head is lowered and if possible the patient is put into a slight Trendelenburg position   Artificial respiration preferably by inflation of the lungs with oxygen is kept up throughout

(ii) The muscle of the right auricle is stimulated by the prick of a needle in the hope that it will contract and the beat be propagated to the ventricle

FIG 212

Hewer s cardiac puncture needle 5 inches long is inserted through the 3rd right intercostal space close to the sternum the point being directed backwards and slightly towards the midline, through the wall of the right auricle In adults the needle should be inserted 3½– 4 inches

(iii) If this does not start the heart beat the needle is withdrawn and an attempt is made to inject adrenaline (1 1 000) ₥ᵥ ᵥ into the cavity of the left ventricle which is admittedly difficult to locate James [8] suggests that this should be done as follows a point is taken at the junction of the lower ⅓rd and upper ⅔rds of a line joining the sternal notch and the xiphisternum From here a line is drawn horizontally to the left midaxillary line At the junction of the outer ⅓rd and inner ⅔rds of this line a straight needle is inserted for about 4 inches at right angles to the tangent on the chest wall The fact that this procedure has been known to restart the heart beat is explicable on the assumption that although no cardiac impulse is discernible there is still a feeble circulation which carries the adrenaline into the coronary arteries

(iv) As a final resort the hand is introduced into the abdominal cavity through an incision in the abdominal wall and the heart was saged There is no need to incise the diaphragm since this thin muscle, now completely relaxed does not prevent the heart from being grasped and kneaded against the anterior thoracic wall

REFERENCES

(1) Jackson, C and Jackson C L 1937 *The Larynx and its Diseases* Philadelphia and London 17
(2) McCrae T 1924 *Lancet* 1, 735
(3) Jackson C 1927 *J Amer dent Ass* 14, 1341.
(4) Laborde J B V 1892 *Bull Acad Méd Paris* 28, 9, 519
(5) Jackson C 1921 *Surg Gynec Obstet* 24, 392
(6) Macintosh R R and Pratt, C L G 1939 *Lancet* 1, 206
(7) Drinker C K. 1938 *Carbon Monoxide Asphyxia.* London New York Toronto 169
(8) James N R. 1940 Personal communication

CHAPTER XXVIII

CYLINDER VALVES AND REDUCING VALVES

At room temperature the pressure inside a cylinder containing N_2O remains constant at about 650 lb per square inch whilst in a cylinder of oxygen the pressure falls gradually from 1 800 lb per square inch (pp 186 187) The rate of flow of gas from the cylinder is regulated by a valve or valves

CYLINDER VALVES
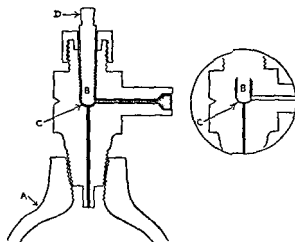
Fig 213 —Cylinder valve slightly opened Inset—valve closed

The ordinary cylinder valve fitted as standard to most cylinders does not allow of refinement in regulating the escape of gas When the cylinder is Off (circle inset) the base of the stem B fits down firmly on the valve seating C and as the cylinder is opened by turning the stem key D anti clockwise the stem is raised from the valve seating allowing gas to flow from the cylinder Delicacy of control depends partly on the accuracy of the valve seating and on the closeness of the thread of the stem

A much finer control, especially valuable where low rates of flow
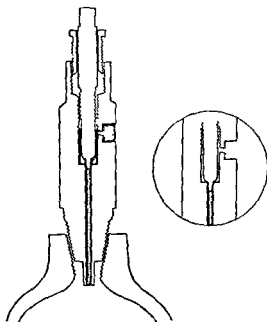
FIG 214 —Taper valve slightly opened   Inset—valve closed

are desired, is obtained if the valve has a tapered stem   Such valves
are commonly referred to as taper valves

In any anæsthetic circuit a reservoir for gas at approximately
atmospheric pressure is incorporated   This is necessary, because if in
a given patient the volume of gas or gases breathed per minute be
8 litres, the rate of flow of gas to the patient during the actual inspiratory
phase will be in the neighbourhood of 20 litres per minute   The
reservoir (ie the gas bag or the rebreathing bag) is thus depleted
intermittently by inspiration, and is replenished at a uniform rate
from the cylinder via the valve

REDUCING VALVES

By means of reducing valves the rate of flow of gas from the cylinder
can be more delicately controlled, for in effect they render available
the entire cylinder contents at a low pressure   Pressure-reducing
mechanisms can be employed, so that gas from the cylinder is released
to the patient in adequate quantities when he inspires, and the flow
checked automatically when inspiration is completed   By these means
economy is effected and the size of the necessary reservoir greatly
reduced

In the following diagrams the reducing valve mechanisms of the Minnitt gas and air apparatus (fig 220, p 309) are illustrated

McKesson reducing valve—The valve has a pressure regulator G which is adjusted so that pressure is exerted on the under surface of the flexible metal diaphragm O to which plug M is attached by a steel rod   In practice it is usual for the valve regulator to be adjusted so that the tension on the spring is equivalent to a pressure of 60 lb per square inch on the diaphragm O   By this means M is displaced from the seating between the high pressure (red) and the low-pressure (green) compartments so that the two compartments of the valve communicate   When the cylinder is turned on gas will now flow
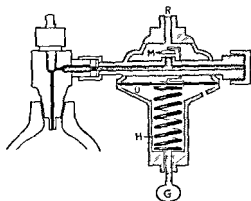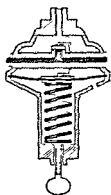
FIG 215   FIG 216

freely through the high-pressure compartment, past the valve seating, into the low pressure compartment and out through R   Should the outflow through R be obstructed, the pressure in the low pressure compartment will rise, and as soon as it reaches 60 lb per square inch the diaphragm will be deflected as in fig 216   The plug M is now drawn on to its seating and the gas flow into the low pressure chamber is cut off   If gas is allowed to escape through R, the pressure in the low pressure compartment will fall and the diaphragm O return to its previous position   Plug M is again displaced from its seating and fresh gas is admitted to the low-pressure chamber   Thus the pressure in the compartment coloured red is always that of the cylinder, but the pressure in the compartment coloured green is maintained automatically at that to which the valve is adjusted—in this case, 60 lb per square inch

After the gas leaves the reducing valve proper it passes through

the tube R into the small rubber bag reservoir Q, which is contained within the metal drum S   The outlet from the bag is obstructed by a metal disc T, which exerts a pressure equivalent to about 2 mm Hg Just before this tension is reached, the bulging bag pushes the base of the hinged rod U outwards and the head inwards, forcing the flexible diaphragm V over the outlet of tube R (fig 217), thus preventing the entrance of any further gas into the bag
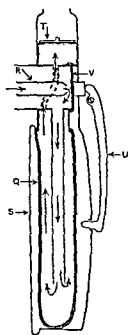
FIG 217
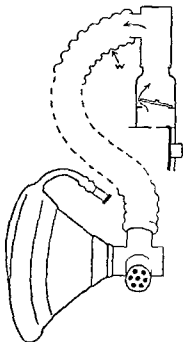
FIG 218

The reservoir is now full of gas at a pressure of just under 2 mm Hg   When the patient inspires, a negative pressure is created within the breathing tube W, and the weight-valve T is raised, allowing gas to enter the tube from the reservoir (figs 217, 218)   The bag deflates and the rod U moves with it, so that the diaphragm V is no longer held against the outlet of tube R   At the end of inspiration the weight-valve falls back, the bag fills, and the diaphragm V is again forced back against the outlet from tube R

Endurance valve (British Oxygen Co)—This valve works on a principle very similar to the McKesson

Adam's valve—This valve is set by the makers so that the

pressure in the low pressure compartment is maintained at about 7 lb per square inch The pressure of gas from the cylinder forces
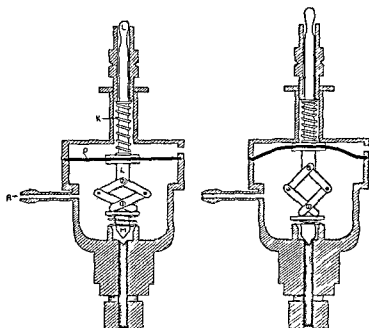
Fig 219

M from the valve seating and provided R is open gas will escape If R is obstructed so that the pressure in the low pressure compartment rises above 7 lb per square inch the diaphragm O will be forced upwards against the resistance of spring K The rod L is carried upwards, and the stem M attached to the lower part of the toggle (or lazy tongs) is forced down on to the valve seating preventing further gas from entering

CHAPTER XXIX

ANALGESIA

The progressive loss of sense of pain during induction is a feature which is generally overlooked and seldom put to any practical use This phase is, in fact, generally passed through as quickly as possible The loss begins early and soon reaches a stage where moderately painful stimuli are not appreciated as such, although the patient still has considerable control of his faculties Advantage can be taken of this analgesic stage to obtund fairly acute pain and yet retain the co-operation of the patient   Furthermore, it interferes but little with the physiological functions, and avoids the disadvantages of prolonged anæsthesia such as would otherwise be necessary in mid wifery It is also useful in dentistry, particularly where onl a few cavities have to be prepared In such cases the production of analgesia is easy, economical, and characterised by lack o after-effects

The student will do well to experience this analgesic state himself, so that he can explain the phenomenon to, and appreciate the feelings of, a patient under similar conditions But experiments with anæs-thetics should never be performed unless a second person is present Numerous fatalities have been reported through failure of the oxygen supply, or the postponement of the removal of the mask until the capacity to do so is lost

The anæsthetic most popular for the production of analgesia is nitrous oxide If this is inhaled, mixed with the requisite amount of air or oxygen, the student will find on testing his skin with a sterile needle that while the sense of touch remains, that of pain is absent Instead of a sharp and painful prick, the sensation is that associated with prodding the skin with the blunt end of a pin Subjective symptoms vary with the individual patient At this stage he will probably be conscious of exhilaration and a feeling of warmth throughout the body This may be followed by lassitude and a sense of remoteness from what is going on around Such a state is quite pleasant if the patient resigns himself to it If, on the other hand, he makes an effort—inevitably unsuccessful—to keep control of his faculties, he may become worried by his inability to do so

ANALGESIA IN DENTISTRY

The success of analgesia from the patient's point of view depends largely on gaining his confidence at the outset and convincing him that if only he will surrender himself completely to the pleasant drowsiness he need experience neither pain nor anxiety   Once analgesia is established the anæsthetist must remain in contact with the patient   maintaining his co-operation by a constant reassuring chatter   The patient is now particularly open to suggestion   and the right word spoken at the right moment   may make all the difference between comfortable drowsiness and an hysterical outburst   Some kind of premedication   for example aspirin 10 15 gr   given to an adult one hour before operation   is a valuable additional aid

Not all patients are suitable subjects for analgesia   A certain amount of understanding is required to appreciate the existence of a state in which the sense of touch is present but not that of pain   An excitable hysterical patient may lose control and scream or laugh   making operating an impossibility unless complete anæsthesia is induced   It is rare to find children trusting or co-operative enough to be suitable for analgesia

All kinds of cavity preparations and deep scaling can be performed under analgesia   Cavities situated at the cervical margin are particularly suitable   They are generally in the front of the mouth and so are readily accessible   and the debris can be washed or wiped away easily   Such cavities are often multiple and are always particularly sensitive   Analgesia allows the dentist to work rapidly   so that several cavities can be prepared at one sitting   The task of dealing with cavities in the molar region is much more difficult and the danger of exposing the pulp is correspondingly greater   Access is not easy and the illumination of the back of the mouth is often unsatisfactory   The tongue or sponge may get in the way and it is difficult to keep the cavity dry and clear of debris   If a spray is used the pharynx may be irritated initiating retching or vomiting

Analgesia will abolish pain only of a certain degree   The stimulus of severe pain may easily overcome the barrier even of deep analgesia   and since the patient's mental faculties at this stage are impaired the response to this stimulus may be uncontrolled action   For this reason analgesia is unsuitable for more extractions than one or two simple ones in patients who appreciate the limitations as well as the advantages of analgesia

The patient should be made comfortable in the chair and asked to relax   It is explained to him that whilst he will recognise the vibra

tions of the burr he will not be hurt   He should be told to imagine
he is sitting in an arm chair enjoying a rest and leaving all the
work to the dentist and anæsthetist   He is not to talk, but if
he feels any discomfort (the word " pain " is avoided) he can show
this by breathing more deeply through the nose, when the situation
will automatically correct itself, or by signalling with his finger so
that the anæsthetist may make any necessary adjustments to the
mixture

A small prop is put in the mouth and the head is tilted slightly
forward, making any saliva gravitate towards the salivary ejector,
which is placed under the tongue   The nose piece is held some distance
off the nose and gradually lowered into position   It should never be
necessary to use the mouth-cover   The patient should be talked to
continuously, and, even at the expense of repetition, encouraged to
relax   Four or five breaths of undiluted nitrous oxide are given before
air or oxygen is introduced   Air has some advantages over oxygen as
a diluent, for the introduction of a minute excess quantity of the
latter causes a disproportionate loss of the pain reducing qualities of
nitrous oxide and so makes it difficult to maintain precisely the desired
level of analgesia   Except in plethoric individuals (p 56) it is not
necessary to reduce the oxygen or air intake to levels which result in
cyanosis

It is impossible to lay down any rule for determining when the
desired analgesic state has been reached, but it is usually attained
after about four to five full breaths of nitrous oxide, after which it is
maintained by the addition of oxygen or air so that the oxygen per-
centage in the mixture is in the neighbourhood of 15–20   A sponge
should now be inserted in the mouth (not far back), with the explanation
that it is being placed there to remind the patient to breathe through
his nose   In point of fact its main purpose is to trap any tooth frag-
ments or debris   Care must be taken by the operator not to catch the
sponge in the revolving drill

Analgesia gives splendid opportunity for the development of team
work   The anæsthetist should signal to the dentist to begin and should
tell the patient, " Mr Jones is going to examine your teeth, and if you
feel the slightest discomfort I want you to breathe more deeply
through the nose "   The dentist begins on an insensitive part and
gradually increases the stimulus   The dentist and anæsthetist must
not speak to each other but can convey messages by signals   That
a particularly sensitive part is being drilled may be betrayed by an
involuntary upward twitch of the corner of the patient's mouth   This
information should be communicated to the dentist, as it may assist

him in localising and avoiding the root canal   Minor variations in
the depth of analgesia are of little importance provided the anæsthetist,
by patting the patient on the shoulder and talking to him in a simple,
straightforward manner, keeps in touch with him almost continuously
It is easy, particularly for the placid patient, to slip from the state
of analgesia into unconsciousness, so caution must be exercised in
promising a patient that he will remain awake throughout   Sometimes
the whole procedure is so comfortable for the patient that, even though
he is being given only a weak mixture of nitrous oxide he falls into
what appears to be a natural sleep and he describes it as such when
he wakes up   If a nervous patient dozes off for a short period he may
be alarmed when the analgesic state is entered again unless he is
reassured

The after-effects of analgesia in dentistry are negligible if it is not
continued longer than about ten minutes   Prolongation of this time
may be followed by vomiting particularly if the posterior pharyngeal
wall is irritated by dust particles or the sponge   There may be no
warning signs   The patient appears to be sleeping comfortably when
suddenly one or two contractions of the diaphragm occur and are
followed by vomiting which is projectile in type   The dentist should
not succumb to the temptation to prolong the sitting much longer
merely because analgesia has already progressed smoothly for seven
or eight minutes

SELF-ADMINISTERED ANALGESIA

Self administration of nitrous oxide or other inhalation anæsthetics
for the production of analgesia is becoming increasingly popular in
midwifery in surgery to allow the toilet of wounds to be carried out
painlessly, and in dentistry

Various machines have been devised to enable a co operative
patient to enjoy with safety the advantages of this state, even though
the practitioner devotes only a small part of his time to its production
and maintenance   The way in which safety is achieved varies in
different machines, but the main principles involved are *with nitrous
oxide* (i) air inlet ports are so arranged that the patient cannot inhale
nitrous oxide without at the same time drawing in air through the
ports, or (ii) although the patient at first breathes undiluted nitrous
oxide the reservoir becomes exhausted by two or three full breaths,
after which air only is sucked in through an inspiratory valve, and
with chloroform or vinesthene (iii) the patient by squeezing a hand bulb
forces air through a small head of the liquid anæsthetic, and the vapour,

freely diluted with air, is inhaled   The strength of anæsthetic vapour
inhaled is controlled in part by the vigour with which the bulb is
squeezed and the supply ceases altogether if the patient falls asleep
(iv) A mask applied firmly to the face has two inlet tubes   normal
respiration takes place solely through the short one which is open to
the air, but a deepening of respiratory effort causes anæsthetic vapour
to be drawn through the second tube (fig 227)

Minnitt's Gas and Air Apparatus

The machine is of the intermittent flow type i e reducing valves
are so arranged that gas is liberated only during inspiration   The valve
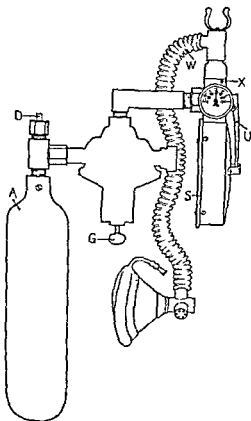
Fig 221
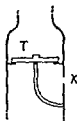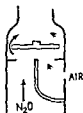
Fig 222

Fig 220

mechanisms are illustrated
and described on pp 302 and
303 Minnitt has modified
the mechanism shown in fig
217 so that when the patient
breathes in gas from the
reservoir bag he must at the
same time draw in air from
the room   The outlet from
the N_2O reservoir bag (Q, fig 217) is obstructed by a metal disc T
When the disc is on its seating (fig 221) it both obstructs the outlet
of the N_2O reservoir bag and prevents the ingress of air to the patient

20

through five small holes (only one, marked λ, is seen in figs 221 and 222) When the patient inspires, a negative pressure is created within the breathing tube (W, fig 220) and the weight valve T is raised Gas now flows in from the reservoir bag and air is drawn in through the air ports (fig 222). The size of the air ports determines the concentration of the resulting N_2O/air mixture The Minnitt machine aims at delivering nitrous oxide 45 per cent air 55 per cent — a mixture which provides adequate analgesia for the great majority of patients

Minnitt's apparatus is the only one recognised by the Central Midwives Board for use under certain conditions by midwives, and of necessity it errs on the side of safety Since patients show individual variations and the machine is standard the degree of analgesia must be imperfect for the 'resistant' subject The main criticism that can be levelled against the apparatus is that since the mixture delivered to the patient contains 11 per cent oxygen, analgesia is established relatively slowly, and is therefore ineffective for a woman in whom labour pains are abrupt in onset and short lasting
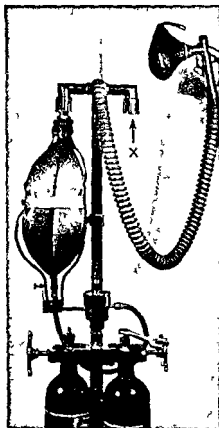
FIG 223

Chassar Moir's Apparatus
(fig 223)

A reducing valve is fitted to the cylinder and the gas bag reservoir fills slowly through a very fine jet which is automatically shut off when the bag is full When the patient holds the mask to her face she inspires undiluted N_2O until the bag is empty, after which air is inhaled through the inspiratory valve λ As soon as the bag has been emptied, it begins slowly to fill By this method analgesia is quickly established, but its duration is limited

Junker's Bottle

This is connected by rubber tubing to an open face mask covered with lint   The patient by squeezing the hand bulb forces air through
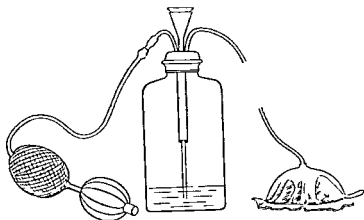
FIG 224

liquid chloroform , the vapour is carried to the mask and inhaled freely diluted with air which comes through the lint   The strength of the vapour inhaled depends on the vigour of the pumping the temperature of the liquid chloroform, the amount of liquid in the bottle and on the thickness of the lint
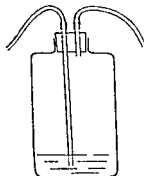
FIG 225

FIG 226

With a bottle of the design of fig 225 liquid chloroform instead of vapour will be blown on to the mask or patient s mouth if the tubes are wrongly connected   To prevent this accident various safety devices have been suggested, and one of them is illustrated in fig 226

When the tubes are connected correctly the ball is raised from its seating when air is pumped through the bottle, but if the tubes are wrongly connected it prevents the downward passage of liquid chloroform Whatever safety device is incorporated, the apparatus must be tested every time before use

Young Simpson's Inhaler
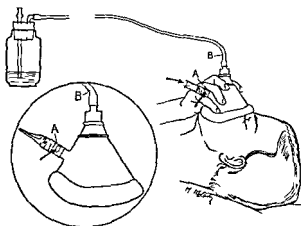
Fig 227

The short tube (A) made of cellu loid is prolonged for about an inch by very thin soft rubber tubing drawn over its end The long tube (B) is connected to the bottle containing the anæsthetic

The patient applies the mask firmly to the face Normal respiration takes place solely through the short tube which has two openings to the air (see arrows, fig 227) The distal opening, consisting of the free rubber end, remains patent when inspiration is quiet, but is closed by the approximation of its sides during a vigorous inspiratory effort (inset) Anæsthetic vapour is now drawn in through the long tube

CHAPTER XXX

THE OXFORD VAPORISER

THE Oxford Vaporiser, [1, 2, 3, 4, 5] with appropriate modifications, can be used for the administration of any liquid anæsthetic * In this
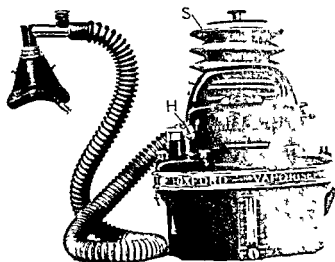
FIG 228

S hand bellows or spring bag
H control handle , this corresponds to tap H in fig 232
The figures on the scale represent closely the volumes per cent of ether vapour in the ether/air mixture delivered

chapter the principles on which the vaporiser works are illustrated by showing how it is used to volatilise ether

* If the vaporiser is to be used for chloroform a very considerable modification must be made in the temperature at which the apparatus is maintained

For reasons which will be apparent later the apparatus shown below is not suitable for producing deep anæsthesia with ether
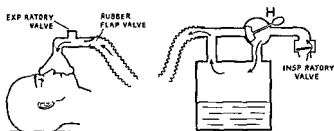
FIG 229—A simple type of vaporiser

Inspiration—When the mask is held firmly to the face the inspiratory valve is raised and air is drawn in   By means of the tap H the air can be directed straight to the patient or as above diverted over the top of the liquid anæsthetic before it reaches the patient With the tap in an intermediate position (see fig 234) part of the air can be made to travel through the anæsthetic container the remainder being by passed direct to the patient
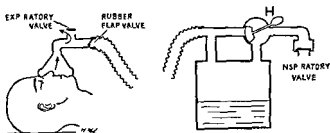
FIG 230

Expiration—The inspiratory valve and the rubber flap valve close   expiration takes place through the expiratory valve

VAPOUR PRESSURE OF LIQUID ETHER

The concentration of vapour in the saturated atmosphere above the surface of a liquid depends solely on the temperature of the liquid If the temperature changes the concentration of vapour in the air above the liquid changes accordingly

TEMP	−116°C	−10°C	18°C	34°C
%ETHER VAPOUR	0	15	55	100
%AIR	100	85	45	0
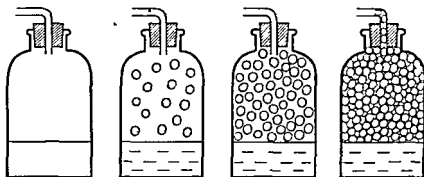
Fig 231 —To show the approximate percentage of ether vapour in the atmosphere immediately above ether at various temperatures ranging from − 116 C (freezing point of ether) to 34° C (boiling point of ether)

If the temperature of a liquid anæsthetic in a container can be kept constant there will be above it a supply of anæsthetic vapour of constant concentration

A considerable amount of heat is required to convert liquid ether into ether vapour at the same temperature When ether is administered from a Boyle's bottle (fig 57, p 171), or from an inhaler such as that shown in fig 229, this " latent heat of vaporisation " is not supplied from an outside source, and therefore is taken from the liquid ether itself , the temperature of the ether falls accordingly and with it the percentage of ether vapour in the air immediately above it

In the Oxford Vaporiser a supply of heat is available so that the temperature of the liquid ether, and consequently the concentration of ether vapour above it, is kept practically constant despite loss of heat due to evaporation Since the concentration of ether vapour in the apparatus is high and constant, the anæsthetist, by directing the patient's inspired air partially or wholly over the surface of the ether, can adjust the percentage of ether vapour delivered to the patient to any desired and known level

The use of an electrical thermostat to maintain the temperature of the ether constant was ruled out owing to the danger of explosion. Instead, use has been made of the natural energy reservoir afforded by the crystallisation of a molten substance, in this case calcium chloride When crystalline calcium chloride is heated its temperature rises uniformly until its melting point is reached when, despite continued heating, the temperature of the substance remains constant until it is

all transformed into a solid after which the temperature of the liquid would rise again if the heating were continued A considerable amount of heat is taken up by the calcium chloride during its conversion from the crystalline into the liquid state *at the same temperature* and on cooling this latent heat of fusion is given out by the substance when it crystallises (i e freezes) again
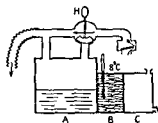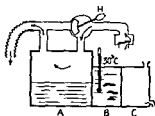
FIG 232　　　　　　　　　　FIG 233
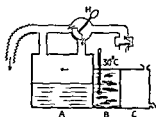
FIG 234

At the outset at room temperature say 18° C all the calcium chloride is in a solid state (fig 232) Sufficient hot water is poured into compartment C to raise the temperature of the calcium chloride in the middle compartment to melting point 30° C and then to melt a large part of the calcium chloride (fig 233) In this way the temperature of the adjoining ether container is raised to approximately 30° C

As the patient draws air through the chamber A causing ether to evaporate the fall in temperature which would otherwise occur is prevented because the heat lost by the liquid ether is immediately restored from the molten calcium chloride a fraction of which goes back into the solid state That part of the calcium chloride which crystallises gives out its latent heat of fusion (or melting) and this is absorbed by ether in compartment A In this way the temperature of the liquid ether and with it the concentration of the ether vapour/air mixture in the vaporiser is constant as long as some of the calcium chloride remains in a liquid state

The partially molten calcium chloride in the intervening compartment acts as a heat buffer taking up heat from the water at any temperature above 30° C but releasing heat to its surroundings so that their temperature is maintained effectively constant at 30° C

USE OF THE HAND-BELLOWS

A spring bag reservoir, or hand bellows (S figs 228 and 235) is incorporated between the vaporising chamber and the patient   When the bellows expands it draws in air through the inspiratory valve
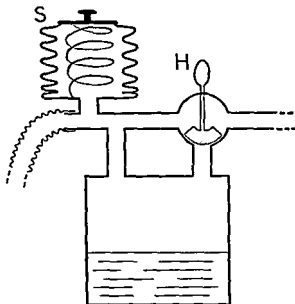
Fig 230

(fig 229) and what part if any of this air is directed through the vaporising chamber is determined by the position of the tap H   The bellows is not an essential part of the apparatus but it is of value in certain situations   *It is in no way a rebreathing bag* since a one-way rubber flap valve situated near the mask ensures that expirations are directed entirely through the expiratory valve (fig 230)

(i) The fact that the patient is breathing can be appreciated at a distance by watching the movement of the bag   On inspiration the bag empties slightly, but the recoil of the spring within it causes it to re-expand drawing air through the inspiratory valve

(ii) In case of necessity the bellows can be used to perform
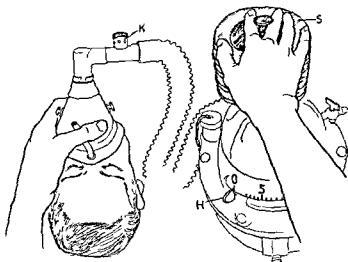
FIG 236

artificial respiration   The tap H is set so that air only is drawn into the bag   The expiratory valve K is screwed down and the mask is held firmly to the face with the jaw drawn forward, so that the airway is clear   On pressing down the bellows, air will be forced into the patient's lungs   The mask should now be lifted momentarily to allow expiration, due to the elastic recoil of the lungs, to take place   This manœuvre is repeated as often as is necessary

(iii) When anæsthesia is to be induced with ether only   The mask is placed lightly on the patient's face   The tap H is set so that only a small part of the air drawn in passes over the surface of the ether, and the resulting weak mixture of ether vapour in air is delivered to the patient by the anæsthetist compressing the bellows   When the bellows is released the spring causes it to re-expand, drawing in a fresh supply of ether/air mixture   The tap (or control handle) is moved so that the concentration of ether vapour in the mixture is increased steadily and as rapidly as the patient will tolerate it   As soon as the patient is unconscious the mask is applied firmly to the face , it is now no longer necessary for the anæsthetist to deliver the anæsthetic mixture to the patient by compressing the hand bellows, since the patient will draw in the mixture himself

(iv) The bellows can be used as a *vis a tergo* to deliver the ether/ air mixture to the patient when the mask cannot be maintained on the face, as for example when a Davis gag is used during tonsillectomy

(v) In certain cases to hasten the onset of surgical anæsthesia
Where induction has been carried out by a moderately large dose of
a short acting intravenous barbiturate respiration is depressed
The patient s larynx can be accustomed to ether vapour or the
lungs may be inflated with the anæsthetic mixture by setting the
control handle to the appropriate position and working the hand
bellows   By the time normal respiration is resumed a high
percentage of ether vapour will be tolerated by the larynx

THE OXFORD VAPORISER USED WITH ETHER

No matter how it is administered ether vapour is irritant to the
larynx   If a concentration greater than can be inhaled comfortably
is administered the laryngeal defence mechanism will be set in action,
with resulting coughing or laryngeal spasm   The art of ether anæs
thesia therefore is largely that of subduing a patient with a non
irritant anæsthetic until anæsthesia is deep enough for him not to
resist inhaling a concentration of ether vapour sufficient to provide the
required depth of surgical anæsthesia

On the rare occasions when ether is used for induction as well as
maintenance of anæsthesia the anæsthetist should proceed as in para
graph iii on p 318

Frequently unconsciousness is induced with pentothal tribro
methanol or nitrous oxide and the onset of surgical anæsthesia is
facilitated by introducing the induction bag (i b fig 237) between the
face piece and the expiratory valve   The face piece is in circuit with
the ether vaporiser throughout but the induction bag can be cut off
from the circuit by moving the lever to the OFF position   When
the lever is in the ON position the induction bag is fully in circuit
with the face piece so that rebreathing takes place freely into the bag
The amount of rebreathing which takes place in and out of the induc
tion bag is determined by the position of the lever

Ethyl chloride can be sprayed through the opening in the cap (fig
238) or the cap can be removed and vinesthene or other liquid
anæsthetic poured in (fig 239)

The lever of the induction bag is gradually moved into the ON
position and in this way the patient comes under the influence of what
ever anæsthetic is in the induction bag   As soon as anæsthesia deepens
sufficiently the control handle of the vaporiser (H, figs 228 and 232) is
set at the appropriate position commonly 10-15 and the lever of
the induction bag gradually moved to the OFF position   If the
concentration of ether vapour is too high to be tolerated comfortably,
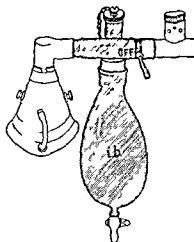
FIG 237

the induction bag can again be brought into circuit for as long as is necessary

When the patient inhales freely the desired strength of ether vapour, the induction bag is removed and the depth of anæsthesia is regulated by the position of the control handle
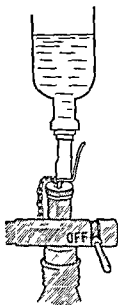
FIG 238
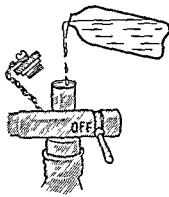
FIG 239

REFERENCES

(1) Macintosh, R R , and Mendelssohn, K. 1941 *Lancet* **2**, 61.
(2) Epstein, H G , Macintosh, R R , and Mendelssohn, K *Ibid.* 62.
(3) Cowan, S L , Scott, R D , and Suffolk, S F *Ibid* 64
(4) Epstein, H G , and Pask, E A *Ibid* 66
(5) *The Oxford Vaporiser* Issued by the Nuffield Department of Anæs-
thetics University of Oxford

CHAPTER XXXI

LEGAL

THE law, in laying down but few principles regarding the responsibility of the anæsthetist for accidents, both grave and trifling allows the judge and jury considerable latitude in the conduct of any particular case   Legally it is not even necessary for the administrator of an anæsthetic to possess a medical or dental qualification, though Halsbury states, ' A man should not, however, undertake to do work of skill unless he is fitted for it and it is his duty to know whether he is so skilled or not   [1]

Although a doctor or dentist is presumed to have had the training necessary to enable him to anæsthetise for dental operations with fair, reasonable, and competent skill, mere possession of a registrable qualification is not in itself either proof of ability or sufficient answer to a charge of incompetence or negligence   The law grants certain privileges to the medical and dental professions and exacts certain standards of practice   The practitioner s unwritten contract with the patient is that the former will exercise reasonable care and average skill   A practitioner who has not given anæsthetics for many years may not possess the expected degree of skill, and is advised to decline to administer an anæsthetic except in case of emergency   If the patient pays for a specialist in anæsthesia, the standard of skill which he is entitled to expect is as high as the latter professes to possess   The fact that a fee is not charged in no way diminishes the anæsthetist's responsibility to the patient   This applies equally to private or hospital practice

Production and supervision of anæsthesia is a serious undertaking   Although a registered dental or medical practitioner is within the law if he anæsthetises his patient as well as operates on him, he should act in this dual capacity only in case of absolute necessity and never in order merely to earn an additional fee, nor when the services of a competent anæsthetist are available and the patient can pay for them   If a claim against the dentist arose out of an accident occurring under such conditions, he might have difficulty in establishing that he was justified in fulfilling the functions both of operator and anæsthetist. There are indeed circumstances which justify the dentist in administering the anæsthetic to his own patient   Thus, the financial position of

the patient may make this course necessary, or the only practicable alternative may be to call in an inadequately skilled family doctor, who might prove more of a hindrance and even a danger than a help Blame for failure to extract the tooth successfully is almost invariably attributed to the extractor and not to the anæsthetist! The family doctor, who in his student days may never have seen a skilled dental anæsthetist at work, often fails to realise his own incompetence in this field If he anæsthetises the patient too lightly or too deeply he embarrasses rather than helps the extractor The dentist who gives his own anæsthetic has generally had the advantage of a proper training in this specialised branch of anæsthesia in his student days, and he may even have taken post-graduate instruction in the subject After he has induced smooth anæsthesia, he is able, with the assistance of a nurse or mechanic to steady the head, to operate more efficiently and with greater peace of mind than if the patient were in the charge of a medical practitioner less experienced in dental anæsthesia than the dentist himself

Provided the dentist has been trained in the administration of anæsthetics, there is no reason why he should not act as anæsthetist for extractions by a colleague, but he should confine himself strictly to the use of drugs with the action of which he is familiar Normally these would be nitrous oxide and ethyl chloride Ether is generally considered to be outside the dentist's province In our view, chloroform should never be used for dental operations We also think it inexpedient for a dentist to administer any intravenous anæsthetic, although if he has familiarised himself with the associated dangers and difficulties there is no logical reason why he should not do so

When the dentist's nurse or mechanic assists in giving the anæsthetic, responsibility for the choice of the anæsthetic and its administration lies entirely on the dentist, but if the operator has the help of a qualified dentist or doctor as anæsthetist the responsibility devolves upon the latter, whose liability in this respect does not differ from that assumed in administering any other drug Since it may be necessary to modify the anæsthesia at a moment's notice, the anæsthetist must always be free to act as he thinks advisable in the circumstances The onus both for the choice of anæsthetic and for any damage directly attributable to its use must be borne by the anæsthetist, and cannot, in ordinary circumstances, be made to devolve on other parties The anæsthetist should therefore not employ any anæsthetic procedure of which he does not himself entirely approve

Legal actions where the claim is made that the patient has suffered

because due care and skill have not been exercised by the anæsthetist
and dentist are not infrequently successful One of the most serious
accidents that can befall a patient during a dental operation is the
entry of a foreign body into the air passages This may occur without
dentist or anæsthetist becoming aware of the accident, and it is not
necessarily the fault of either Although in fact neither may be morally
or actionably blameworthy, there is a strong presumption that one or
other of them is culpable, and if the accident occurs in the absence of
reasonable precautions there may be no defence at law Even if
proper precautions have been taken, the dentist is in the wrong if
after an operation, and before removing the pack he fails to make
sure no foreign body is in the mouth and if he fails to examine the
teeth remaining in the mouth and those extracted to see if any tooth
or portion of a tooth is not accounted for Further, when the pack
is removed, the operator should again satisfy himself that no loose
body remains in the mouth or oro-pharynx Finally the dentist is
blameworthy if he fails to take proper action if any tooth or portion
of a tooth is found to be, or suspected to be, missing

During a dental operation the three faults which most frequently
contribute to the entry of a foreign body into the lungs are failure
to insert a mouth-pack in such a position that the laryngeal opening
is reasonably guarded, operating on a patient when he is restless,
and failure to remove immediately from the mouth any dislodged
tooth, tooth fragment, or filling Packing off the mouth is of paramount
importance, and it is a universally accepted rule that no operation in
the mouth under general anæsthesia should be undertaken until the
larynx has been protected as adequately as possible by a pack against
the entry of a foreign body The efficiency of the pack varies in
different circumstances

For short operations in the dental chair it is quite impossible to
arrange the mouth pack so as to provide absolute protection For
this ideal to be achieved, the larynx would have to be occluded and
the airway thus obstructed If the pack is placed too far back,
retching reflexes may be initiated and make the operation practically
impossible At the same time the soft palate may be pushed against
the posterior pharyngeal wall and seriously impede nasal respiration
For simple extractions, a coarse-meshed marine sponge provides a
very high degree of protection as long as the dentist ensures that it is
placed advantageously throughout the operation, and that it is replaced
by a fresh sponge as soon as it becomes soaked in blood and mucus,
which much reduces its protective properties The pack is sometimes
provided by the anæsthetist, and often inserted by him into the

posterior part of the mouth before the operation begins The anæsthetist almost invariably stands behind the patient and therefore cannot follow the changing conditions in the mouth so that the dentist, as soon as he begins to operate, assumes responsibility for the position of the pack even when he did not insert it himself He often finds it necessary to change its position to meet the needs of the operation, and he must bear the responsibility for the consequence of any such change

When an anæsthetic is given badly the patient may be restless or struggle, thus increasing the chances of a foreign body slipping out of the forceps, an accident which can occur even in the most favourable circumstances Then unless the throat has been adequately packed, there is a danger of the loose body entering the trachea If the responsibility here must be borne entirely by one person we regard it still as belonging to the dentist for he should decline to operate if the anæsthesia is inadequate

Major dental operations present totally different problems These are generally performed at home or in hospital often under ether anæsthesia The deeper the unconsciousness, the more nearly complete is the abolition of all reflexes, including the protective cough reflex, and therefore the more essential it is to safeguard the larynx The only sure way of securing the patient's safety is to administer the anæsthetic through an endotracheal tube and then to pack the throat in such a way that the larynx is completely protected Unless this procedure is adopted an extensive jaw operation in the supine position can easily degenerate into a shambles Conditions are equally unsatisfactory for both dentist and anæsthetist The anæsthetist has difficulty in maintaining a clear airway and may be unable to provide smooth anæsthesia If even a small degree of respiratory obstruction occurs, it produces venous congestion and increases hæmorrhage, and therefore the dentist often has to work by sense of touch in a pool of blood When the field of operation is thus obscured by hæmorrhage, the danger of entry of a foreign body is always much increased This is especially so if the patient is in the supine position Periodically the operation should be suspended and blood and debris cleared away, but even when this precaution is taken the situation is potentially dangerous, and it may be further complicated by vomiting Anyone who has witnessed a major dental operation or any other prolonged operation on the jaw in these circumstances will realise that the stage is well set for an accident In an action arising out of the lodgment of a foreign body in the lungs in these circumstances, if a jury exonerate the anæsthetist from blame for not providing endotracheal anæsthesia,

they might as well toss a coin in deciding how to apportion blame between anæsthetist and dentist

Greater anæsthetic skill and experience are required for major dental operations than for the average operation for, say, herniotomy or appendicectomy Multiple extractions are seldom emergency operations, and we feel that the doctor should avoid anæsthetising for such cases if he cannot pass an endotracheal tube He would not undertake any other medical procedure unless he could carry it out proficiently , neither should he anæsthetise in circumstances where he cannot provide both safety for the patient and the operating conditions which a dentist is entitled to expect We realise that endotracheal anæsthesia is at present regarded as being beyond the province of a general practitioner, but as medical knowledge grows the boundaries of legal negligence expand We believe that in the future it will be held to be negligent to perform a major jaw operation without endotracheal anæsthesia

In an operation under endotracheal anæsthesia the anæsthetist can pack off the back of the throat in such a way that it is impossible for a tooth, tooth fragment, blood-clot or any other foreign body to enter the larynx, and it is customary for him to undertake this duty Before beginning to operate the dentist should verify that such protection is complete, and thereafter assume responsibility for the position of the pack

It is a counsel of perfection that the portions of a tooth broken during extraction should be pieced together by the dentist and a search made for any missing fragments We should record that in a very large number of cases at which we have assisted, the tooth and filling have broken into so many pieces that an attempt to follow this advice would have been ludicrous In the difficult question of the correct procedure after such an event, the dentist's own conscience is his best guide as to what course to take If the dentist considers that the pack has been effectively placed, and if he cleared away debris at once when the tooth fragmented, usually he feels satisfied that there cannot be a foreign body inside the patient, and if he has this conviction no further action need be taken When the dentist has reasonable grounds for suspecting that a foreign body is lodged somewhere inside the patient, he should adopt a line of action which will ensure the patient's safety The policy of trusting to luck and of saying nothing is in these circumstances entirely reprehensible, for it may lead to the death of the patient. The question of whether extensive radiological examination of the patient's head, chest, and abdomen should be undertaken must first be decided Some teachers hold that this should be done in every case

where a tooth fragment remains unaccounted for It is our opinion that X-ray examination should be made if the missing fragment is considered large enough or characteristic enough to throw a *recognisable* shadow, but that if it is thought unlikely that the fragment would be recognisable radiologically such an examination is not necessary , indeed, it may even prove misleading, since shadows at the hilum of the lung may rouse the suspicion that a foreign body is in the thorax when this, in fact, is not the case Also unless the missing object is metallic, negative radiological findings are not conclusive evidence that there is no foreign body inside the patient We have known radiological examination to be ordered by the dentist when only a small fragment of tooth was missing solely to protect himself in the event of subsequent litigation, and this in the case of a patient suspected of an inclination for redress may well be a desirable precaution, since by some it is regarded as supporting evidence that the dentist has made every effort to safeguard his patient

The treatment of a misplaced fragment, the location of which is identified after the accident is discussed on p 275 If radiological examination is considered unnecessary, or if it is undertaken and fails to reveal the situation of the foreign body, the patient or a sensible relative and also the family doctor should be informed of what has happened Bulky residue foods should be advised for about a week, in case the foreign body has been swallowed (p 273) Any chest complaint which does not clear up must be regarded with suspicion, since it may be the beginning of a lung abscess If an action should arise for damages due to a foreign body in the lung, and if the dentist has not taken the course indicated above, he will find himself with no defence because he has not acted with the reasonable judgment and care to be expected from him The following instances in our own experience illustrate these points

1 On many occasions when one or other of us gave the anæsthetic, a small piece of tooth has not been accounted for On each of these occasions it was thought that the missing fragment was *too small to be recognisable radiologically among the shadows* cast by ribs and by glands in the hilum of the lung It was considered correct not to X-ray the patient nor to acquaint him with the full implications of the situation, as this knowledge would be an unnecessary mental burden to a nervous patient He was told to report at once if he developed a cough during the next few months and, at the same time, full details were communicated to the family doctor In none of these cases did a pulmonary lesion subsequently develop, so it can be assumed that

the missing fragments were either swallowed or were lost outside the body

2 The writers so far as they know, have anæsthetised only one case in which a foreign body has entered the lung An upper eight was being extracted under nitrous oxide in the dental chair As the extraction proved difficult the anæsthetist lowered the head rest and extended the head to provide better access After some minutes the tooth was extracted and dentist and anæsthetist congratulated each other on a job well done Anæsthesia was tranquil throughout and the patient did not cough at any stage The man continued at work and four weeks later he became ill and influenza was diagnosed The pulmonary condition did not improve, and an X ray examination disclosed a foreign body located in the lungs This was identified as a piece of amalgam filling, which had been dislodged unnoticed from the adjoining molar tooth during the course of extraction Arrangements were made for bronchoscopy to be performed On the previous evening however, the patient rolled over in bed and the sudden change in position presumably moved the foreign body This precipitated a bout of coughing during which the filling was expelled with such force that it excoriated his soft palate A claim for damages was made and as the dentist had not examined the mouth after the extraction the patient was deemed to be justified in his claim and the matter settled out of court

3 Only once have we thought it necessary to have the patient X rayed directly after the operation A lower wisdom tooth broke while it was being extracted An elevator was then used after which the root socket was found to be empty but the root could not be found X ray examination revealed that it had slipped under the mucous membrane distal to the socket It was removed with ease without further anæsthesia

An anæsthetist may sometimes be held responsible for damaging existing teeth or bridge work Before beginning to induce anæsthesia, he should therefore examine the patient's mouth and make a point of noticing any loose teeth, crowns, or bridge work He should be particularly careful to avoid using a Mason's gag on such structures He may also damage the front teeth when he uses a laryngoscope in order to pass an endotracheal tube The risk of this accident is diminished by providing anæsthesia of sufficient depth to relax the jaw and by protecting the front teeth with a thin sheath of malleable lead or adhesive plaster

Actions claiming damages against dentists and anæsthetists for fracture of the jaw occurring during the course of extraction are not

infrequent   That such accidents can occur without carelessness on the part of either makes it all the more imperative that a Mason's gag should be used with great care   particularly when the jaw is known to be fragile

One of us has anæsthetised five cases in which the jaw was broken during dental extractions   Although in four no undue force was used   nevertheless the jaw broke during the actual extraction   In the fifth a large amount of bone covering an unerupted lower wisdom tooth on the right side was removed from a powerful man   This tooth was extracted successfully and it was decided to proceed with a similar operation on the opposite side   During the use of hammer and chisel on the left side the jaw fractured on the right side where it had been weakened by the extensive removal of bone   A Mason's gag was not employed in any of these cases but if it had been used and used roughly   it is easy to understand how it might have caused or contributed to this accident

In inquests on deaths during anæsthesia the anæsthetist is always asked if he examined the patient   and if he can state that he applied a stethoscope to the heart and chest he is considered to have done his duty   although such brief examination as is possible in the dental surgery is in fact valueless   If it could be expected to assist in any way we would be very much in favour of it   and we think it worth recording that it is a common custom for the anæsthetist to go through the formality of examining the patient   simply to protect himself at law   For this purpose we have known the mere pretence at examination to be made   the stethoscope being applied outside the coat and the patient then pronounced fit   We believe that a patient who does not volunteer a history of illness and who is able to walk into the dental surgery can be presumed fit enough to submit to a short dental anæsthetic   The anæsthetist should be able to form an opinion of the patient's general condition at a glance   but in any case the history yields much more valuable information than does any cursory physical examination   The patient may   for example   reveal the presence of myocardial degeneration by saying that he cannot walk upstairs without becoming short of breath   whereas an ordinary routine examination of the heart may disclose nothing   We do not believe that any routine examination such as would normally be made by an anæsthetist in the dental surgery is in any way helpful and therefore we do not consider it to be negligence to omit examining such a patient before an ordinary short dental extraction

One disadvantage of a routine examination is that some patients do not realise that it *is* routine and are alarmed fearing that it indicates misgivings about their health. Others interpret a physical examination to mean that they are going to be exposed to a greater strain than is in fact the case. On the other hand there are patients who welcome a brief examination and even ask for it in which case it should not be omitted. There are some anæsthetists who believe that every patient about to be anæsthetised is worried about his heart and that it is therefore desirable to apply a stethoscope if only to create an opportunity for reassuring the patient. The only substantial reason for the examination of an apparently fit patient before a short anæsthetic in the dental surgery is that it will contribute to his peace of mind and thus facilitate anæsthesia. If it is considered that it will not achieve this object it should be dispensed with. In a case where the patient is examined he should be reassured as to his general fitness before the anæsthetic is begun.

The following warnings embody the ideals which should be aimed at in every case though it is recognised that in certain instances they may not be easy of attainment. By attending to these points as carefully as he can the anæsthetist will do much to protect himself against litigation.

Never if it can possibly be avoided act both as dentist and anæsthetist.—Administration of an anæsthetic is a full time job.

Never administer an anæsthetic unless a third person is present.—Observance of this rule safeguards the administrator against false charges of misconduct. The presence of a third person is an additional advantage inasmuch as he can be called upon to assist in an emergency.

Never anæsthetise a patient unless his consent to be anæsthetised has been given.—When the patient is under 21 he is legally a minor and the permission of the parent or guardian should be obtained.

From the legal point of view the dentist and anæsthetist should have prior authority in writing for performance of the operation and administration of the anæsthetic. In private practice it is most unusual for this written permission to be asked for, and the patient's assent to be anæsthetised is therefore commonly taken as being implied.

Never give an anæsthetic unless adequate first-aid equipment is to hand.—A Mason's gag and tongue forceps are essential.

Never leave an unconscious patient without a trained person to look after him.—It is the anæsthetist's duty to see that the patient is safeguarded until his return to consciousness. If recovery

is likely to be protracted it is customary for this responsibility to be delegated to a nurse   The exigencies of a busy operating day in hospital seldom permit the anaesthetist to accompany the unconscious patient from the operating theatre to his bed although in private practice he should always do so   The anaesthetist should then satisfy himself that the patient is protected from being burnt by hot water bottles that his position is such that his airway will not become obstructed and that any blood mucus or vomitus will run out of the mouth instead of being aspirated   A Mason's gag and tongue-forceps should be kept by the bedside until the patient is conscious   Finally, before the anaesthetist leaves he should make it clear to the nurse that the responsibility for the patient is being left in her hands (p 252)

One of the first expenses which the young medical or dental prac titioner should incur is to join one or other of the recognised defence organisations viz the London and Counties Medical Protection Society, Victory House, Leicester Square London W C 2 the Medical Defence Union Ltd 49 Bedford Square London W C 1 or the Medical and Dental Defence Union of Scotland Ltd   The public is becoming increasingly " litigation minded,   and if everything associated with an operation does not proceed exactly as hoped for a patie it is some times encouraged to believe that he is entitled to damage   In such circumstances the patient has much to gain and little to lose but the practitioner is in exactly the reverse position   In order to prevent his name figuring in the Law Courts he may be blackmailed into paying large damages even where none have been incurred either legally or morally   Any of the defence organisations is prepared to defend with the utmost vigour the practitioner who finds himself in this situation and if necessary is in a position to take a case to the House of Lords   Unjust claims have often been withdrawn as soon as it became known that the practitioner was protected by a powerful Society   and in defending claims which have some appearance of being justifiable the practitioner has at his disposal the vast experience of the Society

REFERENCE

(1) Halsbury   1912   *The Laws of England*   21, 369

INDEX OF PERSONAL NAMES

The figures in italics refer to pages where the personal name occurs in References

INDEX